高中英语知识归纳总结（打印版）

必修 1

核心单词

1. add

vt.& vi. 增加；加；加起来；补充说； 又说

常用结构：

add to 增添；增加；增进

add ...to ...把……增添到……

add up 合计，相加

add up to 总数为；总计为

He added some wood to increase the fire.

他添了一些木柴，使火更旺些。

If you add 4 to 3 you get 7.四加三得七。

Unit 1 Friendship

Page No.11

Page No.12

①解析：选 C。考查动词辨析。句意为：我要说的就是这些，约翰你还有什么要补充的吗？

②解析：选 D。add to 的意思是“添加到”。

2. upset

adj. 心烦意乱的；不安的；不适的

vt. (upset, upset) 使不安；使心烦；打翻；打乱

联想拓展

be upset by...被…… 打乱

upset oneself about sth.为某事烦恼

Our arrangements for the weekend were upset by her visit.

她一来把我们周末的安排给打乱了。

Don’t upset yourself — no harm has been done.

不要难过——并没有造成任何伤害。

He was horribly upset over her illness.

他为她的病而忧心忡忡。

The students really upset her. 学生们着实让她烦恼。

高手过招

用 upset 的适当形式填空（原创）

①The food my stomach.

②She felt rather on hearing the news.

③Is it an message?

④Don’t be . It will be OK.

①upset ②upset ③upsetting ④upset

3. ignore

vt. 不理睬；忽视

I said hello to her, but she ignored me completely.

我向她打招呼，可是她根本不理我。

He ignored the speed limit and drove very fast.

他不顾时速限制，把车开得飞快。

联想拓展

ignorant adj. (对某事物）不了解的；无知的；无学识的

be ignorant of/about sth.不知道；没有意识到
ignorance n.无知；愚昧；不知道
be in ignorance of/about sth. 不知道某事
易混辨析
ignore/neglect/overlook
ignore 通常指有意不顾，或不理会显而易见的事物。
neglect 侧重指有意的忽略或忽视，也可指粗心与疏忽。
overlook 指因匆忙而疏忽或视而不见。
高手过招
（1） 用 ignore/neglect/overlook 的适当形式填空 （原创）
①We could not afford to such a serious offence.
②He utterly my warnings and met with an accident.
③Don’t to pay him a visit now and then.
(1)①overlook ②ignored ③neglect
（2） 单项填空
—So you didn’t say hello to him last night?
—Well, I stopped and smiled when I saw him, but he me and walked on. （2010·杭州一模）
A. Ignored B. refused C. denied D. missed

(2)解析：选 A。答句句意为：我看到他就停下来冲他微笑，但是他没理我就走了。ignore 不理睬，忽视；refuse 拒绝；deny 否认，拒绝给予；miss 怀念，错过。
4. concern
n. ［U］关心，担心，担忧；［C］有利害关系的事
vt. 涉及，关系到，参与；使担心
联想拓展
concerning prep. 关于
concerned adj.有关的；担心的
concern sb.与某人有关
be concerned with sth.牵涉，与……有关；参与
concern oneself with 关心
be concerned about/for/over sth.担心；关心某事as/so far as ... be concerned 关于；至于；就……而言
As far as I am concerned, you can go wherever you want.
就我而言，你什么时候走都行。
We read stories concerning visitors from outer space.
我们读了关于天外来客的故事。
I was very concerned about my mother’s illness.
我很担心母亲的病情。
高手过招
（1） 单项填空
The meeting was concerned reforms and everyone present was concerned their own interests.
（2010·福建厦门双十中学检测）
A. with; for B. for; which C. for; about D. about; with
（2） 用 concern 的适当形式填空（原创）
①There is an article that the rise of the prices.
②The children are rather about their mother’s health.

③Officials should themselves public affairs.

(1) 解析：选 A。句意为：这次会议牵涉到改革，在场的每个人都很担心自己的利益。be concerned with 牵涉到,和……有关；be concerned for/about 担心；关心。

(2) ①concerns ②concerned ③concern；with

5. settle

vi. 安家；定居；停留

vt. 使定居；安排；解决

Both wanted to settle their scores.双方都愿意尽弃前嫌。

常用结构：

settle down 镇定下来

settle in 在……定居

He settled his child in a corner of the compartment.

他把孩子安顿在车厢的一个角落里。

The family has settled in Canada.

这家人已定居加拿大。

Page No.18

高手过招

单项填空

①—Do you know anyone in Paris?

—No. I’ll make friends once .（2010·福建厦门六中检测）

A. I’m settled B. I have settled

C. I’ll be settled D. I’m settling

②The brake of your bicycle has come loose. You’d better it .（2010·陕西西安交大附中）

A. settle B. fix

C. pick D. correct

①解析：选 A。settle 作“安家”讲时，既可用 settle，也可用 be settled。本题是由 once(一旦)引起的时间状语从句，故用一般现在时表将来。

②解析：选 B。由句意可知，因为自行车的车闸坏了，因此要“修理”。

Page No.19

6. suffer

vt. 遭受；忍受；蒙受

vi.后接 from/for 意为“受……之苦”，“患……疾病”

常用结构：

suffer an attack/a defeat/losses/pains

遭受打击/失败/损失/痛苦

He suffered hard pains from the accident.

他忍受着事故带来的痛苦。

Do you suffer from headaches? 你经常头痛吗?

She’s suffering from loss of memory. 她患有遗忘症。

联想拓展

sufferer n. 受苦者，受难者

suffering n.痛苦，苦难Page

No.20

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

In the countryside there are many dropouts (辍学者). I think the difficulty_____the poor economic conditions.（2010·浙江嘉兴一轮检测）

A. lies in B. result in

C. leads to　　D. suffers from

（2） 翻译句子

我们在金融危机中损失惨重。

(1)解析：选 A。考查短语辨析。lie in 在这里相当于 because of。

(2)We suffered huge losses in the financial crisis.

Page No.21

重点短语

7. go through

经历；经受；检查；浏览；用完；做完

The country has gone through too many wars.

这个国家经历了太多的战争。

She’s gone through a bad patch recently.

她最近经历了一段困难时期。

Have you gone through all your money already?

你把所有的钱都花完了吗？

I went through the students’ papers last night.

昨晚我仔细阅读了学生的试卷。

联想拓展（关注公众号:学习界的 007.获取更多资料干货）

go after 追求；追赶

go ahead 前进；请说（做）吧

go by 走过；（时间）过去

go along with 向前；（与 .....)一起去

go in for 爱好；从事

Page No.22

go out 外出；（灯，火）熄灭

go over 越过；复习

go through with 做完；完成

go up 爬上；（价格等）上升

高手过招

单项填空

①We’d better try to　　with the experiment, I think. Now let’s　　with it.（2010·河南许昌一模）

A. go through; go on　　B. go on;　go over

C. go over; go through　　D. go on;　go through

②If a person has taken too much medicine by mistake, you should make the person　　.（2010·平顶山一中月考）

A. go up　　B. rise up

C. throw up　　D. set up

Page No.23

①解析：选 A。go through with sth.意思是“做完，完成”；go on with 意思是“继续”。

②解析：选 C。throw up 的意思是“呕吐；吐出”。

8. get sth.done

让别人做某事/使得某事被做

done 是过去分词作宾语补足语，与 have sth. done 句型的用法一样。

get sb./sth.　doing 使某人/某事物……起来

get sb. to do sth.使/让某人做某事

get　done　（状态的改变）get 作系动词，相当于 be

get away 逃脱；离开

get back 回来；取回
get by 维持生活；通过
get down to sth./doing sth.开始认真做某事
get in 进站；到达；收集
get off 下来；下车
get on 上车；进展；进步
Page No.24
get cross(对……)生气，发脾气
get in one’s way 挡路，妨碍
get used to doing sth.习惯做某事
get involved in 涉及
get in touch with 和……取得联系
get it 了解，懂得，明白
高手过招
（1） 单项填空
The final examination is coming up soon. It’s time for us to our studies. （2010·河南焦作一中月考）
A. get down to B. get out
C. get back for D. get over
（2） 完成句子（原创）
①讲解后，老师让我们思考起问题来。
Shortly after the explanation the teacher got us .
Page No.25
②我们将很快为你订制一套新衣服。
We will get a new suit for you.
③她试图使他说话。
She tried to get him .
(1) 解析：选 A。该题根据交际情景考查短语动词的用法。根据题意，此处指开始认真学习，故选 A。get down to 开始认真考虑，符合题意。get out 出去，离开，逃脱，泄露；get back for 回来，恢复；get over 爬过；克服，熬过；恢复，原谅。故 B、C、D 三项均不符合题意。
(2) ①thinking ②made ③to talk
9. set down
放下；记下；登记
Passengers may be set down and picked up only at the official stops.乘客只有在正式车站方可上下车。
Page No.26
联想拓展
set about (doing sth.) 着手（做某事）
set out (to do sth.)开始，着手(做某事)
set aside 留出；不顾
set back（把钟等）往回拨；推迟
set free 释放；解放
set off 动身，出发（去某地）；使爆炸
set out 动身，出发；安排，组织
set up 开办；建立；设立
set an example to 树立榜样
set fire to ...= set ... on fire 纵火烧
be set in 以……为背景

The bad weather set back the building programme by several weeks.

由于天气恶劣，建筑计划延误了好几个星期。

We need to set about finding a solution.

我们得着手寻找一个解决办法。Page

No.27

温馨提示

set about 和 set out 都可作“开始/着手做某事”讲，但 set about 后加 doing sth.， 而 set out 后加 to do sth.。

高手过招

单项填空

As soon as he got to the office, he the students' papers.

（2010·山东济南一中月考）

A. got down to correct

B. got down to correcting

C. set down to correcting

D. sit down to correcting

解析：选 B。get down to 意思是“着手做某事”，其中 to 是介词，

后跟名词或动名词。

Page No.28

10. on purpose

故意

The boy broke Jack's window on purpose. He wanted to frighten Jack.

那男孩是故意打破杰克的窗玻璃的，他想吓一下杰克。

联想拓展

purpose n. 目的，用途；目标；重要意义

for the purpose of 为了……

to little/no purpose 作用不大/徒劳

The purpose of the book is to provide a complete guide to the university.

这本书的目的是全面介绍这所大学。

高手过招

用 purpose 的适当形式或短语填空 （原创）

①He didn't do it .

②What was your ?

①on purpose ②purpose

Page No.29

11. join in

参加；加入

They didn't have enough time to join in the activity.

他们没有足够的时间来参加这个活动。

联想拓展

join sb. in sth.与某人一起做某事

join up 入伍；参军

join up with sb.与某人联合；会合

join hands with sb.与某人拉起手来；合伙；联合Will

you join me in a walk? 你愿意和我一起散步吗？ Let

us join hands in friendship.

让我们携手共建友谊吧。

Page No.30

易混辨析

join in/join/take part in/attend

join in 参加正在进行着的活动。如游戏、讨论、辩论、谈话等。
join ①参加某组织或团体，并成为其中一员;②来和某人待在一起。
take part in 参加会议或有组织的群众性活动，并在其中发挥一定的作用。
attend 正式用语，指参加会议、仪式、婚礼、葬礼、上课、上学、听报告等，句子的主语是去听去看，自己不一定起积极作用，相当于 be present。
高手过招
用 join/join in/take part in/attend 的适当形式填空（原创）
①I decided to the club to have dance training.
②Would you like me to the game?
③I a meeting last month.
④I will have to his funeral next week.
①join ②join in ③took part in/attended ④attend
Page No.31
重点句型
12.....but your friend can't go until he/she finishes cleaning his/her bicycle.
……但是你的朋友不把自行车弄干净不能走。
not ... until 意为“直到……才”，表示主句谓语的动作直到 until 状语的时间才发生，主句的谓语动词表示的是动作的开始。until 引导从句时，如果主句中的谓语动词是延续性动作，则主句用肯定式；如果主句中的谓语动词是短暂性动词，则用否定形式。
“It is/was not until+被强调的部分+that ...”相当于“Not until ... did (does, do, is ...)+主语 ...”意为“直到……才”，是强调形式。
You must stay in bed until your temperature is normal.
体温正常后，你才能起床。
He didn't leave until the meeting was over.
直到会议结束他才离开。
Page No.32
It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I realized she was a film star.
=Not until she took off her dark glasses did I realize she was a film star.
=I didn't realize she was a famous film star until she took off her dark glasses.
直到她摘下墨镜我才认出她是一位电影明星。
高手过招
单项填空
①Not until , settle the problem.（2010·潍坊一轮验收）
A. he returns; can we B. he returns; we can
C. does he returns; we can D. does he return; we can
②It was back home after the experiment.
A. not until midnight did he go
B. until midnight that he didn't go
C. not until midnight that he went
D. until midnight when he didn't go
Page No.33
①解析：选 A。当 not until 位于句首时句子需倒装。句意为：直到他回来我们才能解决这个问题。
②解析：选 C。强调句型 It is/was ...that 对 not until ...进行强调时，需把 not until....放到强调结构中，故选 C。
13. While walking the dog, you were careless and it got loose and was hit by a car.
遛狗的时候，你太大意了，一松手，狗就被车撞了。
while walking the dog 是连词 while 加现在分词短语结构，强调分词的动作正在发生，相当于 while you were walking the dog。

在时间、条件、让步、方式等状语从句中，如果从句的主语与主句的主语一致，谓语含有系动词 be，可以

省略从句的主语和系动词 be。

When crossing the street, you should be careful.

过马路时，你应当小心。

If heated, water can be turned into vapour.

如果受热，水会变成蒸气。

Page No.34

温馨提示

在状语从句中，如果从句的主语为 it 时，也可以将 it 和助动词 be 省略。

Whenever possible they would stop him and ask the three questions.可能的话，他们就让他停下问他这三个问题。

高手过招

单项填空

① with the size of the whole earth, the biggest ocean does not seem big at all. （2010·山东莱州检测）

A. Compares B. When comparing

C. Comparing D. When compared

② the two systems, little man found the latter advantageous.(原创)

A. Compare B. When compared

C. Compared D. When comparing

Page No.35

①解析：选 D。考查状语从句的省略用法。在状语从句中，如果从句的主语与主句的主语相同或者主语为 it 时，可以将从句中的主语或者 it 和助动词 be 省略。本句是将状语从句“When it is compared with the size of the whole earth”中的 it is 省略，因此正确答案为 D。

②解析：选 D。考点省略。在状语从句中，当从句中的主语与主句的主语一致，且从句中含有 be 动词时，通常采用省略形式。句中的 little man 与 compare 之间存在逻辑上的主谓关系，故选 D。

14. I wonder if it’ s because I haven’ t been able to be outdoors for so long that I’ ve grown so crazy about everything to do with nature. 我不知道这是不是因为我长久无法出门的缘故，我变得对一切与大自然有关的事物都无比狂热。

此句中的 it’s ...that 是强调句型。关于强调句型，我们需要掌握以下几点：

Page No.36

（1） 强调句型的基本结构：

“It is/was+被强调的成分+that/who+其他成分”用来强调主语、宾语和状语等成分。that 只起连接作用，不作成分，但不能省略。当被强调部分为 sb.作宾语时，可用 who,也可用 that,其他情况一律用 that。强调主语时，that 后的谓语动词必须与被强调的主语在人称与数上保持一致。

（2） 特殊句式中的强调句型：

①如果强调的是特殊疑问句中的疑问词，表示“到底”、“究竟”等语气时，就用如下结构： “特殊疑问词+is/was+it+that/who+该句的其余部分”，that/who 后只能使用陈述语序。

②在“not ...until”结构中，由until 所引导的短语（或从句）作时间状语时，要用固定的强调句型：“It+is/was+not until ...+that+该句的其余部分”，that 所引导的从句中的谓语动词用肯定式。

Page No.37

（3） 强调句型要注意和 it 代表时间、距离、温度、自然现象、具体事物或人物等时所构成的各种句型的区别。判断是否是强调句，可采用“还原法”。如果还原为一般句式后，句子各种成分完整，则是强调句， 否则不是。

It was three o’clock when I got home.

我到家的时候三点。

It was at three o’clock that I got home.

三点钟我到的家。

It was in his town that he was brought up.

他是在镇上被养大的。（强调句）

It was this town where/in which he was brought up.

这是他被抚养长大的城镇。（定语从句）

（4） 英语中常用助动词 do, does 或 did 强调谓语。

He did go to the airport yesterday, but he didn't find you.

他昨天确实去了机场，但他没有找到你。

Page No.38

It is I that/who am going for a holiday with Mary.

是我跟玛丽一块儿去度假。

When is it that we will have a meeting?

我们什么时候开会？

高手过招

单项填空

It is in that poor village, Mary lived and worked 15 years ago, she will build her first school, which inspires everyone to help her.（原创）

A. where; when B. that; that

C. that; when D. where; that

解析：选 D。句意为：就是在那个她生活和工作了 15 年的贫穷的村庄，玛丽将要建起她的第一座学校，这一点鼓舞了人们来帮她。第一空为 where 引导的非限制性定语从句，第二空填 that,构成强调句型，强调地点状语。

Page No.39

15. I don't want to set down a series of facts in a diary as most people do ...

我不愿像大多数人那样在日记中记流水账……

as 引导的从句为比较状语从句，意为“像大多数人那么做”。

as 用作连词，可引导下列状语从句：

①引导时间状语从句，强调主句谓语与从句谓语的同时性；

②引导让步状语从句，表示“尽管，虽然，即使”（从句需倒装）；

③引导方式状语从句，表示“以……方式”；

④引导原因状语从句 (=since; because)，意为“由于，因为”；

⑤引导比较状语从句。

As he grew older he lost interest in everything except gardening.

随着他年纪越来越大，他失去了对所有事物的兴趣，除了园艺。

Cold as it is, my brother wears only a shirt.

尽管天气冷，我哥哥只穿了一件衬衫。

Page No.40

Why didn't you take the medicine as I told you to?

为什么你没有按我说的来服这种药？

As you were not there, I left a message.

因为当时你不在那，所以我给你留了便条。

She is as tall as you. 她和你一样高。

高手过招

单项填空

① as he is, he speaks English well. （2010·山西太原一中月考）

A. Little child B. A little child

C. The little child D. Child little

②In some countries, are called“public schools”are not owned by the public.(A. which B. as 西新余一中质量检测）

2010 •11 •江

Page No.41

①解析：选 B。 在让步状语从句中，作表语的名词如果提前，该名词常省去冠词，但若名词前有修饰语时，就不省略冠词。

②解析：选 C。考查 what 引导的主语从句。what 在主语从句中作主语。句意为：在许多国家，所谓的公立学校并非公众拥有。

16. ...it was the first time in a year and a half that I'd seen the night face to face ...

……这是我一年半以来第一次目睹夜晚……

如果前面是“it (will be)is/this (will be)is/that (will be)is+the first/second time that ...”句式，表示“某人第几次做某事”。其中,that 引导的是定语从句，后面句子的时态用现在完成时；如果前面是 it (would be)was ..., 后面则用过去完成时。

It is the first time that I have come to Zhuhai.

这是我第一次来珠海。

It was the second time that she had visited London.

那是她第二次游览伦敦。

Page No.42

温馨提示

如果 time 前有 last 修饰，此时我们一般不用完成时态。

注意：the first time 可起从属连词的作用，引导时间状语从句；for the first time 意为“第一次”单独用作状语。

This is the last time that I shall give you a lesson.

这是我最后一次给你们上课了。

高手过招

(1)单项填空

①It's the third time late this week.（原创）

A. that you are B. you are

C. when you arrived D. that you have been

②It was for the first time that he to the party.

A. Invited B. had been invited

C. has been invited D. was invited

(2)翻译句子（原创）

This will be the second time that I have been to the Great Wall.

Page No.43

（1） ①解析：选 D。“It is the +序数词+time+ that 从句”为固定句型，从句谓语动词必须用现在完成时。

②解析：选 D。it was ...that 是强调结构，句中强调状语“for the first time”故选 D。

（2） 这将会是我第二次去长城。

Page No.44

Unit 2 English around the world

核心单词

1. command

n. & vt. 命令；指令；掌握

The officer commanded his soldiers to fire.

那名军官命令士兵们开火。

A general is a man who commands a large number of soldiers.

将军是统率众多士兵的人。

常用结构：

at/ by sb’s command 听某人支配

take command of 控制

in command of 指挥着

Page No.45

under one’s command　由某人的指挥

under the command of sb.　在某人的指挥下

command sb. to do sth.　命令某人做某事

command (=order) that ...　　命令……（从句用虚拟语气，即 should+ do　形式，should 可省略）

联想拓展

commander n.　指挥官

高手过招

用适当的介词填空（原创）

①For the first time in years, she felt she was　　command of her life.

②The army is　　the king’s direct command.

③The police arrived and took command　　the situation.

①in ②under/at/by ③of

Page No.46

2. request

vt.&n. 请求；恳求；要求

常用结构：

request sb.　to do sth.请求某人做某事

request sth.　from/of sb.　向某人要求某物

request that sb.　(should) do sth.要求某人做某事

make a request/requests　发出请求

at the request of sb.＝at sb.’s request 依照某人的请求

易混辨析

request/demand/require

request 表示“有礼貌的请求；正式的请求”。

demand 表示“有正当权利的要求”，因此含有“坚决或强烈要求”的意思。 require 表示“要求所必须的东西；法律、协定、规章以及其他客观情况的要求”。但它们也有不同之处：

Page No.47

①require 和 request 都可以接宾语+to do sth.结构，而 demand 没有此种用法。但可以说 demand of sb. to do sth.

②require+动名词时，主动形式的动名词具有被动意义，而 demand，request 无此种用法。

They are demanding higher wages.　他们要求提高工资。

Do you require anything else? 你还要求（需要）别的吗？

Many people have requested this next song.

许多人要求听下面这首歌。

They required me to keep silent. 他们要求我保持沉默。

The letter requested us to leave the house within six weeks.

这封信要求我们六周内搬出这所房子。

温馨提示

以上三个词的共同点是：从语法上看，request 和 demand，require 都可以接 that 引导的宾语从句，并且在从句中要使用虚拟语气。

Page No.48

高手过招

单项填空

①One of the requirements for a fire is that the material　　to its burning temperature.（2010·陕西师大附中月考）

A. be heated B. is heated

C. would be heated D. do heat

②—Why were you late for such an important concert?

—The plane arrived at the airport after a of three hours. （2010·陕西商洛一轮检测）

A. delay B. rest C. tour D. request

①解析：选 A。如同 require, demand, order, suggest, advise, insist, request 等动词要求其后面的宾语从句使用虚拟语气一样，它们所对应的名词的同位语从句和表语从句也要求使用虚拟语气，即：should+动词原形。 故选 A。

②解析：选 A。上句询问“迟到的原因”，因此下句中的名词应是与“迟到”意义有关的名词，所以只能选择“延误”。

Page No.49

3. recognize

vt. 辨认出；承认；公认

常用结构：

recognize sb. 认出某人

recognize one’s voice 听出某人的声音

recognize ... as ... 认 定 ； 承 认 …… 为 ……

recognize sb./sth. ... to be ...认为某人/某事物是……

recognize that ...承认……

When he walked out of the station, I recognized him immediately.

当他从车站里走出来时，我立刻认出了他。

Everyone recognized him to be the lawful heir/as the lawful heir. 大家都承认他为合法继承人。

Page No.50

高手过招

单项填空

—Oh, it’s you! I you.

—I have just had my hair cut, and I’m wearing new glasses.

（2010·山东淄博六中检测）

A. hadn’t recognized B. haven’t recognized

C. didn’t recognize D. don’t recognize

解析：选 C。前句的句意为：哦，是你呀！我刚才没有认出你来。

所以要用一般过去时。

4. direction

n. [C] 方向；方面; [U] 指导；指挥

常用结构：

in the direction of 朝……的方向(=towards)

in sb’s direction 朝某人的方向(=towards sb.)

under one’s direction 在……指导下(=under the direction of sb.)

Page No.51

Tom went off in one direction and Jack in another.

汤姆往一个方向走，杰克往另外一个方向走。

Reforms are needed in many directions. 许多方面都需要改革。

He is walking in the direction of the police station.

他正朝警察局的方向走去。

He glanced in her direction and their eyes met.

他朝她这个方向一看，俩人的眼睛相遇了。

The singing group is under the direction of Mr Lee.

合唱团由李先生指挥。

温馨提示

direction 意为“指示；指引；用法说明”等，通常要用复数形式。

注意：表示邮件上的“姓名地址”时，也用复数形式。

Follow the directions on the medicine bottle.

请按药瓶上的说明服药。

Page No.52

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

Those who learn theory must develop the direction of practice. （2010·山东枣庄一轮验收）

A. to B. on C. in D. for

（2） 完成句子 （原创）

①I gave Mary full (地址)to enable her to find the post office.

②He did the work (在我的指导下).

（1） 解析：选 C。in the direction of 为固定搭配，意为“朝……方向”。注意不要用介词 to。

（2） ①directions ②under my direction

重点短语

5. more than one

意为“不止一个”，虽然在意义上表示复数，但作主语或修饰主语时，谓语动词用单数，与 many a(许多)用法一样；如果 more 修饰复数可数名词再跟 than one 作主语时，其谓语动词则要用复数。

Page No.53

More than one member has protested against the proposal.

不止一个成员反对这个建议。

More than one person has been concerned in this.

这里面涉及的不仅是一个人。

More persons than one have been involved.

涉及的不仅仅是一个人。

联想拓展

“more than+ adj.”意为“很；非常”。

在“more ... than ...”中，肯定“more”后面的，而否定“than”后面的，意为“是……而不是……”或者“与其……不如……”。

“more than ... can/could”是英语里的一个常见结构，可把 more than 理解为 not,表示否定，该结构意为“非……所能……；是……所不能……；不是……所能……”。

more often than not 经常；往往

In doing scientific experiments, one must be more than careful with the instruments.

做科学实验时，对待仪器必须非常小心才行。

Page No.54

If you tell your father what you have done, he will be more than a little angry.

如果你把所做的事情告诉你父亲，他会非常生气的。

Catherine is more diligent than intelligent.

与其说凯瑟琳聪明，不如说她勤奋。

高手过招

完成句子（原创）

①当我的老朋友布莱恩怂恿我抽一支烟时，我可再也熬不住了。

When my old friend Brian urged me to accept a cigarette, it was .

②可能的解释不止一个。

There is .

①more than I could bear

②more than one possible explanation

Page No.55

6. because of

因为；由于是介词短语，后跟名词、代词或动名词及 what 从句。

She got hurt because of what you'd said.

她因为你的话而受到伤害。

due to 意为“由于”常作表语，也作后置定语和状语。

thanks to 意为“多亏；由于”只作状语。

owing to 意为“由于”常作状语。

as a result of 意为“由于”作状语。

易混辨析

because/as/since/for

because 表示直接原因，语气最强。回答 why 提出的问题只能用 because。在强调句型中，也只能用 because。

as 用于解释做某事的原因，语气较弱，通常位于主句前。

since 表示的原因是指人们已知的事实，常意为“既然”。语气比 because 弱，但比 as 强。通常位于主句前，并常与 as 换用。

for 并列连词，连接并列分句，表示一种补充说明，是推测或判断的理由，语气较弱，不可位于主句前。有时可表示直接原因，相当于 because。

Page No.56

高手过招

单项填空

①People crowded on the road and could not go forward the traffic accident some cars had made.（2010•山西太原五中检测）

A. with B. since

C. because of D. because

②People may have different opinions about Karen, but I admire her. ,she is a great musician.（2010•陕西西安二中检测）

A. After all B. As a result

C. In other words D. As usual

①解析：选 C。考查表示“原因”的几个词的用法。since 与 because 都是连词，连接句子，with 表示原因时，前面多是形容词。如 His face was red with cold.他的脸冻得通红。because of 为介词短语，后跟名词或动名词短语，故选 C。

②解析：选 A。after all 毕竟；as a result 结果；in other words 换句话说；as usual 照例。根据题意选择 A。

Page No.57

7. come up

走近；上来；提出

The little boy came up to the stranger and showed him how to get to the police station.

小男孩向陌生人走去，并告诉他去警察局的路。

We won't forget the day when we watched the sun come up on top of the Tai Mountain.

我们不会忘记一同在泰山顶看日出的那天。

It is certain that the question will come up at the meeting.

这个问题在会议上一定会被提出来的。

The snowdrops are just beginning to come up.

雪莲花刚刚开始长出地面。

I am afraid something urgent has come up.

恐怕发生了什么急事。

Page No.58

联想拓展

come true	变成现实，成为现实

come across 邂逅
come about 发生
come at 向……扑来,攻击
come from 来自
come out 出版;开花；结果是
come up with 想出
come round 绕道而来；苏醒
come down 落下,塌下
come over （从远处）来到；横过
come into use 开始使用
how come ...?(表示理解)……怎么回事？
when it comes to sth.当涉及某事时
How come her French is so bad if she spent 5 years in pairs?
她在巴黎待了 5 年，但她的法语怎么这么糟糕。
When it comes to getting things done, he is useless.
一涉及到做事，他便不中用了。
Page No.59（关注公众号:学习界的 007.获取更多资料干货）
高手过招
（1） 单项填空
They aren’t afraid when they the difficulties in their study. （2010·河南镇平质量检测）
A. come up B. come to
C. come about D. come out
（2） 用 come 构成的短语填空（原创）
①The hunter walked across the forest when suddenly a
bear him.
②The magazine once a month.
③I wish you can to England on your holiday.
④The engineers have new ways of saving energy.
⑤They an old school friend in the street this morning.
Page No.60
（1） 解析：选 B。考查短语辨析。come to 此处意为“涉及，提到”；come about 意为“产生”，如:How did the difference between American English and British English come about? come up 意为“到来，来到”；come out 意为“出来，长出，发芽”。
（2） ①came at ②comes out ③come over ④come up with
⑤came across
8. such as
例如……；像这样的
易混辨析
such as/for example/that is/and so on
such as 用来列举事物。通常插在被举例的带有解释性质的事物与前面的需要进行解释的名词之间，意为“比如；诸如……之类的”，可与 like 互换，as 后不能有逗号。
for example 同 for instance 一样起到补充说明的作用，表明在众多的内容中仅取一两个例子，可放在举例之前或之后，意为“例如，举个例子”。
Page No.61
that is 是后面列举的事物的总量等于它前面所提到的总和，相当于 namely。也用 that is to say。
and so on 对几个事物进行列举时，在说了其中的几个以后，用 and so on 进行概括，说明还有例子，但不一一列出。

Boys like to play balls, such as football and basketball.

男孩子喜欢打球，比如足球和篮球。

Some students, Li Jun, for example, live in the country.

有些学生，如李军，住在农村。

I have three good friends, that is, John, Jack and Tom.

我有三个好朋友，即约翰、杰克和汤姆。

There are some books, pens, erasers and so on in my bag.

我的书包里有书、笔、橡皮等。

Page No.62

高手过招

单项填空

A lot of countries have gained excellent achievements in space technology, China, .（2010・安徽合肥八中检测）

A. such as　　B. for example

C. namely　　D. and so on

解析：选 B。四个词中只有 for example 位置灵活，可放在句首、句中或句末。

9. play a part (in)

扮演一个角色；参与

She plays an active part in local politics.

她积极参与地方政治活动。

She played a major part in the success of the scheme.

她对该计划的成功起了重要作用。

Page No.63

联想拓展

take part (in sth.)参加, 参与（某事）

the best part of sth.（某事物的）绝大部分（尤指一段时间）

for the most part 整体上; 通常; 多半

for my part 就我来说

高手过招

翻译句子（原创）

①有多少国家要参加（世界杯赛）？

②对我来说, 到哪儿吃饭都无所谓。

①How many countries will be taking part (in the World Cup)?

②For my part, I don’t mind where we eat.

Page No.64

重点句型

10. Which country do you think has the most English learners?

你觉得学英语最多的是哪个国家？

do you think/believe/expect/find/know/suppose 作为插入语，放在特殊疑问词后，其他内容紧跟其后并用陈述语序。

What time do you expect we will come and pick you up?

你希望我们几点来接你？

What do you suppose he will do after he hears about the good news?

你认为他听到那个好消息后会做什么呢？

Why do you think their team could win the football match?

你认为他们队为什么能赢得那场足球赛呢？

Page No.65

高手过招

单项填空

— is the best football player in your city?

—Jerry.（2010·江苏盐城质量检测）

A. Do you think who

B. Do you think whom

C. Who do you think

D. Whom do you think

解析：选 C。句中主要部分为 who is the best football player in your city。插入语为 do you think。

11. Believe it or not, there is no such thing as standard English.

信不信由你，（世界上）没有什么标准英语。

(1)believe it or not 在句中用作插入语，意为“信不信由你；我说的是真的”。

Page No.66

联想拓展

常用作插入语的还有：

generally speaking 一般来说

frankly speaking 坦白地说

judging from ...从……来判断

to tell you the truth 说真的；老实说

to be honest 说实在的

to make matters worse 更糟糕的是

高手过招

单项填空

① , boys are stronger than girls.

（2010·江苏徐州质量检测）

A. To speak generally B. Generally to speak

C. Generally speaking D. Generally spoken

② the hat he , the man is a soldier.

（2010·浙江温州一模）

A. Judging from; is wearing C. To judge by; putting

B. Judging by; is having on D. Judged by; is putting

Page No.67

（1）①解析：选 C。插入语 generally speaking 意为“一般来说”是固定搭配，指常规。

②解析：选 A。judging from 为固定搭配，在这里 judging 不与 the man 形成逻辑上的主动或被动关系。wear, have on, dress 都有“穿，戴”的意思，但搭配和意义不同。wear 和 have on 都可以表示“穿着”的状态，然而 have on 没有进行时态；dress 可以作及物和不及物动词，作不及物动词的意思是“穿衣”，作及物动词时宾语是人。

(2）such 上述一类的；诸如此类的

联想拓展

no such...as 没有这样的……

such as 例如

such...as...像……这样的……

such...that...这样……以至于……

易混辨析

such ... that ... /such ... as ...

在 such ... that ...结构中，that 是从属连词，引导结果状语从句，在从句中不作成分。

Page No.68

在 such ... as ...结构中，as 是关系代词，引导定语从句，在从句中常作宾语。

He is reading such a book as you borrowed from the library last week. 他在读的书和你上周从图书馆借来的一

样。（ as 是关系代词，引导定语从句）

He is reading such an interesting book that I want to borrow it. 他在读的书这么有趣，我想借来读读。（that 引导结果状语从句）

高手过招

单项填空

①Exercise is as any other to lose unwanted weight. （2010・四川成都六中检测）

A. so useful a way B. as a useful way

C. as useful a way D. such a useful way

②I suggest that we should take part in more such activities in future we did yesterday.（2010・江西南昌一中二模）

A. which B. as C. that D. than

Page No.69

（2）①解析：选 C。 as...as 结构中出现单数可数名词时，不定冠词和名词应放在形容词之后。so...as 只用于否定句，故不能选 A。

②解析：选 B。当先行词被 such 修饰时，关系代词用 as。

Page No.70

Unit 3 Travel journal

核心单词

1. persuade

vt.说服；劝服；使相信(同 convince)

常用结构：

persuade sb. of sth. 使某人相信某事

persuade sb. to do sth. 说服某人做某事

persuade sb. into doing sth. 说服某人做某事

persuade sb. out of doing sth. 说服某人不要做某事

persuade sb. that-clause 使某人相信……

Page No.71

联想拓展

talk sb. into/out of doing sth.

=reason sb. into/out of doing sth.

说服某人做/不做某事

trick sb. into/out of doing sth. 诱使某人做/不做某事

urge sb. into/out of doing sth. 怂恿某人做/不做某事

易混辨析

advise/persuade

advise 强调“劝告，建议”的动作，不注重结果；而 persuade 强调“已经说服”，重在结果。用法上：advise 可跟 v.-ing 形式作宾语，也可以接 that-clause （that sb. should do）,而 persuade 则不能。

I persuaded him of its truth. 我使他相信这是真的。

We will persuade him to take the medicine.

我们将说服他把药吃下去。

We persuaded her into taking the job.

我们说服她接受了这份工作。

Page No.72

I persuaded my father out of smoking.

我劝服父亲戒了烟。

She persuaded me that death does not end all.

她说服我相信了死并不能结束一切。

He persuaded her to go to school, even though she did not want to. 即使她不想去上学，他还是说服她去了。

He advised that we (should) leave early.

他建议我们早点出发。

高手过招

单项填空

①Alice trusts you; only you can her to give up the foolish idea. （2010·安徽合肥八中检测）

A. suggest B. attract C. tempt D. persuade

②Mr Li no longer smokes now because his wife him to give up smoking last year. （2010·江苏常州检测题）

A. suggested B. advised

C. persuaded D. told

Page No.73

①解析：选 D。句意为：爱丽丝信任你，唯有你能说服她放弃这种愚蠢的想法。persuade sb. to do sth. 说服某人做某事;suggest 劝说、建议，后不接动词不定式;attract 吸引;tempt 诱惑，引诱，均不符题意。故选D项。

②解析：选 C。考查 advise sb. to do sth.和 persuade sb. to do sth.的区别。advise sb. to do sth. 意思是“劝某人做某事”，强调动作，尤其是表达“劝而不服”时多用此结构；persuade sb. to do sth.意思是“劝服某人做某事”，强调结果。

2. determine

vt. (使)决定,决心要;确定

常用结构：

determine + n. / pron.决(确)定

determine to do sth.决定做某事 (表示动作，是非延续性动词短语)

determine on／upon ...决定……

determine that／what ...决定……

Page No.74

determine sb．to do sth.使某人决定做某事

determine sb. against sth.使某人决定不做某事

be determined to do sth.决心做某事 (表示状态，可与表示时间段的状语连用)

We determine to go to the railway station at once.

我们决定立刻去火车站。

The court determined that the man was guilty of assault.

法庭裁定那个人犯了侵犯人身罪。

That determined her against leaving home.

那件事使她决定不离开家了。

联想拓展

determined adj. 坚决的，有决心的

determination n. 决心

I was determined to make it as a jazz musician.

我决定要成为一名爵士乐音乐家。

Page No.75

温馨提示

be determined to do 与 determine to do 意思基本一致，但前者表示状态，可与某段时间状语连用；后者表示动作，是非延续性的动词短语。类似的短语还有：prepare for／be prepared for，worry about／be worried about。这类结构常考查分词作状语的用法。

高手过招

单项填空

He left school early and as an adolescent, to make his fortune in America. （2010·江苏城头中学一轮检测）

A. is determined B. had be determined

C. determined　　D. determining

解析：选 C。考查 determine 的用法。根据句意应使用 be determined to 结构，此处 determined 为形容词作伴随状语。

Page No.76

3. insist

v. 坚持；坚决要求

You can come back later, if you insist.

如果你一定要坚持，就稍后再来吧。

常用结构：

insist on/upon sth./(sb's) doing sth.

坚持某事/要求（某人）做某事

insist that.....(should)坚持……

I still insist on my viewpoint.　我仍然坚持我的观点。

He insisted on paying for the meal. 他坚持要付饭钱。

Mother insisted on our washing the clothes by ourselves.

妈妈坚决要求我们自己洗衣服。

温馨提示

insist 当“坚决要求”解时，后面的从句应用虚拟语气，即谓语部分用“should+动词原形”或直接用动词原形；如果 insist 当“坚持（认为；说）”解时，后面的从句不用虚拟语气。

Page No.77

高手过招

单项填空

①The man insisted　　a taxi for me even though I told him I lived nearby.（原创）

A. find　　B. to find

C. on finding　　D. in finding

②I advised that he　　to the hospital at once, but he insisted that he　　quite well then.（2010·山东寿光一中一轮检测）

A. be sent; was feeling

B. was sent; felt

C. be sent; feel

D. should be sent; should feel

①解析：选 C。insist on doing sth.是习惯搭配，意为“坚持做某事”。

②解析：选 A。advise 引导宾语从句，从句中的谓语动词不管什么人称都应用 should do; should 也可以省去，只用动词原形表述事实。insist 在此处意为“坚持认为”。故选 A。

Page No.78

4. once

用法较多，意思也比较丰富，既可以用作连词，也可以用作副词。

once 用作连词时，意为“一旦……就……”，连接时间状语从句，相当于 as soon as。

once 用作副词时，意为“曾经；一度；从前”。它是一个不确定的时间副词，其位置一般是在行为动词之前，系动词之后。

once 用作副词，也可意为“一次”。

Once you start, you will never give up. 一旦开始了，你就不要放弃。

Physics is easy to learn once you understand the rules.

一旦你理解了规则，物理就不难学了。

Once he lived in America, but now he lives in England.

他曾经居住在美国，但现在他生活在英国。

His song was once very popular among the young people.

他的歌曾经在年轻人中很流行。

Page No.79

The old professor comes to see us once a week.

那个老教授一周来看我们一次。

Tell us the story once more.把那个故事再给我们讲一遍。

联想拓展

at once 立刻；马上

once again 再一次；又一次（相当于 once more）

all at once 突然（相当于 suddenly)

once upon a time 很早以前；从前

once in a while 偶尔；间或 once/as soon as

once 偏重于条件，而 as soon as 偏重于时间。

Once you see the film, you’d never forget it(不宜用 as soon as).

你一旦看了这部电影，你就永远不会忘记它。

As soon as he got off the plane, we wanted to say hello to him(不宜用 once).

他一下飞机，我们就想向他打招呼。

Page No.80

高手过招

单项填空

① environmental damage is done, it takes many years for the ecosystem (生态系统) to recover. （原创）

A. Even if B. If only C. While D. Once

② you understand this rule, you’ll have no further difficulty. （2010·山东烟台质量检测）

A. Once B. Unless C. As D. Until

①解析：选 D。句子为 once 引导的时间状语从句，意为“一旦；一……就……”。句意为：一旦环境遭到损害，就需要许多年才能使生态系统恢复。even if 引导让步状语从句，意为“尽管”。if only 意为“要是…… 就好了”，引导从句的谓语动词常用虚拟语气。while 意为“当……的时候”，引导从句的谓语动词必须是延续性动词。故选 D。

②解析：选 A。考查由 once 引导的时间状语从句，意为“一旦”。句意为：一旦明白了这条规则，就再也没有困难了。

Page No.81

5. view

n. 风景；视野；观点；见解

vt. 观看；注视；考虑

The house has a view over the sea.

这座房子面向大海，视野开阔。

What is your view on school punishments?

你对学校的处罚有什么看法？

The plan was viewed favorably.这项计划是受到称赞的。

联想拓展

in one’s view 在某人看来

come into view 进入视野，看得见

in full view (of sb./sth.) 完全看得见

in view of sth. 鉴于，考虑到，由于

with a view to sth. / to doing sth.为了，指望Several possible buyers have come to view the house. 几个可能是买主的人来看过房子。

高手过招

单项填空

On the top of this mountain, you can get a wonderful of the nearby hills. （2010·山西太原五中检测）

sight B. view C. distance D. look

解析：选 B。get a view of 为固定搭配，意为“看到……的景象”。

重点短语

6. care about

关心；担心；在乎；喜欢

I really care about my work. 我真的关心我的工作。

联想拓展

care for 喜爱；照顾；重视

take care 当心

take care of 照料; 关怀; 处理

under the care of

由……管理, 在……的照料下, 在……的保护下

Page No.83

with care 小心, 慎重

She doesn’t care for that colour. 她不喜欢那种颜色。

He spent years caring for his sick mother.

他数年里一直在照顾生病的母亲。

I do care for what my teacher says.

我的确尊重老师说的话。

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

That old man is so greedy(贪婪的) that he nothing but money, not even his relatives. （原创）

A. look about B. search for

C. cares about D. takes care of

（2） 完成句子 （原创）

①他一点也不关心别人，只想着自己。

He doesn’t care other people at all; he is always thinking of himself.

②爱因斯坦对金钱不感兴趣，对薪水也不计较。

Einstein who cared little money never cared his salary.

Page No.84

(1) 解析：选 C。考查短语辨析。look about 到处看；search for 寻找，相当于 look for；care about 关心；在乎；take care of 照料。

(2) ①about②for; about

7. change one’s mind

改变主意

Maybe you’ll change your mind after thinking it over.

也许你仔细考虑之后会改变主意。

联想拓展

make up one’s mind (to do) 下定决心（做某事）

have a/no mind to do 有/无意做……

lose one’s mind 失去理智

read one’s mind 看出某人的心思

speak one’s mind 直言不讳be

of the same mind 意见一致

be in/of two minds 拿不定主意

give one’s mind to 注 意 ……
keep one’s mind on 专心于……
Page No.85
take one’s mind off sth. 转移某人的注意
bear/keep sth. in mind 记住某事bring/call
sth. to mind 回忆某事
put one’s mind to sth. 全神贯注于某事
I have made up my mind to leave, and nothing you say will change it.
我已经下定决心要离开，不管你说什么我都不会改变主意了。
①I’ve made up my mind to be a doctor.
②Nothing will make me change my mind.
Page No.86
8. give in
屈服，让步，投降；上交
联想拓展
give in (to sb./sth.) 向……让步
give up sth./doing 放弃（做）某事
give away 赠送；泄露
give back 归还；恢复
give off 放出，散发(光、热、烟、气味等)
give out 分配；分发；发布；（食物，燃料，电力等）被用光；筋疲力尽
Seeing that he could not persuade me, he had to give in (to my view). 由于无法说服我，他不得不让步。
Our food supply at last gives out.
我们的食物终于用完了。
His strength gave out.
他已筋疲力尽。
Page No.87
高手过招
单项填空
It is always the husband who first when a quarrel breaks out between the young couple.（2010 •山东聊城检测）
A. give away B. gives out C. gives in D. gives off
解析：选 C。考查动词短语辨析。句意为：当年轻夫妻之间发生争吵时，最先让步的总是丈夫。give away 赠送，泄露，出卖；give out 分发，用完，消耗尽；give in 投降，屈服，让步；give off 放出，散发出。重点句型
9. Which kind of transport do you prefer to use: bus or train?
汽车和火车，你更喜欢使用哪种交通方式？
prefer to do (rather than do) 意为“宁可；宁愿（表选择）”或者“更喜欢做某事”。 其本身带有 like better 的含义，所以不能再与表示程度的 better 或 more 连用。
Page No.88
联想拓展
prefer sth. 喜欢某事/物
prefer doing sth. 更喜欢做某事
prefer+to do sth. （表示特定场合下）更喜欢做某事
prefer sb. to do sth. 宁愿某人做某事
prefer A to B/prefer doing A to doing B
宁愿……而不愿……

prefer to do A rather than do B

宁愿做 A 而不愿做 B

prefer + that-clause (虚拟语气)+(should) +do

喜欢做某事

Do you prefer cooking for yourself or eating in a restaurant?

你是喜欢自己做饭还是下馆子？

Their father prefers them to be home early.

他们的父亲宁愿他们早点回家。

I prefer writing a term paper to taking an examination.

我宁愿写一篇学术论文也不愿参加考试。

Page No.89

He preferred to die rather than become a traitor.

他宁死也不做叛徒。

Would you prefer that I（should）come on Monday instead of on Tuesday? 你宁愿让我星期一来而不是星期二来吗？

高手过招

单项填空

My sister singing dancing while I dance sing.（原创）

A. prefers; to; would rather; than

B. would rather; than; prefer; to

C. prefers; rather than; would rather; to

D. would rather; to; prefer; to

解析：选 A。考查固定搭配。prefer 的搭配是 prefer to do rather than do 或 prefer doing to doing；would rather 的搭配是 would rather do than do 或 would do rather than do，因此 A 项正确。

Page No.90

10. When I told her the air would be hard to breathe and it would be very cold, she said it would be an interesting experience.

当我告诉她那里空气稀薄，呼吸困难，而且天气很冷时，她却说这将是一次有趣的经历。

“...the air would be hard to breathe ...”是“主语+系动词+形容词+不定式”结构，其中不定式的谓语与主语在意义上是动宾关系，但要用主动形式表示被动意义，不定式后面如果是不及物动词要在其后加适当的介词与主语构成动宾关系。这一类的形容词通常可以描绘主语的情绪、态度、品质属性或者难易程度，如 hard, difficult, easy, nice, interesting, important, pleasant 和 comfortable 等。

Your writing is impossible to read. 你写的字太难辨认了。

Do you think the water is safe to drink?

你认为这水喝起来安全吗？

The chair looks rather hard, but it is very comfortable to sit on. 这把椅子看上去很硬，但坐起来很舒服。

Page No.91

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①有时候她很不容易理解。

She was difficult at times.

②他是唯一一个被授予这种荣誉的外国人。

He was the only foreigner such an honour.

①to understand ②to be given

11. A determined person always tries to finish the job, no matter how hard it is.

有决心的人总是努力完成工作，不管它有多么难。

no matter how ...引导让步状语从句，意为“无论多么……”，how 后跟形容词或副词，相当于“however + adj./adv.”句式。

联想拓展

no matter 意为“无论；不管”时，引导让步状语从句，常用于下列句型中：no matter what (who/when etc.)... 分别表示“无论何事”、“无论何人”、“无论何时”等，这个从句可以置于主句之前，也可以置于主句之后。 no matter后接关系代词或关系副词引导的状语从句在句中作让步状语。

Page No.92

注意：whatever, however, whoever etc.可引导状语从句，也可引导名词性从句。

No matter what happened, he would not mind.

=Whatever happened, he would not mind.

不管发生什么，他都不在意。

（错）Prisoners have to eat no matter what they’re given.

（对）Prisoners have to eat whatever they’re given.

囚犯们只能给什么吃什么。

No matter how hard he works, he can not get a promotion.

不管他工作多努力, 他就是得不到提升。

No matter what you do, you must be very careful.

不管做什么事，你都必须非常细心。

No matter who you are (=Whoever you are), I’ll never let you in.无论你是谁，我绝不让你进去。

No matter which you choose(=Whichever you choose), you will be satisfied. 不论你选择哪一个，你都会满意的。

No matter where I go (=Wherever I go), I will be thinking of you. 无论我去哪里，我都会想着你。

Page No.93

高手过招

单项填空

① the problem may be, we must solve it ourselves.（2010·山东威海一轮验收）

A. Whatever difficult B. How difficult

C. However difficult D. No matter what difficult

②It is generally considered unwise to give a child he or she wants. （2010·山东枣庄检测）

A. however B. whatever

C. whichever D. whenever

①解析：选 C。句意为：不管问题有多难，我们都要独立解决。 difficult 为形容词，因此用 how 修饰，表示程度。however 在这里没有转折的意思，相当于 no matter how，因此答案为 C。

②解析：选B。考查从属关联词的用法。whatever 等于anything that 或 everything that，引导宾语从句。whatever 一方面起引导词的作用，同时作从句中 wants 的宾语。

Page No.94

Unit 4 Earthquakes

核心单词

1. burst

vt. & vi. (burst, bursting)爆炸；胀裂；突然而起；闯入；

充满；满盈；n. 突然破裂；爆发

联想拓展

burst out 迸发；突然发作；突然……起来

burst open 推开；忽然打开； 裂开

burst through 冲开；冲破；拨开

burst in upon 打断(谈话等)；突然出现； 突然到达

burst in/ into 闯入； 突然出现； 突然……起来； 突然发作

Page No.95

另外，burst into 后接名词时可表示不同的意义：

burst into laughter 突然大笑起来

burst into tears 突然大哭起来

burst into cheers 突然欢呼起来
burst out 后接动名词也表示同样的意思
burst out laughing/crying 突然大笑/哭起来
高手过招
单项填空
Every time he thought of his past, he couldn't help bursting .
(2010·济南一模)
A. when; out tears B. that; into crying
C. which; into tears D. /; out crying
解析：选 D。burst out 后接 v.-ing 形式，every time 相当于连词，
引导状语从句。故选 D。
Page No.96
2. event
n. 事件；大事；比赛项目
The new book was the cultural event of the year.
这本新书的出版是今年文化界的大事。
Coming events cast their shadows before.
未来之事先有征兆。
The next event will be the 100-metre race.
下一个比赛项目是 100 米赛跑。
常用结构：
at all events 无论怎样
in any event 无论如何
in the event of 万一；倘若
In the event of rain, the game will be postponed.
要是下雨，球赛就延期。
Page No.97
易混辨析
occurrence/event/incident/accident
occurrence 系常用词, 指“任何发生的事件”。
event 指“有重要意义的历史事件、重大事件”。
incident 指“事件”, 尤指“比较不重要的小事件”。
accident 指“意外事故”。
高手过招
单项填空
①The National Day and the International Labour Day are
great in our country.(2010·河南镇平二轮)
A. things B. incidents
C. accidents D. events
②How many are going to be held in this Summer Olympic Games?(2010·江苏启东一轮)
A. accidents B. incidents
C. events D. sports
Page No.98
①解析：选 D。考查词义辨析。things 是普通用词，指“情况；状况”；incident 意为“事情；发生的事（常指小事）”；accident 意为“事故”，强调未预料到的事情；event 的意为“事件”，多指大事件。
②解析：选 C。考查词义辨析。accident 意为“事故”，指没有料到的恶性事件。incident 指“事件”，多指不是很重要的事情。event 多指“政治性的事件”，尤指大事。event 也可以指（体育运动中的）比赛项目。

3. rescue

n.&vt. 援救，营救
常用结构：
rescue sb./ sth. from sb./ sp.　把……从……营救出来
come to/ go to sb’s rescue = rescue sb.　援救某人
a rescue team　救援队
a rescue mission　救援任务
rescue workers　救援人员
Page No.99
The police came to his rescue and pulled him out of the river.
警察来救他，把他从河里拉了出来。
The rescue team made countless rescues during the earthquake.
营救队在这次地震期间进行了无数次救援。
Michael rescued a boy from drowning.
迈克尔把溺水的男孩救了起来。
高手过招
用 rescue 的适当形式填空（原创）
①The mother, along with her two children,　　from the sinking boat by a passing ship.
②The firemen　　five children from the burning house yesterday.
①has been rescued ②rescued
Page No.100
4. judge
n. 法官；鉴赏家；裁判
vt.判断；估计
His father used to be a judge.　他的父亲过去是一名法官。
She’s a good judge of wine.　她是鉴别酒的专家。
The blind can’t judge colours.　盲人无法判断颜色。
Don’t judge a man by his looks.　不要以貌取人。
联想拓展
judgment n.判断，辨别力
judge sb./ sth. by/from　通过……判断……
as far as I judge　我认为
judging from...从……来看，　根据……判断Judging
from what he said, he must be an honest man. 从他所
说的话来看，他是个诚实的人。
Page No.101
高手过招
(1)单项填空
　　the hat he　　, the old man is a farmer.(2010·山东日照检测)
A. Judging from; is wearing
B. Judging by; is having on
C. To judge by; putting
D. Judged by; is putting
（2）用 judge 的适当形式填空（原创）
①　　from his appearance, he must be a rich man.
②In her　　, he must be from the south.
(1) 解析：选 A。judging from 为固定搭配，此处 judging 不与 the old man 形成逻辑主动或被动关系。wear, have on, dress 都有“穿，戴”的意思，但搭配和意义不同。wear 和 have on 都可以表示“穿着”的状态，然而

have on 没有进行时态；dress 可以作及物和不及物动词，作不及物动词时意为“穿衣”，作及物动词时宾语

是人。

(2)①Judging ②judgment

Page No.102

5. ruin

vt. 毁坏；毁灭。既可指实际的东西，也可指抽象的东西。

n.［U］毁坏；毁灭 ［C］（常用作复数）废墟

联想拓展

in ruins 严重损坏；破败不堪；落空

bring come to ruin 使某人失败；使倾家荡产

bring ruin upon oneself 自取灭亡

fall/go to ruin 毁灭, 灭亡; 崩溃; 破坏掉

ruin oneself 毁掉自己

易混辨析

destroy/ruin/damage/harm

destroy 表示在肉体上、精神上或道义上的彻底摧毁，使之无法恢复，也可以表示对某物体进行完全的毁坏。

ruin 一般指对物体或生命彻底的破坏，但往往是非暴力的，也往往不是一次性打击的结果，常指对美好的或希望中的事物的破坏。

Page No.103

damage 一般指对物体或生命的局部损伤，使整体的价值或作用降低或变得无价值、无作用。这种损伤可 以是暴力的或一次性破坏的结果，也可以指非暴力的长期损害的结果。

harm 一般指伤害有生命的东西，常指伤及人的健康、权利、事业等。

What he faced ruined his hope.

他所面对的使他的希望破灭了。

The whole city was destroyed in the earthquake.

整个城市在地震中被毁掉了。

Laziness will ruin one’s prospects. 懒惰会使人自毁前程。

We wanted to have a look at the ruins of Pompeii.

我们想看一下庞贝城的废墟。

They managed to repair the houses that had been damaged.

他们设法修复了受到破坏的房子。

Page No.104

高手过招

单项填空

①I was by that law case. I’m a man. (2010・11・西安月考)

A. ruined; ruined B. ruined; destroying

C. damaged; destroyed D. destroyed; damaging

②Many old temples ruins are now being rebuilt. （原创）

A. on B. by C. with D. in

①解析：选 A。句意为：我被那场官司搞得倾家荡产，不名一文。ruin 常用于借喻中，指损坏到了不能再使用的程度；damage 不能指人，只指物；destroy 指完全彻底地破坏，含有无法修复之意，也可用于借喻。第二个空应用过去分词作定语，表被动和完成之意。

②解析：选 D。in ruins 为固定搭配，意为“处于颓废状态”。

Page No.105

6. bury

vt.埋葬；掩埋；使沉浸于

联想拓展

be buried alive 被活埋

be buried under 为……所压倒；沉浸于,忙于
bury (oneself) in 埋头于；专心于；退居于(乡间等)
=be buried in
bury one’s head in the sand
自欺欺人，逃避现实（来自鸵鸟的习性）
The house was half buried under snow.
房子一半被埋在雪中。
If you continue to bury your head in the sand and refuse to recognize the fact that some of your classmates are catching up with you, it won’t be long before you find yourself left behind.
如果你再拒绝承认你的一些同班同学已经赶上来了这一事实，那么不用多久，你就会发现自己落后了。
Page No.106
高手过招
选词填空（burying/buried）（原创）
I have a sigh, my head in my hands.
buried
重点短语
7. right away
立刻，马上
I’ll return the book to you right away. 我会马上还书给你。
If war breaks out, we shall be called up right away.
如果战争爆发，我们将立即被征召服役。
联想拓展
right now=at once=immediately=in no time 立刻，马上
Page No.107
(1) 解析：选 D。考查短语辨析。in no time 意为“片刻之后”，而
in a flash 意为“片刻之间”。
(2) I want it typed right away, please.
Page No.108
8. think of
认为；考虑
联想拓展
think poorly of 不放在眼里；轻视
think twice 再三考虑
think little/nothing of 轻视；忽略
think much/highly of 重视；看重，评价高
What do you think of ...?认为……怎么样？
think about 考虑；回想；想起
think of 考虑；记忆，记起
think sth. over 仔细想；谨慎思考；作进一步考虑
think sth. out 认真考虑；仔细盘算
think sth. up 想出，发明
Page No.109
The government thinks highly of his invention because it will benefit the whole country.
政府非常重视他的发明，因为它将有益于全国人民。
The foolish boss thought little of my suggestions on that project.
那个愚蠢的老板根本就不重视我对那项工程的建议。
He is thinking about travelling in the summer holidays.

他正在考虑暑假旅游的事。

I can’t think of his name at the moment.
我一时想不起他的名字。
Please think over what I said. 请仔细考虑我说的话。
He thought out a new idea. 他盘算出了一个新主意。
高手过招
单项填空
①How did you think such a clever way out of difficulty? （原创）
A. over B. about C. up D. on
②Can you a way of solving the problem? （原创）
A. discover B. invent up C. think up D. invent
Page No.110
①解析：选 C。句意为：你怎样想出如此明智的办法摆脱困境？其他选项与 think 搭配无“想出”之意。
②解析：选 C。think up 在这里相当于 think of，意为“考虑，思考”。
9. at an end
结束，终结（= finish）
联想拓展
end n.&v. 结事，终结与
end 搭配的常用短语at
the end of 在……末尾
by the end of 到……末为止
in the end 最后，终于
at a loose end 无所事事；处于杂乱状态
make ends meet 收支相抵
The war was finally at an end.战争终于结束了。
Page No.111
①by the end of ②in the end ③at the end of
10. instead of
代替，而不是
The Chinese use chopsticks instead of knives and forks.
中国人不用刀叉,用筷子。
Instead of working, Jack was idling away his time.
杰克不去工作,虚度着光阴。
She decided to leave here on Sunday instead of Monday.
她决定星期日而不是星期一离开这里。
Page No.112
易混辨析
instead/instead of/in place of/take the place of
instead 是副词，单独使用，用于句首或句末作状语，意为“而是，相反”。
instead of 是复合介词，后接名词、代词、或动名词，意为“代替、而不……”。
in place of 为介词短语，也是“代替、而不”的意思，表示“以甲代乙”，而 instead of 则是“用甲不用乙”，除“代替”外，还有对乙否定的意思，有时意为“不”。
take the place of (replace)作谓语，用在名词、代词前。
高手过招
单项填空
①—I think we should buy a new curtain this one.
—Yes. It looks a bit ugly .(2010·江西赣州一轮)
A. to replace; as it is

B. to in place of; now

C. to take the place of; as it was

D. instead of; than that one

Page No.113

②We will go there on foot by bus. What about you? (2010・11・福建福州月考)

A. instead B. instead of C. without D. but

①解析：选 A。to replace 为不定式作目的状语。as it is 意为“现在的样子”。

②解析：选 B。instead of 意为“用一种形式代替另一种形式”。C 项有一定干扰性，without 意为“在没有……的情况下”，因此不合题意。

11. the number of

意为“……的数量、数目”，作主语时谓语动词用单数；a number of 意为“一些，很多”，相当于 many, 后接可数名词复数，当它作主语时，谓语动词用复数。

The number of competitors is limit.

参赛者的数量是有限的。

A number of problems have arisen. 已经出现了一些问题。

Page No.114

a large /great/good number of；a great/good many;a good few/quite a few+可数名词复数，意为“大量的”；

a great/good deal; a great/ large amount of; quite a little+ 不可数名词，意为“大量的”；

a lot of/lots of; a great /large quantity of; large quantities of/ plenty of +可数名词复数/不可数名词均可，意为“大量的”。但是 a great/large quantity of ..., large quantities of ...作主语时谓语动词与 quantity 形式一致。

高手过招

单项填空

During the past two years, the number of automobile accidents in New York City decreased.(2010・11・山东烟台月考)

A. have B. has

C. was D. were

解析：选 B。the number of+复数名词，其主语是 number，故谓语动词用单数，意为“……的数量”。

Page No.115

重点句型

12. In the farmyards, the chickens and even the pigs were too nervous to eat.

农家大院里的鸡，甚至猪都紧张得不吃食。

“too + adj./adv.+动词不定式”结构简称为“too ... to”结构，在大多数情况下表示否定意义，通常可意为“太……而不能……;太……无法……”。

“too ...to”结构表示否定的常见句型有：

too +adj./adv. + to do，有时 too 后也可跟一个起形容词作用的过去分词。

too ... to/to be done 形式。这是“too ...to”结构中不定式为被动式时的变体，如果主语是不定式动作的承受者，不定式既可以用主动式，也可以用被动式，此时用主动式虽然在形式上是主动的，但在意义上却是被动的。

too + adj. + a (an) + n.+ to + v./to be done 形式。这个句型在 too+ adj.后再接一个带不定冠词的名词，不定冠词一定要放置于形容词后。与此同时，只有当 too 后形容词修饰一个可数名词时，才可以在形容词与名词间加不定冠词“a/an”。当句子主语能发出该不定式的动作时，可以用 to + v.的主动式，当主语是该不定式动作的承受者时，则用 to be + v.-ed 的被动式。

Page No.116

温馨提示

并不是所有“too ...to”结构的句子都表示否定意义，在下列情况下，“too ...to”结构可以表示肯定意义：

“too ...to”结构之前带有 but, only, all, never, not 时，是强调肯定的表示法，意为“非常……，十分……，实在……，真是太……”等。

“too ...to”结构中带有表示某种心情或描绘性的形容词或副词，如 ready，eager, satisfied, kind, willing, easy,

anxious 等加动词不定式结合成一个不可分割的状态、态度、倾向或心情等，并且其后的不定式不是说明 too

的具体内容，而是修饰形容词，故不定式不再表示结果。

在“too ...to”结构中，不定式为否定式时，是构成的双重否定，其意为“非常/很/太/那么……不会不/必定能/所以能……”，也不表示否定意义。

Page No.117

I，m too tired to think of anything now.

我太累了，什么也不能想了。

The tea is too hot to drink/to be drunk. 茶太热，不能喝。

The shoes are too badly broken to be mended.

这些鞋子破烂得不能修补。

He，s too experienced an artist to mind what the critics say. (＝As an artist he，s too experienced to mind what the critics say.)

他是个经验非常丰富的艺术家，不会介意批评家说些什么。

He is too experienced an artist to be worried by what the critics say.

他是一个经验非常丰富的艺术家，不至于为批评家们的议论而担忧。

I am but too glad to do so. 我非常喜欢这样做。

He was too anxious to do this job. 他非常想做这件工作。

The girl is too careful not to do it well.

这姑娘很细心，完全能做好那件事。

Page No.118

高手过招

单项填空

—He seems tired to do it.

—But I am only glad to do it.(2010·江苏常州一轮)

A. very; too B. extremely; too

too; too D. very; very

解析：选 C。第一空为 too ...to 太……而不能……，第二空前有 only 所以 too ...to 强调肯定，意为“非常、十分”。

13. It seemed as if the world was at an end!

仿佛到了世界末日！

联想拓展

as if=as though 意为“仿佛，像，似乎”。通常用在 be，look，seem，sound，taste，smell 及 feel 等连系动词的后面。如果表示真实情况应该用陈述语气；如果表示非真实情况则应该用虚拟语气, 其谓语动词的虚拟式与 wish 后面宾语从句中谓语动词的虚拟式相同。引导方式状语从句时也要用虚拟语气。

Page No.119

注意：as if (though)后面除了跟句子外，还可以跟名词、动词不定式、形容词(短语)、介词短语和分词。另外，as if (though)还可以表达感叹语气，来对某项建议、假设和推测表示不赞成、惊讶、不满和厌恶等。

How wild his white hair looked as if it had been electrified! 他的白发十分凌乱，好像触了电似的。(虚拟语气)

She seems as if she is going to cry. 她似乎要哭了。

(陈述事实)

As if anyone would believe that story！

好像有人竟会相信那样的事！

As if we were all stupid and he alone clever！

哼，就仿佛我们都是傻瓜，只有他一个人聪明似的。

He raised his hand as if to take off his hat.

他举起他的手，好像要取下帽子。

He behaved as if nothing had happened.

他表现的好像什么也没发生。

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

—Will you go to the exhibition tomorrow?

—Yes, I will go　　it，s windy.(2010・11・山东滨州月考)

A. as if　　B. even though

C. as soon as　D. as though

（2） 翻译句子（原创）

①你像是见了鬼似的。

②这个男孩向四周察看，像在寻找什么东西。

(1) 解析：选 B。even though 相当于 even if，引导让步状语从句，意为“即使”；as if（though）引导方式状语从句；as soon as 引导时间状语从句。

(2) ①You looked as if you had seen a ghost.

②The boy looked about as if in search of something.

Page No.121

14. All hope was not lost.

不是所有的希望都破灭了。

all, both, each, every, everyone, everything, always, whole, wholly, entirely, altogether 等具有总括意义的词后跟否定词 not 连用时，一般都表示部分否定，其中 all, both, each, every 无论在 not 之前还是之后，都表示部分否定。

但如果句子中出现下列单词或短语则该句为全部否定：none of+n./pron.; neither+n./pron.; no+n.; nothing；nobody；neither；never；nowhere；neither ... nor 等。

All that glitters is not gold. 发光的不一定都是金子。

Not all body languages mean the same thing in different countries.

并非所有的肢体语言在不同的国家里都有相同的意思。

Each machine here is not produced in our plant.

这里的机器不全是我们厂生产的。

Page No.122

高手过招

单项填空

We couldn’t eat in a restaurant because　　of us had　　money on us. （原创）

A. all; no　　B. any; no

C. none; any　　D. no one; any

解析：选 C。考查全部否定。句意为：因为我们大家身上都没带钱，所以不能在饭店里吃饭。故选 C 项。

Page No.123

Unit 5 Nelson Mandela-a modern hero

核心单词

1. quality

n. ［U,C］质，质量，品质；特性（既可用于描述物品，也用于描述人物）

［C］性质；特性；特点

Modesty is one of his good qualities.

谦虚是他的美德之一。

One quality of wood is that it can burn.

木料的一个特点是能燃烧。

Page No.124

常用结构：

high quality 优质

poor quality 劣质

average quality 一般的品质
Wine of high quality costs more than that of poor quality.
优质的葡萄酒比劣质的葡萄酒价格要高。易
混辨析
quality/quantity
quality 质，质量
quantity 数量；大量
For study, quality often matters more than quantity.
就学习而言，质量往往比数量更重要。
Quantities of food were on the table. 桌上摆了大量食物。
There is a small quantity of water left in the bottle.
瓶子里还剩下少量的水。
Page No.125
高手过招
完成句子(原创)
①他仔细检查家具的品质。
He examined carefully.
②他具备了一个成功商人应具有的所有品质。
He has of a successful businessman.
①the quality of the furniture
②all the qualities
Page No.126
2. devote
vt.献身；专心于
常用结构：
devote oneself/one’s energy/one’s time to (doing) sth.
奉献/精力/时间于某事
sb. be devoted to (doing) sth. 某人献身做某事
He devoted all his life to China’s aviation.
他的一生都奉献给了中国的航空事业。
He’s devoted his whole life to the protection of the rare animals. 他终生献身于保护珍稀动物。
He is devoted to helping the poor. 他致力于帮助穷困的
Page No.127
联想拓展
类似于 devote ... to ... 的结构中 to 为介词的词组还有：
object to 反对 attend to 办理；照顾；注意听
look forward to 期待；盼望 be opposed to 反对
devote ... to 贡献给……stick to 坚持
lead to 导致 pay attention to 注意到
be related to 与……有关 see to 务必做到； 负责……
refer to 提到；指的是 turn to 翻到； 求助于
高手过招
单项填空
The idea for the new machine came to Mr Baker to his invention. (2010·陕西师大附中月考)
A. while he was devoted B. while devoting
C. while devoting himself D. while devoted
解析：选 A。考查 be devoted to 这一结构。注意不要误选 D 项，因为主句的主语 the idea 与从句的主语 Mr

Baker/he 不一致，因此从句中的主语和谓语动词 he was 不能省略。

Page No.128

3. equal

adj.相同的；平等的

vt.等于，比得上

n.同等/相等的人或物

He asked us to cut the apple into three equal pieces.

他让我们把苹果切成三等份。

None of us can equal her in intelligence.

我们中没人能在智力方面比得上她。

常用结构：

be equal to sth./doing sth.胜任某事/ 做某事

A equals BA 等于 B

without equal/have no equal 无与伦比/无比

Are you equal to (doing) the task?你能胜任这项工作吗？

Yao Ming is a basketball player without equal in China.

在中国，姚明是个无与伦比的篮球运动员。

Page No.129

高手过招

单项填空

He doubted whether she would be to the task. （原创）

equal B. similar C. familiar D. content

解析：选 A。be equal to sth. 胜任，符合句意。content 意为“满意的，满足的”不符句意，其他选项也均与句意不符。

4. reward

n.报答；酬金（为某些特殊服务提供或给予的金钱）

vt.酬谢，奖赏；报应；惩罚（坏人或坏事）

常用结构：

as a reward (for) 作为（对某事的）报酬（或奖赏）

give/ offer a reward to sb. for sth. 为某事而给某人报酬

in reward for 为酬答……；作为奖励……

reward sb.(with ...)for sth. 为某事（而以……）报答……

Page No.130

易混辨析

reward/award/prize

reward 表示“奖赏，酬谢”，动词只能以人或人的行为作宾语，名词表示某人因做了某事而应得到某东西。

award 作名词指正式或官方 “给予，颁发，授予”（奖章，奖金等），也可以指法庭裁决；作动词时可以跟两个宾语，award sb. sth.把某物授予/判给某人。

prize 只能作名词，表示“奖赏、奖金、奖品”，尤指在比赛中获得的荣誉。

It’s a reward for virtue.那是对美德的回报。

It is unfair that he gets very little in reward for his hard work. 他工作很辛苦，报酬却很少，这不公平。

How can I reward your kindness?

我如何酬谢你的好意呢？

Jim rewarded the boy a pound for bringing back the lost dog.

男孩把吉姆丢失的狗带了回来，为此吉姆奖赏给他一英镑。

Page No.131

高手过招

单项填空

①Martin Luther King, a great Black leader in the movement against racial discrimination, was the

Nobel Prize for peace for his outstanding contribution to world peace. (2010・11・河南洛阳月考)

A. rewarded B. given C. awarded D. offered

②They the winners with gifts of fruit and flowers. （原创）

A. rewarded B. awarded C. charged D. paid

③The girl got nothing in for her kindness, which made her very sad.

A. prize B. award C. medals D. reward

Page No.132

①解析：选 C。句意为：反对种族歧视运动的杰出黑人领袖马丁・路德・金，因其对世界和平的突出贡献而被授予诺贝尔和平奖。award 指正式或官方的“授予，颁发”。

②解析：选 A。考查固定搭配。句意为：他们送给获胜者水果和鲜花作为奖赏。reward sb. with ...用……酬劳某人。

③解析：选 D。由句意可知，应该是对做好事的报答。in reward for 为……而报答。

重点短语

5. out of work

失业

Jim has been out of work for several months.

吉姆已经失业几个月了。

Mary’s cell phone has been out of work for several days, which brought her a lot of inconvenience.

玛丽的手机坏了好几天了，这给她带来了很多不便。

Page No.133

联想拓展

in work 有工作

out of breath 上气不接下气

out of patience 不耐烦

out of use 没用了

out of date 过时

out of order 次序颠倒；出故障

out of control 失控

out of danger 脱离危险

out of shape 变形

Out of sight, out of mind.眼不见, 心不烦。

高手过招

用适当的介词（短语）填空 （原创）

①Although my computer is date now, it's still use.

②After the fourth operation, the patient has been danger.

①out of; in ②out of

Page No.134

6. as a matter of fact

事实上

It was cold. As a matter of fact, it was freezing.

天很冷。事实上，冷得要命。

联想拓展

as a matter of fact=in fact/in actual fact/actually/in reality/to tell the truth 实际上；事实

to make matters worse 让事情更糟糕的是

it doesn’t matter 没有关系

高手过招

单项填空

It rained that day. , our car broke down on the way. (2010·江苏泰州一轮检测)

A. In fact B. Actually

C. To make matters worse D. To tell the truth

解析：选 C。to make matters worse 让事情更糟糕的是。根据句意可知，C 项符合。

Page No.135

7. blow up

vi.爆炸；突然严峻；大发雷霆

vt. 炸毁；给……充气；放大（照片）

My father blew up when I didn't come home last night.

我昨晚没回家，父亲大发雷霆。

Stop at the gas station and we'll blow up the tyres.

在加油站停一下，我们要给轮胎打气。

联想拓展

blow away 刮走，吹走

blow down(风) 刮倒

blow off 吹掉；将（热水、蒸汽等）放出

blow out 吹熄；（电线）烧断

blow over (暴风雨等)吹散，刮倒；（坏天气）大风平息

Page No.136

高手过招

单项填空

A short circuit will the fuse(保险丝). （原创）

A. blow up B. blow off

C. blow out D. blow over

解析：选 C。句意为：短路会烧断保险丝。根据句意可知，答案选 C。

8. in trouble

在危险、受罚、痛苦、忧虑等的处境中

Please telephone us when you are in trouble.

遇到困难时就给我们打电话。

联想拓展

have trouble (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难。其中的介词 in 在口语中通常可省略。

take (the) trouble to do sth. 在这一结构中，其中的冠词用不用均可，但含义稍有不同：用冠词，表示不怕费事或不怕麻烦而去做某事；不用冠词，表示尽心尽力或费尽心血而去做某事。

Page No.137

go to (the) trouble to do （of doing） sth.

不辞辛劳做某事/费心做某事

give sb. trouble/put sb. to trouble 麻烦某人；打扰某人

have trouble with ... 有……病痛；同……闹纠纷

We had no trouble (in) finding his office.

我们没费吹灰之力就找到了他的办公室。

He took the trouble to show me the way to the station.

他不嫌麻烦地为我去火车站而指路。

He went to the trouble of finding out when our train was leaving.

他费心为我们打听到了我们乘坐的火车的开车时间。

I don’t like giving trouble to people I don’t know.

我不愿意给我不认识的人添麻烦。

The man often has trouble with his wife.

这个男人经常与他的妻子闹矛盾。

Page No.138

高手过招

单项填空

Even an experienced climber can to reach the summit.

(2010·河南郑州一轮检测)

A. get into trouble B. make trouble

ask for trouble D. take trouble over

解析：选 A。句意为：即使是一个很有经验的登山者，想要到达顶峰也有可能遇到困难。句中的 can 表示“有可能”。get into trouble 陷入困境，因做某事而招致惩罚，危险等；ask for trouble 自找麻烦，自讨苦吃；make trouble 引起麻烦；take trouble over sth. 在某事上费心思。根据句意选 A。

9. turn to

求助于；依赖；翻到；询问

We have to turn to some bigger companies for technical help.

我们不得不向一些更大的公司寻求技术援助。

Page No.139

联想拓展

turn against 背叛

turn down（音量）关小；拒绝

turn in 上交

turn ...into ...(使……)成为……

turn off 关掉(水源、 煤气、 电灯等)；避开(问题等)

turn on 打开(水、 煤气、 电灯、无线电等)

turn over(使)打翻/翻身/翻动/翻耕(土地)/转危为安

turn up 开大；出现；找到

by turns 轮流；交替

in turn 依次；轮流

turn out 证明是；结果是

Nobody will turn against his country.

没有人会背叛自己的国家。

Page No.140

Please turn down the television.

请把电视机的音量调小点儿。

He turned down my suggestion without hesitation.

他毫不犹豫地拒绝了我的建议。

The child picked up a purse and turned it in to the policeman.

那个孩子捡到了一个钱包，然后把它交给了警察。

The farmers are turning waste land into rice fields.

农民们正把荒地变成肥沃的田地。

Don't forget to turn all the lights off before you go to bed.

在你上床之前，不要忘记把所有的灯都关上。

The man turned over and went to sleep again when the telephone rang.

当电话铃响的时候，那个人翻了个身，又睡着了。

Page No.141

高手过招

(1)单项填空

①In the new city there wasn’t a single person the poor boy could turn for help.(2010·辽宁本溪月考)

A. that B. who

C. from whom D. to whom

②We had a good many anxious moments, but everything all right in the end.(2010・江苏南京一轮)

A. turned down B. turned on

C. turned out D. turned to

(1)①解析：选 D。turn to sb. for help 为固定搭配，意思是“求助于”某人。

②解析：选 C。turn out 在句中的意思是“变得；证明是；结果是”，为连系动词；turn down 调低；拒绝；turn on 打开；turn to 参考；转向；求助于。

Page No.142

(2)用与 turn 搭配的适当介词填空 （原创）

①The key you lost has turned .

②Nothing could make the brave man turn his motherland.

③Don't rush. Please wait in line and get on the bus turn.

④He asked his teacher to give him the chance one more time but his teacher turned him .

⑤Be sure to turn the lights when you leave the classroom.

(2)①up ②against ③in ④down ⑤off

10. lose heart

丧失勇气或信心

He failed many times, but he didn’t lose heart.

他失败了许多次，但他并没有失去信心。

No matter what you do, never lose heart.

不管你做什么，千万不要失去信心。

Page No.143

lose one’s job 失业

lose one’s balance 失去平衡

lose one’s breath 上气不接下气

lose one’s heart (to sb./sth.)爱上

lose one’s life 丧生; 遇害

lose face 丢脸; 受屈辱

lose hope 失去希望

高手过招

翻译句子

①不要失去信心，一切都会好起来的。

②她喜欢上了一位年轻士兵。

①Don’t lose heart, all will turn out well.

②She lost her heart to a young soldier.

Page No.144

重点句型

11. ...only then did we decide to answer violence with violence.……只有到这个时候，我们才决定用暴力反抗暴力。

only 修饰的时间、条件、方式状语等放在句首时，主句要用部分倒装。

Only then did she realize she had made mistakes.

直到那时她才意识到她所犯的错误。

Only when he came back did I go to bed.

当他回来的时候，我才上床睡觉。

温馨提示

only 放在句首修饰状语时，主句部分要倒装，修饰主语、宾语时，则不倒装。

Only you understand me.只有你了解我。

Page No.145

高手过招

单项填空

I failed in the final examination last term and only then the importance of studies.(2010·山东青岛二中月考)

A. I realized B. I had realized

C. had I realized D. did I realize

解析：选 D。only then 位于句首时句子用倒装结构，realize 的动作在 fail 之后发生，故选过去时。

12. He taught us during the lunch breaks and the evenings when we should have been asleep.

他在午餐后的休息时间以及晚上本来该睡觉的时间教我们学习。

should have done 本应该做某事（但实际上并没有做）/对过去已发生的事情的推测。ought to= should 但在语气上比 should 要强。

Page No.146

温馨提示

情态动词+have done 的用法小结：

must+have done 表示对过去情况的推测，只用于肯定句中，意为“一定……”，其否定的意义用 can’t+have done 表示。

can/could have done 对过去已发生的情况的推测，用于疑问句或否定句中。

could+have done 本来有能力做而实际上没有做

needn’t+have done 本来不必做的事，实际上却做了

might have done 本来可以做而实际上未做。

may (might)+have done 表示对过去的推测，多用在陈述句，意为“也许；可能……”。用 might 比用 may 语气更加委婉。

would+have done 用于虚拟条件句中，表示与过去事实相反。

He ought not to have taken the old clothes away.

他不该把旧衣服带走。（事实上已带走。）

The street is wet. It must have rained last night.

路面是湿的，昨天晚上肯定下雨了。

Page No.147

If I could have stopped, there wouldn’t have been an accident.

如果我能够停下来，事故就不会发生了。

I needn’t have gone to the office yesterday.

昨天我没必要去办公室。

Please don’t do that. You might both have been caught and killed!

请不要那样做。你们俩很有可能被抓住然后被杀掉！

易混辨析

should/ought to

①两者均有“应该”之意，should 多表示说话人主观建议，ought to 多表示道义和责任。

Doctors and nurses should take good care of patients.

医生和护士应该仔细照顾病人。

You shouldn’t drink and drive.

你不该喝了酒还开车。

Page No.148

You ought to be blushed at your conduct.

你应该为你自己的行为感到羞愧。

②两者均可表示预测，意为“应该会，可能”。

We should/ought to arrive there before dark.

我们应该会在天黑前到达那里。

It’s twelve o’clock now. She should/ought to have already got there.
现在已经 12 点了。她应该已经到那里了。
联想拓展
should 的其他用法：
①虚拟从句中，表示“假如；万一”；
If you should change your mind, do let we know.
如果你想要改变主意，让我们知道。
In case you should need any help, here is my number.
假如你需要任何帮助，给我打电话，这是我的电话号码。
Page No.149
②应该，必须
She recommended that/she (should) take some time off.
她建设应该休假。
③表示惊讶，遗憾。
It’s strange that she should have done such a thing.
她能做好这样的事情，真让人觉得奇怪。
高手过招
单项填空
①—I missed the first part of the film. It was really a pity.
—You home half an hour earlier.(2010·福建厦门一轮检测)
A. should have left B. must have left
C. should leave D. must leave
②—Do you think he is lazy?
—I so once, but I don’t now.(2010·浙江杭州一轮检测)
A. may have thought B. can have thought
C. may think D. might think
Page No.150
①解析：选 A。第一句句意为：我错过了这部电影的第一部分，真遗憾。根据第一句，答句的句意应为：你本应该提前半小时出家门。故选 A。
②解析：选 A。从答语可知，空格处的意思是“曾经这样想过”，即对过去情况作推测，故应用“情态动词＋动词完成时”；又因为 can 表推测时不用于肯定句中，故选 A。
Page No.151
必修 2
Page No.152
Unit 1 Cultural relics
Page No.153
核心单词
1. survive
vi.生还，幸存；流传下来;幸免
vt. 经历……而幸存；比……活的时间长
常用结构：
survive on sth. 靠……生存（意思等同于 live on sth.）
survive sb. (by ...) 比某人多活……
Page No.154
Of the six people injured in the crash, only two survived.
在这次撞车事故受伤的 6 个人中，只有 2 个人活了下来。
I can’t survive on $20 a week.

每周 20 美元无法维持我的生活。

Few buildings in Beichuan County survived the big earthquake on May 12, 2008.
在 2008 年 5 月 12 日的大地震中，北川县残留的建筑物寥寥无几。
She survived her husband by ten years.
她丈夫去世后她又活了 10 年。
联想拓展
survival n. 存活，幸存；残存；遗留；旧风俗
survivor n.生还者，幸存者
Page No.155
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①The old couple 从战争中幸存下来）.
②His only chance of （生存） was a heart transplant.
③In the terrible accident, there were no （幸存者）.
答案：①survived the war ②survival ③survivors
Page No.156
2. select
vt. 挑选；选择
易混辨析
select/choose/elect/pick out
四个词均含有“选译”之意。
select 强调在广泛的范围内进行“精选或淘汰”，侧重以客观为标准进行选择。
choose 为普通用词，侧重根据个人意愿和判断从众多的对象中进行选择，着重指被选者的优点。
elect 指按照一定的规章和法律，用投票方式进行的慎重的选择。
pick out 为口语用词，强调“从个人角度在众多事物之中进行挑选”，有时含有“任意选择”的意思。
Page No.157
高手过招
选词填空（select/choose/elect/pick)
①Please a good book for me.
②She a diamond ring from the collection.
③We our monitor by a show of hands.
④She the red sweater rather than the pink one.
答案：①pick ②selected ③elected ④chose
Page No.158
3. design
n. 设计；图案；构思
vt. 设计；计划；构思
常用结构：
by design=on purpose 有意地，故意地
be designed to do ... 目的是做……；被打算做……
be designed for ... 为……而打算／设计
I like the design of that rug.
我喜欢那块地毯的图案。
A new highway between the two cities is beingdesigned.
这两个城市之间的一条新高速公路正在设计中。
The experiment is designed to test the new drug.
实验的目的是测试新的药品。
The house are specially designed for the old people.

这些房子是专门为老年人设计的。

Page No.159

高手过招

单项填空

I like the television programme educate not merely entertain.（2009・12・山东青州模块检测）

A. designed to B. designed for

C. is designed to D. is designed for

解析：选 A。be designed to do ...为固定搭配，意为“目的是”，为过去分词短语在句中作后置定语，修饰名词 programme。B、D 两项 be designed for 中 for 为介词,后面需接 v.-ing 形式或名词,故排除。

Page No.160

4. fancy

adj. 奇特的；异样的

vt. 想象；设想；爱好

n. 想象力；幻想；爱好

常用结构：

fancy that ... 以为是……

fancy oneself 自负，自命不凡

fancy (doing) sth. 喜欢，想要（做）某事

fancy 用于感叹句中时表示“没想到，竟然”。

My sister likes to collect fancy clothes.

我姐姐喜欢搜集奇装异服。

I used to fancy what I would like wearing a long snow-like dress.过去我常常想象自己穿着雪白长裙的模样。

Children usually have a lively fancy.

Page No.161

孩子们往往拥有丰富的想象力。

Many students fancy playing football.

很多学生喜欢踢足球。

Fancy meeting you here！真没想到会在这儿遇到你！

I fancy (that) it’s going to rain today.

我看今天要下雨。

答案： ①to say→saying ②to go→going

Page No.162

5. consider

vt. 考虑；认为

常用结构：

consider doing sth./sth.考虑做某事

consider sb./sth. as/to be ...认为；以为；觉得

consider it+adj.+to do sth ...认为做某事是……

We are considering going to Canada.

我们正考虑到加拿大去。

We consider this (to be) very important.

我们认为这非常重要。

联想拓展

consideration n. 考虑；关心

considering prep. 考虑到；就……而言

take sth. into consideration 考虑(某事)

Considering her age, she has done very well.

考虑到她的年纪，她已经做得非常好了。

Page No.163

高手过招

(1)单项填空

Charlie Chaplin is to be one of the greatest actors in the world. （2009・02・湖北武汉一中质量检测）

A. Regarded B. believed

C. thought D. considered

(2)翻译句子 （原创）

①你是否考虑过如何到达那里?

②他会被认为是个软弱无能的领导人。

解析：(1) 选 D。考查词义辨析。think, regard, consider 都有“看作”的意思，然而搭配不同。think 一般与of 搭配，形成 think of ...；regard 与 as 搭配，形成 regard ...as; consider 可以与 as 搭配，形成 consider ...as，也可以跟不定式,形成 consider sb. to do sth.的搭配。

(2)①Have you considered how to get there?

②He will be considered a weak leader.

Page No.164

6. worth

adj.值得（做某事）; 有（做某事）的价值

n.价值; 用处

be worth doing sth.值得（做某事）；有（做某事）的价值

be worth sth.用于“数量、持续时间等”的名词之后，表示某物价值多少金额。

The new car cost a lot of money, but it’s certainly worth it.

买这辆新汽车花了很多钱, 但确实物有所值。

The thieves stole one million pounds worth of jewellery.

窃贼偷走了价值 100 万英镑的珠宝。

Page No.165

易混辨析

worth/worthy/worthwhile

“be worth+n.”结构中，当名词为金钱时，表示“……值……钱”。

be worth doing sth. ……某事值得被做

“be worthy of+n./doing”当名词为抽象名词时，表示 “……值得……”。

be worthy to be done/be worthy of being done

某事值得被做

It is worthwhile to do sth. 值得做某事

It is worthwhile doing sth. 值得去做某事

It is worthwhile for sb. to do/doing sth.

值得某人去做某事

The article is worthy of careful study.

=The article is worth studying carefully.

=The article is worthy of being studied carefully.

=The article is worthy to be studied carefully.

这篇文章值得仔细学习。

Page No.166

高手过招

单项填空

①This book is worthy of twice .

（2009・12・江苏南京月考）

A. Reading B. read

C. having read D. being read

②He is well skilled playing the piano, so his music is worth .

（2009・12・山东烟台模块检测）

A. with; listening B. with; listening to

C. in; listening D. in; listening to

Page No.167

解析： ①选 D。 be worthy 后可以用不定式的被动语态或 of being done 结构，而 worth 后用动名词的主动语态表达被动概念。

②选 D。be skilled in 也可以用 be skilled at 后跟名词或动名词表示，意思是“在……方面熟练的；在……方面有能力的”。worth 意思是“值得”,后跟动名词的主动语态表达被动概念。在句中，music 作 listen to 的逻辑宾语，而 listen 为不及物动词，因此 to 不可以去掉。

Page No.168

7. wonder

n.\[C\] 奇迹；奇观；\[U\]惊奇,惊叹

vt. 想知道；对……感到好奇

常用结构：

in wonder 惊奇地

do/work wonders 创造奇迹

be wonder at 对……感到惊讶

be wonder about 想弄明白；琢磨

It is a wonder (that) ... 奇怪的是……

（It is）no/little/small wonder (that ...)

难怪……；……并不奇怪

It’s no wonder you can’t sleep when you eat so much.

你吃得那么多，难怪你睡不着。

I wonder who he was, where he were from and why he came.

我很想知道他是谁，来自哪里，为什么来。

Page No.169

高手过招

单项填空

—He is always the first to come and the last to leave.

— is no wonder he always takes the first place in class.

（2009・12・安徽合肥一中检测）

A. It B. There

C. That D. This

解析：选 A。根据句意可知，此处有“怪不得……”的意思，故选 A。

Page No.170

8. doubt

n. 怀疑；疑惑

vt.怀疑；疑虑；不信

常用结构：

in doubt 怀疑，拿不定主意

no/without/beyond doubt 无疑地；必定；当然

There is no doubt that ... 毫无疑问……（that 从句为同位语从句，表示与之同位的 no doubt 的实际内容。）

No doubt he didn’t mean to hurt you.

他肯定不是有意要伤害你的。

Page No.171

When in doubt about the question, you’d better ask the teacher. 当你对这个问题没有把握时，问一下老师。

I don’t doubt that he is honest. 我毫不怀疑他是诚实的。
We doubt if he is honest.我们怀疑他是否诚实。
温馨提示
在否定句和疑问句中，接 that 引导的从句；在肯定句中，接 whether/if 引导的从句。
I don’t doubt that ...我肯定……(=I’m sure/certain that ...)
I doubt if/whether ...我不确定……
(=I’m not sure/certain if/whether ...)
高手过招
(1) 单项填空
There is no doubt he will be asked to speak again next year.
（2009・12・江西赣州质量检测）
A. That B. whether C. what D. how
Page No.172
(2) 翻译句子 （原创）
①我们毫不怀疑他能够做好这件事。
②毫无疑问我们会成功的。
解析：(1) 选 A。 动词 doubt 后的同位语从句的引导词有这样的规律：如果 doubt 前有否定词，从句用 that 引导；如果 doubt 前没有否定词，则用疑问代词、副词或 whether 引导。
(2)①We don’t doubt that he can do it well.
②There is no doubt that we will be successful.
Page No.173
9. apart
adv.分离地；分别地
常用结构：
apart from ... 除了……外， 除了……还有
take ...apart 拆开
tell apart 分辨出
易混辨析
besides/except/except for/except that/
except when/but/apart from
besides 指“除……之外，另外还有”，着重于“另外还有”。
except 指“从整体里减去一部分”，着重于“排除在外”。
except for 与 except 同义，但 except for 所“排除在外”的通常是整体中的一个细节，
Page No.174
或是句中所述的整体内容中的一个部分。
except that 意为“除了”，与 except for 同义，后面接从句。
except when 意为“除非”，“除了在……时候”。
but 作介词与 except 同义，表示“排除在外”。常与 no, every, any 构成的复合词连用，构成 none but, nothing but, anybody but, everyone but, everywhere but 以及 no one but, all but 等结构。
apart from 兼有 besides 和 except for 两种含义，后接名词、代词或动名词。
Page No.175
注意：用于否定句时，but, except 和 besides 可以换用。
Apart from their house in London, they also have a villa in Spain.他们在伦敦有房子，此外在西班牙还有一座别墅。
Take the bike apart and try to repair it this morning.
请拆开这自行车并设法于今天上午修好。
There aren’t any other people to be considered but/except/besides Mr Brown.

除了布朗先生外，其他人将不予考虑。

I have five other story books besides this one.
除了这本外，我还有五本别的故事书。
He answered all the questions except the last one.
除了最后一个问题外，他回答了所有的问题。
I know nothing about him except that he lives next door.
我不了解他的情况，只知道他住在隔壁。
He goes to work on time every day except when he is ill.
他每天都按时上班，除非他生病了。
Page No.176
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①除了很少的几个词以外,我对法语一无所知。
a few words, I do not know any French at all.
②我分不出这一对双胞胎谁是谁。
I can't the twins .
答案： ①Apart from ②tell; apart
Page No.177
重点短语
10. in search of
寻找，寻求
联想拓展
in one's/a/the search for=in search of 寻找；寻求
make a search of 搜 查 ……
search for sb./sth. 寻找某人/某物
search sb./sth. out 找出某人/某物
search sb./sth.(for sb./sth.)
搜查某人/某物（以搜寻到某人/某物）
Page No.178
易混辨析
search/search for/search ...for/in search of
search vt. search sb.意为“搜身”，search sp.意为“在……中搜查”。
search for 意为“寻找”，指搜寻某个特定的目标，相当于 look for。
search ...for 意为“搜查某人或某地以寻找某物”。
in search of 意为“寻找”，作目的状语，后接寻找的对象或目标。
The police searched the house for the stolen jewellry.
警察搜查那栋房屋，寻找被偷的宝石。
I looked everywhere in search of my lost pen.
我四处寻找我丢失的钢笔。
They searched the guard at the gate.
他们在门口搜查了那个士兵。
I searched everywhere for the lost pen.
我到处找丢失的钢笔。
Page No.179
高手过招
(1)单项填空
They were walking around the town a place for the party.
（2009·12·江苏扬州中学检测）

A. in search of B. search

C. searching of　　D. searched for

(2)完成句子　　（原创）

①警察到处搜捕他。最终他被抓住了，现在警察正在对他进行搜身。

The police　　him everywhere. He was caught at last and now the police are　　him.

②显然，已经有人搜过他的房子——那本书不见了。

His house had clearly been　　and the book was missing.

解析：(1) 选 A。in search of 为介词短语，意为“寻找”，符合句意。B、D 两项动词形式不正确；无 C 项 search of 这种搭配。故选 A 项。(2)①

searched for；searching　　②searched

Page No.180

11. belong to

属于；是……的成员；是……的一部分

联想拓展

belong vi. 应被放置在，应处在（某处），适合在某处。此时，不与 to 连用，后面通常跟副词和其他介词短语。

belongings n.财产；所有物；行李

温馨提示

belong to 不用于进行时态和被动语态中。to 为介词，其后接代词、名词类短语及从句，表示所归属的对象。

Who does this watch belong to?

这块表是谁的？

She lost all her belongings in the earthquake.

她在地震中失去了所有的财产。

I don’t really feel I belong here.

我感觉我并不适合待在这个地方。

Page No.181

高手过招

单项填空

As is known to us all, China is a developing country

the third world.

（2009・12・山东青岛二中模块检测）

A. belonging　　B. belonged

C. belonging to　　D. belonged to

解析：选 C。belong to 在句中作定语，无被动语态和进行时态，必须和 to 连用。

Page No.182

12. in return

回报；作为报酬；作为报答

in return for sth. 作为……的交换/回报

in turn 轮流地，依次；相应地，转而

by turns 轮流地，时而……时而……What can we do for them in return for all the help they have given us?

我们能做些什么来报答他们所给予我们的种种帮助呢?

答案：①I bought him a drink in return for his help.

②I wish I could do something for you in return.

Page No.183

重点句型

13. Frederick William Ⅰ , the King of Prussia, could never have imagined that his greatest gift to the Russian people would have such an amazing history.

普鲁士国王威廉一世绝不可能想到他送给俄罗斯人民的厚礼会有这样一段令人惊讶的历史。“couldn’

t have done”意为“不可能做了某事”，表示对过去已发生的事情的比较有把握的否定猜测。

could/can have done 结构的用法：

①用于疑问句中，表示一种猜测，意为“可能做过……吗？”

②用于肯定句中，表示与过去事实相反的假设，意为“本来能够去做却没有做”。

Page No.184

Mr Smith can’t have gone to Beijing, for I saw him just now.

史密斯先生不可能去北京了，我刚才还见过他。

There is no light in the room, can they have gone out?

屋里没亮灯，他们有可能出去了吗？

—I stayed at a hotel while in New York.

在纽约时我住在一家旅馆里。

—Oh, did you? You could have stayed with Babara.

是吗？你本来能够和巴巴拉住在一起的。

Page No.185

高手过招

单项填空

①His brother met him at the Grand Theatre yesterday afternoon, so he have attended your lecture.（2009・12・山西太原五中模拟测试）

A. couldn’t B. needn’t

C. mustn’t D. shouldn’t

②—Your mother was really anxious about you.

—I know. I home without a word.

（2009・11・陕西西安检测）

A. mustn’t leave B. shouldn’t have left

C. couldn’t have left D. needn’t leave

Page No.186

解析： ①选 A。由“His brother met him at the Grand Theatre yesterday afternoon”可知，当时他不在课堂上，不可能听了你的课。couldn’t have done 意为“（过去）肯定没做”，符合句意。

②选 B。由“Your mother was really anxious about you”和“I know”可知，“我”是在为自己未打招呼离家而自责。shouldn’t have done 意为“本不应该做某事”，符合句意。

Page No.187

14. He/She only cares about whether the eyewitness has given true information, which must be facts rather than opinions.

他/她关心的只是目击者是否提供了真实的信息，这些信息必须是事实而不是个人的观点或看法。

rather than 意为“而不是”，连接两个并列成分，这两个并列成分的形式应该一致。rather than 连接两个主语时，其后面谓语动词的单复数形式取决于 rather than 前面主语的单复数形式。同类词汇、短语还有：as well as，together with，except，but，like，with，besides，including 等。

Page No.188

联想拓展

or rather 更确切地说

other than 除了……之外

would rather do sth. than do sth.

=prefer doing ...to doing/prefer to do rather than do

宁愿做……，而不愿做……

would do sth. rather than do sth.

宁愿做……而不愿做……

would rather (not) do sth. 宁愿（不）……

I think Tom, rather than you, is to blame.

我认为该受责备的是汤姆，而不是你。

Professor Smith, together with his assistants, is doing the research day and night.
史密斯教授和他的助手们正在夜以继日地进行研究。
Page No.189
高手过招
选词填空（rather than/other than/or rather） （原创）
①I met him very late on Friday night, , early on Saturday morning.
②Does anybody yourself know this?
③I decided to send an e-mail telephone.
答案：①or rather ②other than
③rather than
Page No.190
Unit 2 The Olympic Games
Page No.191
核心单词
1. compete
vi.比赛；竞争
联想拓展
compete with 与……竞争
compete for 竞争以获得……
compete with/against sb. for sth.
为得到某物与某人竞争
compete in (a game, a match) 参加；在……方面竞争
be in competition with sb.和某人竞争
competition n.比赛；竞争competitor
n.比赛者;竞争者competitive adj.竞
争的;有竞争力的Page No.192
易混辨析
compete/contest
compete 表示“为了争得名次、奖金，合同等”，并不含有将对手征服的意思。
contest 所表示的竞赛可以是友谊赛，也可以是有敌意的竞赛，旨在比试技能、能力、力气、耐力等， 此外还可以表示赢得选举。
He believed that nobody could compete with/against him.
他认为没有人能和他竞争。
More than 1,000 competitors took part in the competition to compete for the first prize.
1 000 多名选手参加了争夺一等奖的比赛。
He has now competed in two Olympics.
他已经参加过两届奥运会了。
Page No.193
高手过招
(1)单项填空
Our athletes will some games, such as running and wrestling. They have the hope to get some gold medals.
（2009·12·江西南昌一中检测）
A. compete B. compete in
C. Join D. attend
(2)用方框内所给短语的适当形式填空 （原创）
compete with/compete against/compete for/compete in
①It’s difficult for small markets to big ones.

②Will you the 100-metre race?

③The two athletes will the gold medal.

解析： (1) 选 B。compete 的意思是“竞技；比赛”，后面跟宾语时，用 compete in 表示“参加”；attend 仅有“参加某项活动”的意思；表示参加活动也可以用 join in。

(2)①compete with/against

②compete in ③compete for

Page No.194

2. admit

vt.&vi.准许进入；容许；接纳(常用被动结构);承认

联想拓展

be admitted as ... 被接受为……

be admitted (to/into) 被准许进入……

admit (to) sth./doing 承认某事/做过某事

admit that 承认……

admit sb./sth. to be 承认……是

It is/was admitted that 普遍认为……

He was admitted as a member of the basketball team.

他被接受成为篮球队的一名队员。

Only 200 children were admitted to/into the school every year.

那时每年只有 200 名儿童获准入学。

Will you admit having broken the window?

你承不承认你打破了窗户？

They freely admit that they still have a lot to learn.

他们坦率承认，他们要学的东西还很多。

He admitted his words to be mistaken.

他承认自己的话错了。

Page No.195

高手过招

(1)单项填空

Little Tom admitted in the examination, that he wouldn’t do that in future. （2009 • 12 • 山东东营模块检测）

A. to cheat; to promises

B. cheating; promised

C. having cheated; promising

D. to have cheated; promised

(2)完成句子 （原创）

①他供认驾驶了这辆没有保险的车。

He the car without insurance.

②幸运的是，去年他被一所名牌大学录取了。

Luckily, he a key university last year.

Page No.196

解析：(1) 选 C。考查非谓语动词。动词 admit 后常接动名词作宾语，即:admit doing 或 admit having done，意为“承认做过某事”，据此排除 A、D 两项。句意为：小汤姆承认在考试中作弊了，并保证今后不再这样做。由于第二个空白处前面没有连词 and,因此 admit 与 promise 不是两个并列的谓语动词，用 promised 形式是错误的， 而要用 promising 作伴随状语，故答案为 C 项。

(2)①admitted driving ②was admitted to/into

Page No.197

3. replace

vt. 代替；取代；替换
常用结构：
replace sth. 代替；取代……
replace sb. as 取代某人而成为
replace sb./sth. with/by 用……替换，以……接替
Teachers will never be replaced by computers in theclassroom.
课堂上电脑永远不会取代老师。
She replaced her husband as the local teacher.
她取代丈夫成了当地的老师。
I replaced the worn-out tools with/by new ones.
我用新工具来替换那些磨损不堪的旧工具。
Page No.198
联想拓展
in place 在适当的位置
out of place 在不适当的位置
in one’s place=in the place of 代替
take the place of=replace 代替；替代
take place 发生；举行
take one’s place 就位，就座
instead of 代替；而不是（介词短语）
With everything in place, she started lessons.
一切就绪，她开始讲课
Page No.199
高手过招
单项填空
Bob is ill today. Who can him in our football match?
（2009・12・福建厦门检测）
A. Replace B. take place
C. instead of D. in the place of
解析：选 A。根据句意此处有代替之意并且需要动词作谓语，replace=take the place of。instead of 是介词短语，不能作谓语。
Page No.200
4. marry
v. (和某人)结婚；嫁；娶；把……嫁给……
常用结构：
marry sb. 娶某人，嫁给某人（marry 后不加介词）
marry sb. to sb. 把某人嫁给某人
marry well 嫁个有钱人
She married a rich man.
她嫁给了一个有钱人。
He married both his daughters to rich businessmen.
他把两个女儿都嫁给了富商。
联想拓展
marriage n. 结婚；婚姻
married adj. 已婚的
get/be married (to sb.) （与某人）结婚
Page No.201

易混辨析

marry/get married/be married

marry 与 get married 强调动作，不能与表示时间段的状语连用; be married 强调状态，可以与表示时间段的状语连用。

可以说 She married/got married two years ago.

或 She has been married for two years.

或 It’s two years since she married/got married.

但不可以说 She has married/has got married for two years.

答案：①去掉 to ②got→have been 或 for ten years→ten years ago

Page No.202

5. promise

vt. 允诺，答应

vi.有希望；承诺；答应

n. 诺言，承诺；迹象，征兆

常用结构：

promise sth. 答应某事

promise sb. sth./promise sth. to sb. 答应给某人某物

promise (sb.)to do sth. 答应（某人）做什么事

promise (sb.) that ... 答应（某人）……

keep/carry out one’s promise 信守诺言

break/go back on one’s promise 违背诺言

make/give a promise 许诺/答应

Page No.203

Promise (me) never to be late again.

答应（我）决不再迟到。

She promised her mother that she would come back.

她答应妈妈会回来。

He made a promise to come back.

他答应回来了。

This year promises to be another good one for harvest.

今年看来又是个丰收年。

联想拓展

promising adj. 有希望的；有前途的

Page No.204

高手过招

单项填空

The girl to be a good dancer if she is well trained in an art school.

（2009·11·福建厦门检测）

A. expects B. allows

C. Wishes D. Promises

解析：选 D。由句意可知，此处为“女孩有希望成为优秀的舞者”，只有 promise 有“有希望”之意。

Page No.205

6. charge

n. 费用；指控，指责；主管；掌管

v. 指控；收费；要价；承担责任；掌管；充电；控诉

All goods are delivered free of charge.

一切物品免费送货。

She rejected the charge that the story was untrue.

她否认了她编造事实的指控。

He took charge of the farm after his father's death.
父亲去世后，他掌管农场。
The committee has been charged with the development of sport.
委员会已经承担了体育运动发展的责任。
What did he charge for the repairs?
他们收了多少修理费？
Page No.206
Before use, the battery must be charged.
使用前，电池必须充电。
He was charged with murder.
他被指控犯有谋杀罪。
常用结构：
at no extra charge 无需额外付费
be charged with 被控告犯……罪
in/under the charge of 在某人照看（掌管）下
in charge of 处于控制或支配（某人/某事物）的地位
free of charge 免费
charge sb. money for (doing) sth. 为做某事向某人收取费用
take charge 负责；控制局面
Page No.207
高手过招
(1)单项填空
He told me that the factory was his brother. （2009・12・河北石家庄检测）
A. in charge of B. in charge for
C. in the charge of D. in the charge for
(2)翻译句子 （原创）
①这些病人由威尔逊医生治疗。
②这儿由谁负责?
解析：(1) 选 C。 in the charge of 意思是“在……掌管之下”，而 in charge of 意思是“负责，掌管”。如: Who is in charge of the factory?
(2)①These patients are under the charge of Dr Wilson.
②Who’s in charge here?
Page No.208
7. bargain
n. 协议；廉价物
v.（与某人）讨价还价; 洽谈成交条件；谈判；讲条件
If you promote our goods, we will give you a good discount as our part of the bargain.
若你方经销我们的货物, 我方愿给予你相当大的优惠作为回报。
It’s a bargain.这可是便宜货。
Never pay the advertised price for a car; always try to bargain.
千万不要照牌价购买汽车, 总得讲讲价才是。
常用结构：
make a bargain with sb. about/over/for sth.
就某事与某人达成协议
bargain with sb. about/over/for sth.
就某事与某人讨价还价

a good/bad bargain 一笔划算/不划算的交易

Page No.209

高手过招

(1)单项填空

The coat is really a good at such a low price.

（2009・12・江西师大附中检测）

A. Matter B. pattern

C. seller D. bargain

(2)翻译句子 （原创）

①你做了一笔很划算的交易。

②工会为缩短工作周而（与管理部门）讨价还价。

解析：(1) 选 D。考查词义辨析。从句中的“at such a low price”可以判断出前面要说的是“衣服很便宜”。英语中表示某东西买得便宜时可用 a good bargain 这一固定搭配。

(2)①You’ve got a good bargain.

②The Unions bargained (with management) for a shorter working week.

Page No.210

8. deserve

vt.&vi.应受(报答或惩罚); 值得

The article deserves careful study.

这篇文章值得仔细研究。

They deserve to be sent to prison.他们应该入狱。

联想拓展

deserve doing=deserve to be done=be worth doing 值得做

The thief deserves punishing.

=The thief deserves punishment.

=The thief deserves to be punished.

这个小偷理所当然会受到惩罚。

Page No.211

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①她积极努力, 应该得到奖赏。

②如果你做错事，就应该受到惩罚。

答案：①She deserves a reward for her efforts.

②If you do something wrong, you deserve punishing/to be punished/punishment.

Page No.212

重点短语

9. one after another/the other

一个接一个地；陆续地

Please line up one after another.

请按顺序排队。

We achieved one victory after another.

我们取得了一个又一个的胜利。

联想拓展

one by one 逐个地；逐一地

one another/each other 相互

Page No.213

高手过招

翻译句子

①他把所有的书都并列摆放起来。

②账单纷至沓来。

答案：①He put all the books beside each other/one another.

②The bills kept coming in one after another.

10. stand for

(指缩写或符号)代表；象征；支持；主张

What does EU stand for?EU 代 表 什 么 ？

Which group do you stand for?你支持哪一组？

联想拓展

stand by　　袖手旁观；无动于衷

stand by sb.　　支持；帮助；站在……一边

stand out(from／as)　显眼；突出

stand up　　站起；站立；起立

Page No.214

高手过招

(1)单项填空

I don ’ t know what the signal “ X ” on the road. Could you tell me? （2009・12・江西信丰中学检测）

A. Stands　　B. refers to

C. means　　D. stands for

(2)完成句子　　（原创）

①The letters UN　　（代表） United Nations.

②Don’t just　　（袖手旁观）. You can do something to help.

③The letters　　（突出；显眼） well against the dark background.

Page No.215

(1)解析：选 D。mean, refer to 都有“代表”的意思，但是 stand for 一般是指“符号、手势、记号等”所代表的意义，而 refer to 指某个意思的对象；mean 表达前面的语言的意义。如 “To give up doing something” means “ to stop doing something”.(放弃做某事也就是停止做某事。)“It” can be used to refer to a baby. (“It”可以用来指一个婴儿。) “V” is often used to stand for victory. (“V”可以用来表示胜利。)

(2)①stand for　②stand by　③stand out

Page No.216

11. as well

意为“也，又，而且”，意思等同于 too，also，但 as well 只能置于句末。

联想拓展

as well as 意为“不仅……而且……，既……又……；除了……之外，还有……；和……一样好”。as well as 作介词用时，意思等同于 besides,意为“除……之外”，后跟动词时通常用 v.-ing 形式。 as well as 连接主语时，谓语动词的单复数形式取决于 as well as 前面主语的单复数形式。may/might as well do 意为“不妨……；还是……好”。

Page No.217

Are you coming as well?

=Are you coming, too?

=Are you also coming?你也来吗？

They sell books as well as newspapers.

他们既卖报纸也卖书。

She cooks as well as her mother.

她做菜跟她妈妈做得一样好。

His wife as well as his children was invited to the party.

不仅他的孩子，连同他妻子也被邀请参加那次聚会。

We may/might as well ask him for some advice.

我们不妨向他征求一些建议。

Page No.218

高手过招

单项填空

①Jack plays football , if not better than David.

A. as well B. as well as

C. so well D. so well as

②E-mail, as well as telephones, an important part in daily communication.

A. is playing B. have played

C. are playing D. play

解析： ①选 B。as well as 意为“和……一样好”。“if not+better than”是一个插入语，去掉后，句子是 Jack plays football as well as David。

②选 A。当 as well as 连接主语时，谓语动词的单复数形式取决于前面的主语的单复数形式。

Page No.219

12. every four years

每四年；每隔三年

联想拓展

every 与基数词、序数词、other 或 few 连用，表示时间或空间的间隔，意为“每……；每隔……”。

every+基数词+复数名词

every+序数词+单数名词

every+other+单数可数名词

every few+复数名词

every four days 每隔三天

every third day 每三天

He comes to see his parents every three days.

他每三天来看望父母一次。

Page No.220

高手过招

单项填空

“Where are we now?” few minutes one of the children asked Miss Cornwall the same question.（2009・12・山东济南模块检测）

A. Every B. Each

C. Another D. A

解析：选 A。every few minutes 每几分钟，符合句意。

Page No.221

13. take part in

参加，参与

The students take part in all kinds of activities after class.

学生们课后参加各种活动。

易混辨析

take part in/join in/join/attend

take part in 指参加有组织的重大的活动。

I took part in the game.

我参加了比赛。

join in 指参加正在进行着的活动或游戏等，有时可与 take part in 换用。

Page No.222

Please come over and join in our game.

请过来参加我们的游戏。

join 指参加团体或组织，成为其中的一员，也可用于 join sb. in sth./doing sth.结构，表示“和某人一起做某事”。

Many of them joined the army.

他们很多人都参军了。

attend 相当于 be present at，多指出席，参加会议，讲座等。

He decided to attend the meeting himself.

他决定自己去参加会议。

Page No.223

高手过招

选词填空(join/join in/take part in/attend)

①—How many countries the Olympic Games in Athens?

—202.

②The famous professor will come to give us a lecture. Will you go to it?

③His brother the army three years ago.

④May I your game?

答案： ①took part in ②attend ③joined

④join in

Page No.224

重点句型

14. I lived in what you call “Ancient Greece” and I used to write about the Olympic Games a long time ago.

我生活在你们所说的“古希腊”，我曾经写过很久以前的奥林匹克运动会的情况。

what 引导宾语从句，并在从句中作 call 的宾语，“Ancient Greece”作宾补。what 相当于 the place that，因此 what 不能改为 that，也不能改为 where，因为 where 只能作状语。

used to do 过去常常（做）……；曾经……

Page No.225

易混辨析

used to do/be used to do/be used to doing

used to do sth. (would do) 过去经常做某事

be used to do 被用来做……(被动语态)

be/get/become used to sth./doing

=be/get/become accustomed to sth./doing 习惯于

My father used to smoke a lot.

我父亲过去烟抽得很厉害。（暗含“现在不抽了或抽得少了”的意思）

I used to live in the countryside with my grandmother.

我曾经和祖母在农村生活过。

Wood can be used to make paper.

木头可以用来造纸。

I’m still not used to getting up early.

我仍然不习惯早起。

Page No.226

高手过招

单项填空

①Water electricity widely all over the world. （2009・12・陕西咸阳检测）

A. is used to produce B. is used to producing

C. used to produce D. used to producing

② There many people in the office, but now nobody is allowed.

（2009・12・江苏如东检测）

A. used to be; smoking B. used to have; smoking

C. used to be; smoke　　D. used to have; smoke

解析：　①选 A。be used to do 意为“被用来做某事”，符合句意。

②选 A。第一空 there used to be 意为“过去曾经有”；第二空 smoking 作前面 many people 的后置定语。句意为：过去很多人在办公室里吸烟，但现在谁也不允许这样做了。

Page No.227

15. No other countries could join in, nor could slaves or women!

其他国家都不能参加，奴隶和妇女也不能参加!

句子结构为：nor/neither+系动词/助动词/情态动词+主语。此句型是一个倒装句，意为“……也不”，用于否定陈述句之后，说明后者的情况与前者相同。

联想拓展

用“so+助动词+主语”结构，表示肯定陈述句之后说明后者情况与前者相同，so it is with sb./It is the same with sb. 某人也是这样。so it is with sb./It is the same with sb.结构陈述两种或两种以上的情况，既可用于肯定， 也可用于否定。

Page No.228

“否定词+助动词+主语”是常用的倒装句式，常用词：not, never, no, nowhere, neither, nor, hardly, seldom, little, rarely。

If you won’t go, neither/nor will I.

如果你不去，我也不去。

He don’t know about it. Nor do I.

他不了解这件事，我也不了解。

He never went again, and nor did he write to apologize.

他再也没去过，也没有写信道歉。

He disliked the film, and so did I.他不喜欢这部电影，我也是。

Page No.229

高手过招

单项填空

①—I don’t think I can walk any farther!

　—　　. Let’s stop here for a rest.

（2009・12・江苏盐城检测）

A. Neither am I　　B. Neither can I

C. I don’t think so　　D. I think so

②—He has made great progress recently.

　—　　and　　.　　（2009・12・江苏南通检测）

A. So he has; so you have

B. So he has; so have you

C. So has he; so have you

D. So has he; so you have

解析：　①选 B。根据最后一句“我们停下来休息一下吧”可知，回答者也不能再走了，因此用 Neither can I。

②选 B。第一空表示对说话者的同意和赞成，意为“他的确如此”，第二空表示“你也一样”。

Page No.230

16. Women are not only allowed, but play a very important role in gymnastics, athletics, team sports and ...

妇女不仅被允许参加，而且她们还在体操、竞技和团队等比赛项目中起着非常重要的作用……

not only ...but (also) ... 意为“不仅……而且……”。当此结构连接两个并列主语时，谓语动词的单复数要和邻近的主语保持一致。若 not only 置于句首，其所在的分句需要采用部分倒装。

He not only said it, but also did it.

他不但说到了，而且也做到了。

Not only you but also he is responsible for it.

不仅你而且他也要为此事负责任。

Not only does he work hard, but also he is very clever.

他不但学习刻苦，而且很聪明。

Page No.231

高手过招

单项填空

①Not only English，but also he learns it well. （2009・12・陕西宝鸡检测）

A. he likes B. does he like

C. likes he D. he does like

②—I would never come to this restaurant again. The food is terrible.

— . （2009・12・浙江杭州检测）

A. Nor am I B. Neither would I

C. Same with me. D. So do I

①解析：选 B。not only 连接除主语以外的成分时，如果位于句首，该句用部分倒装。故选 B。

②解析：选 B。第二句句意为：我也不来了。故用 Neither would I。

Page No.232

Unit 3 Computers

Page No.233

核心单词

1. common

adj. 共同的，普遍的；常见的

常用结构：

in common 共有，公用(在句中多作状语）

have nothing/little/a lot/something in common (with) sb.

与某人没有/许多/有些共同之处

in common with 和……一样

common sense/knowledge 常识

common welfare 公共福利Page

No.234

易混辨析

common/ordinary/usual/normal

common 指“共有的，公共的；共同的；常见的”。反义词为 rare。

common 作“普通的”讲时可与 ordinary 换用。如“普通人”也可以说成 common people。

ordinary 意为“普通的，平淡无奇的”，指没有什么特别的地方。

usual 意为“平常的，通常的，一向的”，含惯例之意。

normal 意为“正常的”。

Page No.235

Jane and I have nothing in common.

=I have nothing in common with Jane.

我与简毫无共同之处。

The problems are common to all societies.

这些问题是所有社会的通病。

In common with many young people, he prefers pop songs.

和许多年轻人一样，他喜欢流行歌曲。

He is in ordinary clothes. 他穿着平常的衣服。

We meet every day at the usual place.

我们每天在往常那个地方见面。

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

高手过招

单项填空

Harry visited the bookstore every week. He became such a customer that the bookseller gave him some books as presents. （2009・12・浙江桐庐检测）

common B. normal C. usual D. average

解析：选 C。由“Harry visited the bookstore every week”可知，他是常客，含有“习惯，惯例”之意，故选 C。

Page No.237

2. signal

n. 信号；手势；声音；暗号

v. 发信号；用信号传达；用信号与……通讯

A red light is usually a signal for/of danger.

红灯通常是危险的信号。

He signaled (to) the waiter to bring the menu.

他示意服务员把菜单拿过来。

常用结构：

signal to sb./sth. for sth.

用信号传达（某信息）；用信号与（某人）通讯

signal with ...用……发信号

Page No.238

高手过招

翻译句子

①铁路的红信号灯亮了，所以火车停下了。

②他用红旗传达信号。

答案：①The railway signal was on red, so the train stopped.

②He was signalling with a red flag.

Page No.239

3. sum

n. 金额; 款项; 总数; 算术题常

用结构：

in sum 简言之；总而言之

sum up/sum sth. Up 总结；概括

He was fined the sum of 200$. 他被处以 200 美元的罚金。

The sum of 5 and 3 is 8. 5 加 3 的和是 8。

To sum up, there are three main ways of solving the problem.

概括起来说，这个问题主要有三种解决办法。

答案：In sum, the plan failed.

Page No.240

4. arise

vi. (arose, arisen)出现，发生；起床，起身

A new difficulty has arisen.出现了新的困难。

Accident arise from carelessness.

疏忽大意往往会引起事故的发生。

He arose at dawn.他黎明即起。

常用结构：

arise from/out of 由……引起；由……产生

Page No.241

高手过招

翻译句子

①夜间起风暴了。

②由于缺乏交流而产生了问题。

答案：①A storm arose during the night.

②Problems have arisen out of the lack of communication.

Page No.242

5. anyhow

adv.（也作 anyway）不管怎样，无论如何；反正；即使如此

联想拓展

somehow adv. 以某种方式, 用某种方法；不知怎么地

somewhat adv.有点，稍微

He told me not to buy it, but I bought it anyhow.

他告诉我不要买它，但不管怎样，我还是买了。

It may snow, but anyhow I will go to the town.

可能要下雪,但无论如何我都要进城。

We must get the work finished somehow by tomorrow morning.

我们必须设法在明天早上以前把工作做完。

Somehow we lost our way.

不知怎么地我们迷路了。

My jacket is somewhat like yours.

我的夹克与你那件有点相似。

Page No.243

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

—You don’t seem to be quite yourself today. What’s wrong?

—Oh, I’m suffering from a cold. Nothing serious, . （2009・12・安徽舒城检测）

A. yet B. indeed C. anyhow D. though

(2) 完成句子 （原创）

①我对这个工作有点厌倦了。

I am tired of this work.

②不知怎么地,他害怕她。

he was afraid of her.

③他无论如何也不能使她信服。

He couldn’t convince her .

解析： (1) 选 D。此处表达“转折”，意思是“然而”。

(2)①somewhat ②Somehow ③anyhow

Page No.244

6. personally

adv. 就个人而言；亲自

联想拓展

personally 意为“就个人而言”时的同义短语：

in my opinion

as far as I’m concerned

in my view

for my part

as far as I can see

from my point of view

for my perspective

The owner of the hotel welcomed us personally.
这家旅馆的主人亲自接待了我们。
Personally (speaking), I think he is a very good man, but you may not agree.
就个人而言, 我认为他是个很好的人, 但也许你不这么认为。
Page No.245
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①She said she didn’t like Tom, but （就个人而言）, I thought he was an honest boy, though sometimes careless.
② （幸好）, the planes appear to be quite safe.
③ （自然地）, their ideas are important to everyone in the country.
④ (高兴的是) for him, his stepmother was kind to him.
⑤ （出人意料的）, he failed the exam.
答案： ①personally ②Luckily/Fortunately
③Naturally ④Happily ⑤Surprisingly
Page No.246
7. goal
n. 球门；(进球)得分；目标；目的
常用结构：
score/kick a goal 踢进一球；得一分
keep goal 守球门
life goal/one’s goal in life 生活目标
achieve/realize one’s goal 实现目标
He headed the ball into an open goal. 他乘虚把球顶入球门
We won by three goals to one.我们以三比一获胜。
You’d better set a goal before you start.
开始前，你最好设定一个目标。
Page No.247
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①他已经实现了他的目标。
②我的人生目标是帮助他人。
答案：①He has achieved his goal.
②My goal in life is to help others.
重点短语
8. in a way
在某种程度上（表示对情况的态度）
Page No.248
联想拓展
in a way=in one way=in some ways
in the way 挡道；造成阻碍
in one way 在某方面
in some ways 在某些方面
in no way 决不，无论如何都不（位于句首时构成倒装）
on one s way to 在去……的路上
by the way 顺便说一下
in any way 在任何方面

in every way 在各方面

give way (to sb./sth.)屈服；让步
lose one s way 迷路
(there is) no way 不可能；没门
by way of 经过；经由
in the way 和 in one’s way 两个短语含义相同，都含“挡住去路；碍事”之意。
In a way, it’s kind of nice to be studying alone.
在某种程度上讲，独自一个人学习相当不错。
Page No.249
高手过招
单项填空
I can’t see the word on the blackboard. Your head is . （原创）
A. on the way B. in a way
C. by the way D. in the way
解析：选 D。in the way 和 in one’s way 均表示“挡住去路；碍事”之意。故 D 项符合句意。
Page No.250
9. go by
经过;（时间）过去；依照，靠……判断
联想拓展
go against 违背；对……不利
go without 勉强维持，凑合;没有……而将就
go in for 爱好；参加；从事
go over 复习;仔细审查
go ahead 进行；发生；（尤指经某人允许）开始做
go through 通过；经历，经受；查看，调查
go out 出去；熄灭
go off 离开，出发；爆发，突然响起；停止；熄灭
go up 上升
go down 下降
Page No.251
He went by his teacher without even a greeting.
他从老师身边经过时连声招呼也没打。
As time went by/With time going by, he has changed a lot.随着时光流逝，他已经改变了许多。
Don’t go by that old map—it has been out of date.
别参照那张旧地图，它已经过时了。
You can’t always go by appearances.
你不能总是凭外表来判断。
Page No.252
高手过招
用方框内所给短语的适当形式填空 （原创）
go in for/go off/go through/go without
①The new law did not .
②I am an entrance examination next year.
③There’s no money for a holiday this year; we’ll just have to .
④He didn’t wake up even though the alarm .
答案：①go through ②going in for
③go without ④went off
Page No.253

10. as a result

结果，因此
联想拓展
as a result of 由于……；作为……的结果
as a consequence 结果
in consequence 结 果
in consequence of 由于
result from 由……引起；由于（意思等同于 lie in）
result in 结果；导致（意思等同于 lead to）
He made a big mistake, and, as a result, lost his job.
他犯了个大错，结果丢了工作。
He didn't pass the exam as a result of his carelessness.
他由于粗心而没有通过考试。
His success results from his hard work.
他的成功源于自身的努力。
Acting before thinking always results in failure.
做事之前不加考虑总会导致失败。
Page No.254
高手过招
(1)单项填空
He fell the bike and broke his leg as .
（2009・12・山西大同检测）
A. down; result B. off; a result
C. onto; a result of D. to; a result of
(2)完成句子 （原创）
①由于大雪，他迟到了。
He was late the heavy snow.
②因此，我们不得不给菜地浇水。
, we have to water the vegetable garden.
③他考试不及格是由于粗心造成的。
His failure in the exam his carelessness.
④这场意外事故造成两人死亡。
The accident the death of two people.
Page No.255
解析：(1) 选 B。fall off 意思是“从……上掉下来”；as a result 的意思是“因而；结果”。
(2)①as a result of ②As a result
③resulted from ④resulted in
Page No.256
11. make up
化妆；化装；捏造，虚构（故事，诗等）
联想拓展
make up for 补偿
be made up of=consist of 由……组成
make for 有利于做成某事，
有助于做成某事；走向；冲向
make it 及时赶到；成功
make it up 和解；讲和
make known 使知晓；传达

make out	理解；懂得；辨认出

She spent an hour making (herself) up before the party.
她在聚会前用了一个小时化妆。
Stop making things up!
不要胡编了!
Page No.257
高手过招 (1)
单项填空
In Singapore, a southeastern Asian country, the Chinese people the largest percentage of its population, so you can speak Chinese there.
（2009・12・河北保定检测）
A. make up B. take up C. hold up D. turn up
(2)完成句子 （原创）
①讲究卫生有助于身体健康。
Cleanliness good health.
②我们需要 50 美元以补足所需要的数目。
We need $50 to the sum required.
③那位经理的字迹很难辨认。
It was difficult to the manager's handwriting.
解析： (1) 选 A。考查短语辨析。make up 意为“编造，弥补，组成，构成”；take up 意为“拿起来，占据(时间或空间)”；hold up 意为“阻止”；turn up 意为“开大，调高，出现”。
(2)①makes for ②make up ③make out
Page No.258
12. after all
毕竟，终究
联想拓展
at all 根本，完全；到底，究竟；既然
not at all 一点也不
in all 总共，共计
above all 首先；最重要的是
first of all 首先
all in all 总之
Don't get discouraged by setbacks, we are new to the work after all.
别因挫折而灰心,毕竟我们不熟悉这项工作。
He did come after all. 他终究还是来了。Page No.259
高手过招
单项填空
①The hurricane damaged many houses and business buildings; , it caused 20 deaths.
（2009・12・山西平遥检测）
A. or else B. therefore
C. after all D. besides
②I'd like to buy a house—modern, comfortable, and in a quiet neighbourhood.
（2009・11・宁夏银川检测）
A. in all B. above all
C. after all D. at all
解析： ①选 D。由语境逻辑可以推出该空表示“另外，除此之外”，只有 D 项与句意相符。

②选 B。考查“介词＋all”的短语辨析。句意为：我想买一座房子——时尚、舒适，最重要的是社区要安

静。in all 总共；above all 最重要的是；after all 毕竟；at all 根本。

Page No.260

13. deal with

处理；安排；对付

易混辨析

do with/deal with

表示“怎样处理”时，do with 常与连接代词 what 连用，而 deal with 常与连接副词 how 连用。这两个短语在意思上有细微的差别。一般来说，do with 意为“处置；忍受；相处；有关”等。deal with 意义很广，意为“对付；应付；处理；安排；论述；涉及；与……打交道/做生意”等。How are you going to deal with the problem?

你们打算怎样处理这个问题呢？

Page No.261

Such man is difficult to deal with.

这种人不容易相处。

I’ve dealt with him for ten years.

我和他做生意已经 10 年了。

This book deals with the Middle East.

这本书是关于中东问题的。

He didn’t know what to do with the property his father had left. 他不知道如何处理他父亲留下的财产。

I can’t do with the loud noise. 我无法忍受那种噪音。

Page No.262

高手过招

单项填空

①It is said in Australia there is more land than the government knows .

（2009・12・贵州贵阳检测）

A. it what to do with B. what to do it with

C. what to do with it D. to do what with it

②He knows to deal with man but when he meets women, he doesn’t know to do.（原创）

A. what; how B. what; what

C. how; what D. how; how

解析： ①选 C。what to do (with it)为固定结构，意为“如何处理……”，意思等同于 how to deal (with it)。“疑问词+不定式”作 knows 的宾语。

②选 C。作“对待，处理”讲时，do with 和 deal with 同义，deal with 与 how 搭配，do with 与 what 搭配。

Page No.263

14. watch over

看守；监视；照看

Could you watch (over) my clothes while I have a swim?

我游泳时你能帮我看着我的衣服吗？

He felt that God was watching over him.

他感觉到上帝保佑着他。

watch out (for) 当心，注意

watch for sb./sth. 观察；等待

keep a watch on 监视

under the close watch 在严密监视下

Page No.264

高手过招

翻译句子

①他们等待着进一步的发展。

②小心！汽车来了。

答案： ①They are watching for further developments.

②Watch out! There’s a car coming.

Page No.265

重点句型

15. Over time my memory has developed so much that, like an elephant, I never forget anything I have been told!

随着时间的推移，我的记忆能力发展得如此之快，就像一头大象一样，我从来不会忘记告诉我的任何事情！

so ...that ...意为 “如此……以至于……”。

Page No.266

②such+ a/an+adj.+单数可数名词+that-clause

adj.+复数名词+that-clause

adj.+不可数名词+that-clause

She’s so ill that she can’t get out of bed.

她病得很重，都下不了床了。

These are such interesting books that children like to read them.

这些书很有趣，孩子们喜欢读。

温馨提示

so that 既可以表达结果，又可以表达目的，表目的时相当于 in order that。

I stopped so that you could catch up.

我停下来以便你能赶得上。

“so ...that ...”结构中的“so+adj./adv.”位于句首时，主句要倒装。

So hard does he work that he seldom goes home.

他工作那么努力，几乎不回家。

“such ...as ...”中的 as 引导的是一个定语从句。

Page No.267

高手过招

单项填空

—What a beautiful day!

—Yes, it’s that I’d like to take a walk.

（2009・12・陕西西安检测）

A. such nice weather B. so a nice weather

C. too nice weather D. nice weather so

解析：选 A。因为此处 weather 是中心词，但它为不可数名词，所以不能加冠词。

Page No.268

Unit 4 Wildlife protection

Page No.269

核心单词

1. decrease

v. 减少；（使）变小；变少

n. 减少；降低；减少的数量，其后常接介词 in/of

Page No.270

联想拓展

decrease (sth.) to/by ... 减少到/了……

increase vi.&vt. 增加；增长；增强

n.增加；增加的数量

increase to/by ...增加到/了……

on the decrease/increase 在减少/增加

易混辨析

reduce/decrease

reduce　强调在“数量、大小，程度或强度”方面下降或减少。

decrease 侧重强调“稳定地，逐渐地，不断地”减少。

They are making every effort to decrease the production cost. 他们正在尽力降低生产成本。

The membership decreased to 150.

会员数减少到了 150 人。

The number of students in the class has decreased by 20.

班级里的人数减少了 20 人。

There has been a decrease in our imports.

我们的进口数量减少了。

Page No.271

高手过招

完成句子　（原创）

①这些措施将有助于降低生产成本。

will help　the cost of production.

②人口出生率正在下降。

The birthrate is　.

答案：①These measures; decrease

②on the decrease

Page No.272

2. suggest

vt. 建议；提出（意见、计划、理论等）；暗示；表明

常用结构：

suggest+doing　建议做……

suggest sb./sb.’s doing sth.

建议某人做某事（不说 suggest sb. to do sth.）

suggest sth. to sb.

向某人提议……（不能说 suggest sb. sth.）

suggest (to sb.)+that 从句(向某人)建议。（所接从句用虚拟语气：sb.+should+动词原形，should 可以省略）

Page No.273

It is suggested that ...　建议是……

suggest sth. 暗示；表明……

suggest+that 从句 暗示；表明……（从句用陈述语气）

suggest sth. to sb.　使某人想起……

I suggest doing it in another way.

我建议换一种方式做这件事。

They suggested another shop to us.

他们向我们建议了另一家商店。

She suggested that we（should）have lunch at the new restaurant.

她建议我们在那家新开的餐馆吃午餐。

Her expression suggested that she had told a lie.

她的表情表明她撒了谎。

Page No.274

温馨提示

suggestion, advice, proposal 作“建议”讲时，相关的名词性从句要用虚拟语气。

My suggestion is that we (should) go to the cinema together.我建议我们一块儿去看电影。(表语从句)

It’s suggested that you (should) stay here for another week.建议你在这儿再待一个星期。(主语从句)

He gave me an suggestion that I should go to Shanghai for a holiday.他建议我去上海旅游。(同位语从句)

Page No.275

高手过招

单项填空

His suggestion to see the art exhibition interested everyone of us. （2009・12・山东潍坊检测）

A. that we go B. which we should go

C. that we would go D. we should go

解析：选 A。不管是 suggest 的何种形式，在句子中有“建议”之意时，后接的从句必须用虚拟语气。

Page No.276

3. affect

vt. 影响；侵袭；相当于；使感动；激起（悲伤、愤怒、爱等情绪）

易混辨析

affect/effect/influence

affect vt.表示“影响，（病）侵袭”，多指不好的影响。当 affect 的宾语是人时，它表示引起心智或感情上的影响，即“使……感动”。

effect 表示“影响”时，是名词，指由于某种原因直接产生的结果，常用短语为：have an effect on 对…… 有影响；in effect 正在实行；实际上；side effect 副作用；take effect 开始实行；开始生效；without effect 没有效果；come into effect 生效；实施；bring/carry sth. into effect 使……生效；be of no effect 无效果。Page No.277

influence 多指对人的思想、观念、心理情绪等内在的东西产生潜移默化的影响，或对人的决定、行为等造成某种程度的影响。

The disease is beginning to affect her brain.

疾病逐渐侵袭她的大脑。

We are deeply affected by his devotion to work.

他对工作的奉献令我们深受感动。

The book had a great influence on his life.

这本书对他的人生影响很大。

He is, in effect, my rival. 实际上，他是我的竞争对手。

Page No.278

高手过招

单项填空

Sichuan province by the earthquake， causing difficulties to the post festival road transport. （2009・11・陕西西安检测）

A. were affected B. was affected

C. had effected D. has affected

解析：选 B。affect 为动词，意思是“影响；感动”；effect 为名词，意思是“影响；效果”。根据句意选择 B。

Page No.279

4. appreciate

vt.欣赏；感激；意识到；体会；理解

appreciate 后可接名词、代词、动名词、名词性从句等作宾语，但不能接不定式。表示“感激，感谢”时，其后的宾语只能为“物”，不能为“人”。其后不直接跟 if 或 when 引导的从句，若语义上需要接这类从句，需借助 it，即：appreciate it if/when ...。

Page No.280

易混辨析

appreciate/thank

appreciate 意为“感激，感谢”时的结构为：

appreciate (doing) sth.

appreciate it if/when ...

thank 表示“感谢”时的结构为：thank sb. for sth.。

I appreciate your ability very much.

我很欣赏你的能力。

We shall appreciate hearing from you again.

能再次收到你的来信，我们将十分感激。

I appreciate that you have come here so early.

感谢你来得这么早。

I would appreciate it very much if you would help me with it.如果你能帮助我做这件事，我将不胜感激。

Page No.281

高手过招

单项填空

I really appreciate to relax with you on this nice island.

A. to have had time B. having time

C. to have time D. to having time

解析：选 B。考查 appreciate 的搭配。此处 appreciate 意为“欣赏”，其后不能接动词不定式作宾语，而只能用名词或动名词形式。

Page No.282

5. mercy

n. 仁慈；宽恕；宽容；恩惠；幸运；怜悯

常用结构：

at the mercy of sb./sth. 任由某人(某事物)摆布或控制

have mercy on/upon 对……有怜悯心

show mercy to sb. 宽恕/怜悯某人

without mercy 毫不留情地；残忍地

They showed mercy to their enemies.

他们对敌人很仁慈。

It’s a mercy she wasn’t hurt in the accident.

她在事故中未受伤, 真幸运。

Page No.283

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①那只船在暴风雨中失去了控制。

②可怜可怜我们吧！

答案：①The ship was at the mercy of the storm.

②Have mercy on us!

Page No.284

6. hunt

vi.&vt.打猎，猎取；搜索

Wolves hunt in packs.

狼是成群猎食的。

Police are hunting an escaped criminal.

警方正在追捕逃犯。

常用结构：

hunt for 试图找到(某人/物)

hunt after 探求；追求

答案：①I’m hunting for a lost book.

②Many people hunt after fame all their lives but never find it.

Page No.285

7. include

vt. 包括；包含

include 侧重指范围，其主语和宾语属于同类，是整体与部分的关系。后面常接名词、代词、动名词作宾语。

The trip includes a visit to Beijing.

旅行包括到北京参观。

联想拓展

contain vt. 表示“包含，含有；能容纳”，侧重指内容或成分，其主语和宾语不属于同类。

This fruit contains a lot of vitamins.

这个水果含有丰富的维他命。

hold vt. 表示“容纳；盛有……”；表示“里面装有……”时可与 contain 互换。

This room can hold 50 people.这间屋子能容纳 50 人。

Page No.286

高手过招

(1) 用 include 的适当形式填空

①Our group has ten students, Tom .

②We will learn 7 subjects this term, PE.

(2)单项填空

Even if they didn’t the cost of food in the tour, it’s still a cheap vacation to the U.S.

Hold B. contain C. share D. Include

解析：(1)①included ②including

(2) 选 D。根据句意可知用“包括”。而 contain 多用来强调所包含的内容本来就是物体固有的一部分。

Page No.287

重点短语

8. die out

灭绝；逐渐消失；灭亡

联想拓展

die for 渴望；很想

die to do 渴望；很想

die away（尤指声音、光、风）逐渐消失;停止

die down （兴奋、激动等情绪）渐弱；渐息；平息

die off （家族，种族等）相继死亡；（草木）枯死

die from/of 因……而死；通常由疾病、饥寒、情感原因造成的死亡用 die of,除此之外的原因用 die from。

Many species will soon die out if we don’t take action.

如果我们不采取行动，许多物种将很快灭绝。

Many old customs have died out.

许多旧的风俗已不复存在。

Page No.288

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

①This kind of plants are . Some day they will forever. （2009・12・甘肃天水检测）

A. dying off；die out

B. dying away；die off

C. dying down；die out

D. dying out；die away

② Unfortunately, the soldier died a wound in the chest.

（2009・12・山东德州检测）

A. from　　B. out

C. off　　D. down

Page No.289

(2)用 die 的相关短语填空　　（原创）

①The noise of the car　　in the distance.

②The old traditions are　　.

③The man　　a wound.

④I’m　　something to eat.

解析:(1)①选 A。前面句子用了进行时，表示正在灭亡，故用 die off。后面表示有一天会永远消失，故用 die out。

②选 A。根据句意此处 soldier 死的原因应该是胸部受伤。

(2)①died away　②dying out　③died from

④dying for

Page No.290

9. protect ...from ...

保护……免受……，后接较小的事情或危害，如：frost, harm, catching cold。

联想拓展

protect ...against ...后接较大的事情，如：战争、灾害、重税、威胁等。

keep sb. from doing sth. prevent/stop sb.(from) doing sth.阻止某人做某事

keep sb. doing sth.使某人一直做某事

defend ...from/against 保卫……以抵御……

Page No.291

易混辨析

defend/protect/guard/preserve

defend 保卫；防护；防守（含有采取措施抵制进攻的意思）；protect 常含有提供安全的方式来驱开不适、伤害或进攻的意思；guard 含有看守的意思；preserve 指采取措施维护、保护、保存。

You must learn to protect yourself from the danger.

你必须学会保护自己，免遭危险。

She had to defend herself against the guard dog.

她不得不防备看门狗咬她。

A policeman was guarding the entrance to the embassy.

一位警察正守卫在大使馆出口处。

It is one of the duties of the police to preserve public order.警察的职责之一是维持公共秩序。

Page No.292

高手过招

单项填空

Use the umbrella to　　yourself from the rain.　　（原创）

A. prevent　　B. protect

C. defend　　D. protection

解析：选 B。prevent sb. from doing sth.防止某人干某事，意思类似于 stop/keep sb. from doing sth.；protect sb. from sth.保护某人免遭伤害；defend 保卫；防护；防守（含有采取措施抵制进攻的意思）。

Page No.293

10. pay attention to

注意

联想拓展

bring sth. to one’s attention 使某事引起某人注意

call/draw one’s attention to sth. 使某人注意某事

draw/catch/attract one’s attention 引起某人的注意
fix/focus/concentrate one’s attention on sth.
集中注意力于某事物
You should pay attention to your spelling.
你要注意自己的拼写。
Page No.294
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①他的提议没有引起任何注意。
No attention his advice.
②他提醒我注意一些新的证据。
He some new evidence.
答案：①was paid to
②called/drew my attention to
Page No.295
11. come into being
形成；产生（不可用于被动语态或进行时）
联想拓展
come into existence 形成；产生；开始存在
come into effect/force/operation 开始生效；开始实施
come into use 开始被使用
come into power 上台执政
come into fashion 开始流行
come into office 就 职come
into action 开始行动
We do not know when this world came into being.
我们不知道世界是何时形成的。
Page No.296
高手过招
单项填空
Before the computer , people could never imagine it could bring about such great changes to human life. （2009・12・福建龙岩一中检测）
A. came into being B. was discovered
C. was come into being D. was formed
解析：选 A。句意为：在电脑出现之前，人们绝不会想到它会给人类的生活带来如此巨大的变化。电脑不能说是“被发现”或“被形成”的，排除 B、D 两项。come into being 不能用于被动语态和进行时，排除 C 项，故选 A。
Page No.297
重点句型
12. Why are they in danger of disappearing?
它们为什么处于灭绝的危险中？
常用结构：
in danger (of) 在危险中
be in danger of 有……的危险
be out of danger 脱离危险
The girl’s life was obviously in immediate danger.
很明显,这女孩的生命危在旦夕。

The sick man is in danger of death. 这位病人有死亡的危险。

The wounded policeman is now out of danger.
受伤的警察已脱离危险。
联想拓展
be a danger to sb./sth. 危险的人/因素
be dangerous for 对……有危险
endanger vt. 危害，危及
endangered adj. 有危险的；濒临灭绝的
Page No.298
高手过招
完成句子
①他再这样下去会丢掉工作的。
He is losing his job if he goes on like this.
②警察说这个男人对于公众来说是个危险分子。
The police said the man was the public.
答案： ①in danger of ②a danger to
Page No.299
13. They lived on the earth tens of millions of years ago, long before humans come into being.
千百万年前，恐龙就在地球上生活，比人类的出现要早得多。
long before ...在……之前很长一段时间
I knew the news that they were invited to the party, long before you told me.
早在你告诉我之前很久我就知道他们被邀请来参加晚会的消息了。
答案：They had known each other long before I knew them.
Page No.300
Unit 5 Music
Page No.301
核心单词
1. attach
vt.&vi. 系上；缚上；附加；连接
常用结构：
attach ...to ...附上；连接；系上；把……归于……
attach importance/significance/value to sth.
认为某事物重要/有意义/有重要价值
attach oneself to 依附; 参加(党派等)
be attached to 热爱；依恋;附属于
Page No.302
I attached a wire to the radio.
我在收音机上接了一根金属线。
He’ll attach the label to your luggage.
他会把标签系在你的行李上。
How can you attach the blame for this accident to the driver?
你怎么能把这次事故的责任归于司机呢？
Although he was seriously ill, he took part in the basketball match because he attached great value to his school sports record. 尽管他病得很重，他还是参加了学校的篮球比赛，因为他把学校的体育纪录看得很重。
He is deeply attached to his mother.
他深爱着自己的母亲。
This hospital is attached to the medical college nearby.
这个医院附属于附近的那所医学院。

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

高手过招

完成句子 (原创)

①很多人认为成为富人和名人很重要。

Many people attach becoming rich and famous.

②我们要把发展经济的工作放在首位。(primary)

We should attach the development of economy.

答案： ①great importance to

②primary importance to

Page No.304

2. form

vt. 形成；构成；排列；(使)组成；养成（习惯）

联想拓展

form 用作名词时的固定搭配：

as a matter of form 作为一种形式；礼貌上

fill out/in a form 填表格

take the form of ... 采取……的形式

in the form of ... 以……的形式

be in/out of form 处于良好/不良的竞技状态

易混辨析

form/shape/figure

这三个名词的一般含义为“形状”或“外形”。

form 是其中最普通、使用范围最广、含义最多的词。它可以表示哲学上讲的“形态”，文艺上的“体裁”，雕刻艺术中的“形状”，以及普通含义的“方式”或“形式”等。此外，form 也可以表示人或动物的“体形;外形”。

Page No.305

shape 可以表示隐约可见的“人影”或“物影”、“几何图形”、人体“外形”、引人注目的人物或塑像等。

figure 指物时，侧重指轮廓；指人时，着重指姿态。

A plan began to form in his mind.

一项计划在他脑海里形成。

One of the most important tasks for parents is to help and promote to form a child’s character.

父母的一个重要任务就是要帮助和促进孩子个性的形成。

The soldiers formed into a line.士兵们排成一行。

Flour, eggs, fat and sugar form the main contents of a cake. 面粉、鸡蛋、脂肪和糖是做蛋糕的主要原料。This disease takes the form of high fever and sickness for several days. 这种病呈现持续几天的发热和呕吐症状。

Page No.306

高手过招

(1)单项填空

This band is of eight boys and girls, including two Japanese.（2009・12・福建泉州检测）

A. made B. consist C. attended D. formed

(2)翻译句子 （原创）

①老师让学生排成一排。

②他们正在用陶土做碗。

解析：(1) 选 D。句意为：这支乐队由 8 个男孩和女孩组成，其中有 2 个是日本人。“由……组成”可用 be made up of, be formed of 或 consist of 表示。

(2)①The teacher formed the students into a line.

②They are forming bowls from clay.

Page No.307

3. brief

adj. 简短的；简要的

n. 搞要；大纲

briefly adv. 简要地；短暂地

Mozart’s life was brief.莫扎特的一生是短暂的。

It’s not part of my brief to train new employees.

培训新雇员不是我工作范围内的事。

常用结构：

in brief

to be brief 简言之；简单地说；一句话

Page No.308

高手过招

翻译句子

①请简洁地说。

②总之，你做得不好。

答案：①Please be brief.

②In brief, your work is bad.

Page No.309

4. earn

vt. 赚；挣得；获利；赢得；获得

常用结构：

earn one’s living=make a living 谋生

earn money= make money 挣钱

earn a good reputation 赢得一个好名声

易混辨析

earn/obtain/acquire/get/gain

earn 侧重指依靠自己的劳动或因付出代价，有功而获得。obtain

着重指通过巨大努力、要求得到所需或盼望已久的东西。Page No.310

acquire 书面用语，强调通过不断地、持续地努力而获得某物，也指日积月累地获得。

get 一般用语，使用较广。可指以任何方式得到某物，也不一定要经过努力。

gain 侧重指经过努力或有意识的行动而取得某种成就，或指获得某种利益或好处。

She earned a living as a part time secretary.

她靠做兼职秘书为生。

He failed to obtain a scholarship.

他没有获得奖学金。（巨大努力、盼望已久的）

His achievement earned him respect.

他的成就赢得人们的尊敬。（靠自己的劳动）

He gained much good. 他得到很多好处。（利益或好处）

He got the first prize in the listening contest.

他在听力比赛中获得了一等奖。（使用较广）

Page No.311

高手过招

单项填空

The day I discovered that the good name my parents had brought our whole family the respect of our neighbours.

（2009・12・福建福州检测）

earned B. deserved C. given D. Used

解析：选 A。按照句意，此处应为“赢得”的意思。earn 的宾语可以是 name, fame, reputation, position 等。

Page No.312

5. hit

n.（演出等）成功；打击；打

vt.&vi. 击中；碰撞；袭击；（精神上）打击；使突然想起

常用结构：

hit it 猜中，说对了

hit on/upon 偶然碰上；偶然找到；偶然想起

be/make a hit (with sb.)

（给某人）留下很好的第一印象；使某人一见钟情

Page No.313

易混辨析

hit/strike/beat

hit 用于表示“命中，击败”。

strike 指有意识的动作，也可以指无意识的动作，可能是用力地打一下，也可能是多下。敲钟必须用 strike。

beat 指有目的地在某物上连续不断地击打、轻打、重打都可以。如：心脏的跳动。

Her new series is a smash hit.

她的新系列节目极为成功，引起轰动。

The farmers were hit hard by the drought last winter.

去年冬天久旱不雨，农民受到严重打击。

It hit me all of a sudden that he had already come back.

我突然想到他已经回来了。

Page No.314

高手过招

单项填空

The song was a at once and its recording tape rose to No.1 on the best-seller list.

（2009・12・江西玉山检测）

shock B. strike C. hit D. beat

解析：选 C。按照句意此处表示“（演出等方面）成功”。

Page No.315

6. performance

n.［C］演出；演奏；表演；成绩；成果；表现

［U］履行；实行；完成

常用结构：

put on a performance 上演；表演

give a performance 进行表演

The evening performance begins at 8 o’clock.

晚上的演出 8 点开始。

He failed completely in the performance of his duty.

他完全没有履行他的职责。

Our basketball team’s performance has been excellent.

我们篮球队的表现一向优异。

联想拓展

perform v. 履行，执行，做；表演，演出；工作运转（好/不好）

The engine seems to be performing well.

这台机器看上去运转良好。

perform an experiment 做实验

perform an operation 做手术

perform a ceremony 出席仪式

Page No.316

高手过招

单项填空

It was known to him that they would invite him to in the New Year's Concert.

（2009·12·江西安福中学检测）

perform B. reach C. attain D. accomplish

解析：选 A。动词 perform 此处用作不及物动词，意为“表演；演出；演奏”，其他三个词意为“达到；完成”，不符合句意。

Page No.317

7. familiar

adj. 熟悉的；常见的；亲近的

联想拓展

get/be familiar with 主语通常是人，表示“熟知某人/某事”。

be familiar to 主语一般为物，表示“（对某人来说）某物是很熟悉的（事物）”。

Are you familiar with this type of car?

你熟悉这种型号的汽车吗？

Are you familiar with the rules of baseball?

你熟悉棒球的规则吗?

These facts are familiar to you all.

这些事实你们大家都很熟悉。

French was as familiar to him as English.

他像熟悉英语那样熟悉法语。

Page No.318

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①我可以当你的导游，因为我对这个地方非常熟悉。

I can be your guide because I this area.

②他的名字是我所熟悉的，但是我想如果我再看到他，恐怕认不出来了。

His name me, but I don't think I can recognize him if I see him again.

答案： ①am familiar with ②is familiar to

Page No.319

重点短语

8. dream of

梦想

常用结构：

dream of/about (doing) sth. 梦见做……

dream of/about sb./sth 梦见某人/某物

dream one's life away 虚度光阴dream

a ...dream 做……梦

I dreamt about flying last night.

昨夜我梦见自己在飞翔。

Was it real or did I dream it?

是真的还是我当时在做梦呢?

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①她虚度一生, 一事无成。

②我梦见自己能飞翔。

答案：①She dreamt her life away, never really achieved anything.

②I dreamt (that) I could fly.

Page No.321

9. to be honest(with you)

老实（对你）说

联想拓展

honestly speaking 老实说；实话实说

to tell the truth 说实话；老实说

To be honest, I don't like him very much.

老实说，我并不是很喜欢他。

We don't have a chance of winning the match, to be honest. 说实话，我们没有赢得这场比赛的可能。

Page No.322

高手过招

单句改错 （原创）

①To be honesty, it is the worst film I have ever seen.

②Honest speaking, you are the most hardworking

person I have ever seen.

答案：①honesty→honest ②Honest→Honestly

Page No.323

10. break up

解散；驱散；分裂；拆散；结束；使精神垮掉

联想拓展

break away from 摆脱；脱离

break down 机器出故障；崩溃；瓦解

break in 破门而入；插嘴

break into the house 破门而入

break one's promise/word 食言

break out 战争、火灾等爆发

break into laughter 突然大笑

break through 突破；穿过

break off the conversation/relations 中断交谈/关系

The police tried to break up the crowd.

警察试图驱散人群。

The car is always breaking down.这辆车老是出毛病。

Children shouldn't break in on adults' conversation.

小孩子不要打断大人们的谈话。

Page No.324

高手过招

单项填空

The couple had quarrelled all time before they their engagement.（2009·12·安徽合肥一中检测）

A. broke down B. broke through

C. broke off D. broke out

解析：选 C。句中 quarrel 暗示了“中断婚约”。break off the conversation/relations 中断交谈/关系。

Page No.325

11. above all

首先；尤其；最重要的是

联想拓展

above all 是从事物的重要性上说的“首先，最重要的是”。

first of all 是从事物的排列顺序上说的“第一”。

in all 表示“总共；总而言之”。

after all 表示“毕竟”。

all in all 从各方面考虑；总的来说

not at all 不用谢

all long 一直，始终

Never waste anything, and above all, never waste time.

不要浪费东西,尤其是不要浪费时间。

Page No.326

高手过招

单项填空

—Would you like to see a film with me?

—I’d love to, but I cannot; , I am busy. For another, I don’t want to go out today.

（2009・11・江苏扬州检测）

A. for one thing B. for example

C. for another thing D. above all

解析：选 A。从空后的 for another 可知答案。for one thing, ...for another 为固定搭配，意思是“一方面……，另一方面……”。

Page No.327

12. sort out

分类；整理

常用结构：

sort sth./oneself out 解决（某个/自己的问题等）

We must sort out the good apples from the bad ones.

咱们得把好苹果拣出来, 同坏的分开。

Let’s leave them to sort themselves out.

他们的事儿让他们自己解决吧。

联想拓展

look out 当心

pick out 挑选出

sell out 卖光

put out 扑灭

wear out 穿坏

carry out 执行

take out 取出

try out 试试

find out 查明

be/go out 外出，熄灭

Page No.328

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①我需要先安顿一下, 然后再去找新的工作。

②这个房间需要收拾一下。

答案：①I need to sort my life/myself out a bit before I start looking for a new job.

②This room needs sorting out.

Page No.329

重点句型

13. Their personal life was regularly discussed by people who did not know them but talked as if they were close friends.

一些不认识他们的人也在不断地讨论他们的私生活，而且就像是他们的密友一样在谈论他们。

as if/though “好像，似乎”；可引导状语从句。

作连词时，后可跟从句、分词、形容词等，引导从句时常用虚拟语气，表示与事实不符或相反的情况。 与现在事实不符或相反，谓语动词常用一般过去时（be 动词用 were）；

与过去事实不符或相反，谓语动词常用过去完成时；

有时不接从句，而接分词、形容词、副词，不定式、介词短语等，可以看成是省略的句子。

He spoke in that way as if he were a foreigner.

他讲话的方式就好像是老外。

Page No.330

高手过招

单项填空

He held his pen as if he what to write.

（2009・12・山东莱州检测）

A. has known B. had known

C. knew D. known

解析：选 B。由主句是一般过去时可推出从句虚拟语气为过去完成时。

Page No.331

14. However, after a year or so in which they became more serious about their work, the Monkees started to play and sing their own songs like a real band.

然而，大约一年以后，他们对自己的工作开始逐渐认真起来。“门基”组合开始像一支真正的乐队那样演唱他们自己的歌曲了。

in which 此处引导定语从句修饰 a year or so,可换成 when,“介词+关系代词 which”大多可转换成关系副词来引导定语从句。

I shall never forget the day on which (=when) we moved into our new house.

我将永远不会忘记我们搬进新居的那一天。

Page No.332

高手过招

翻译句子

①那起交通事故就是在这里发生的吗？

②我们不知道她为什么没来参加聚会。

答案：①Is this the place at which (=where) the traffic accident occurred?

②We don’t know the reason for which (=why) she didn’t come to the party.

Page No.333

必 修 3

Page No.334

Unit 1 Festivals around the world

Page No.335

核心单词

1. starve

vt.&vi. (使)饿死；饥饿；渴望，急需；饿得要死

She s starving herself trying to lose weight.

她为了减肥而忍饥挨饿。

常用结构：
starve for 渴望得到……
starve to death　饿死
be starved of 极需，缺乏
starve sb. into sth./ doing sth.使某人挨饿以迫使其做某事
The plants are starving for water.这些植物极需要水。
They got lost in the desert and starved to death.
他们在沙漠中迷了路而被饿死了。
The engine was starved of petrol and wouldn't start.
发动机缺油，发动不起来。
Page No.336
联想拓展
starvation n.　挨饿；饿死
高手过招
(1) 单项填空
Many people　　death in the earthquake as a result of the delay of the supplies.(2009・12・陕西西安检测)
A. were starved of　　B. starved to
C. were starved　　D. starved for
(2) 用 starve 相关短语的适当形式填空　　（原创）
①Thousands of people　　in Africa.
②These children are　　love.
③The people on the island　　fresh water since it hadn't rained for nearly half a year.
解析: (1)选 B。starve to death 为固定搭配，意为“饿死”，符合句意。be starved of 与 starve for 均为“渴望”之意。
(2)①starved to death/died of starvation
②starving for③were starved of
Page No.337
It is my belief that ...我相信……
He has great belief in his doctor.他对他的医生无比信赖。
She has lost her belief in God.她已不相信上帝。
高手过招
用 brief 相关短语的适当形式填空
①He came to me　　I could help him.
②　　that nuclear weapons are immoral.
③The cruelty of the murders was　　.
答案：①in the belief that②It is my belief
③beyond belief
2. belief
n. \[C/U\] 信任；信仰，信心
believe vi.&vt. 相信
常用结构：
have belief in sth./sb.　对某物/某人的真实性和正确性所具有的信心
beyond belief　难以置信
in the belief that ... 相信……
Page No.338
3. gain
n. 获得；增加；获利，获得物；收益；利润

vt. 得到；获得，赢得，增加，增添，到达；（钟、表等）快

He gained full marks in the examination.他考试得了满分。

For the first time in her life she gained a clear idea of how vast the world is.

她生平第一次明确地知道世界是多么大。

The company has made notable gains in productivity.

该公司在生产能力方面已经有了明显的提高。

My watch gains five minutes a day.我的表一天快 5 分钟。

易混辨析

gain/win/get/earn/acquire

gain 指在斗争，竞争中做出很大努力而“获得……”，所得到的东西常具有一定价值。

win 含有取胜的一方具有优越的特质或条件而能克服各种障碍的意思，意为“赢得”。

get 为普通词，有时指不一定需要努力就能“得到”。

earn 意为“赚得”，表示经过艰苦努力所得到的报酬。

acquire 意为“获得，取得”，一般指通过漫长的过程而逐渐获得。

Page No.339

高手过招

选词填空（beat/defeat/conquer/win） （原创）

①I’m new in the job but I have already experience.

②Please me a glass of water.

③His perseverance him many friends and a gold medal.

④He up to $50,000 a year by writing stories.

⑤After six years’ study, he has a good knowledge of English.

答案： ①gained②get③has won④earns⑤acquired

4. award

vt. 授予，奖给(后多接双宾语，在多数场合下用被动形式 be awarded);判定

n.奖，奖品；奖金

Medals were awarded to the best speakers on the debating team.

奖章授给了辩论队中的最佳演说者。

He got the highest award in the contest.

他得到了比赛的最高奖。

Page No.340

易混辨析

award/prize/reward

award 既可作动词也可作名词，指为鼓励在工作中达到或完成所提出的要求或条件的人而进行的奖励，往往强调荣誉而不在乎奖品的大小或奖金的多少。

prize 为名词，多指在各类竞赛、竞争或抽彩中所赢得的奖。这种奖赏有的凭能力获得，有的凭运气获得。

reward 既可作动词也可作名词，指对某人的工作或服务等的报答。也指因帮助警察抓到罪犯或帮助失主找到东西而得到的赏金、酬金。

He won the award for the best student of the year.

他获得本年度最优秀学生奖。

A prize was given to the person who had the winning number.奖品奖给了那个获得中奖号码的人。

He received a medal as a reward for his courage.

他得到一枚奖章，作为对他勇敢的奖励。

Page No.341

高手过招

单项填空

Three university departments have been $600,000 to develop good practice in teaching and learning.(2009・12・江苏泰兴检测)

A.Promoted B.included

C.Secured D.awarded

解析:选 D。考查词义辨析。promote 促进，提升；include 包括；secure 保证，使安全；award 授予，奖给。根据句意“被奖励了 600,000 美元”可知，D 项正确。

5. admire

vt. 赞美；钦佩；羡慕。其后可接人或物作宾语，但不可以接宾语从句作宾语。

admiration n. 赞美，钦佩；令人赞美的人或物

admirer n. 钦佩者；羡慕者

admire sb. for sth. 因某事钦佩或羡慕某人

express admiration for sb. 对某人表示钦佩

have great admiration for sb. 十分钦佩某人

Page No.342

in admiration of 表示钦佩

with/in admiration 心怀钦佩地 They admired our garden.他们羡慕我们的花园。

I admire him for his success in business.

我羡慕他事业有成。

Aren t you going to admire my new house?

你难道不想夸夸我的新房子吗？

联想拓展

warn sb. of sth.警告某人某事

rob sb. of sth.抢劫某人某物

rid sb. of sth.使某人摆脱/除去某物

suspect sb. of sth.怀疑某人某事

accuse sb. of sth. 控告某人某事

demand answer of sb.要求某人答复

ask a favour of sb.请某人帮忙

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①Stop looking in the mirror (自我欣赏).

②Visitors to Beijing usually (钦佩那里的警察).

Page No.343

③Our school is widely (羡慕) its excellent teaching .

答案： ①admiring yourself②admire the policemen there

③admired for

6. remind

vt. 提醒；使想起

常用结构:

remind sb. of/about sth. 提醒某人记住/想起某事

remind sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事

remind sb. that ...提醒某人/使某人想起……

I reminded Gerald of his promise.我提醒吉罗德他曾许下的诺言。

Please remind me to write to my mother tomorrow.

请提醒我明天给我母亲写信。

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①这些照片使我想起我的童年。

Page No.344

②请提醒我每天服三次药。

答案： ①These photos remind me of my childhood.

②Please remind me to take my medicine three times a day. /Please remind me that I should take my medicine three times a day.

7. permission

n. \[U\]许可，允许

permit vt. 准许，许可，允许

n. 许可(证)；执照

常用结构：

with/without (one s) permission 得到允许/未经允许

ask sb. for permission 征求某人的许可

give sb. permission to do sth. 允许某人做某事

have one s permission 得到某人的同意

Page No.345

高手过招

完成句子

①They entered the area (未经允许).

②You will need to obtain planning (许可证) if you want to extend your house.

答案： ①without permission②permission

8. clothing

n. (总称)衣服，服装\[U\]

Check your belongings and make sure you don t leave your articles of clothing behind.

检查你的行李，不要丢下衣物。

Food, clothing and shelter are everyone s priorities.

衣食住行是每一个人优先考虑的事情。

易错辨析

clothing/clothes/cloth

clothing 是衣服、被褥的总称，为不可数名词；

clothes 指包括上衣、裤子、内衣、外衣等在内的具体的衣服，它没有单数形式，只能说 many/some/a few clothes;

cloth 则指做衣服所用的布料，为不可数名词。

Page No.346

高手过招

选词填空(clothing/clothes/cloth)

①The industry in this area has been going from strength to strength.

②It’s cold outside. You’d better put on more .

③How much does it take to make a blouse for a girl?

答案：①clothing②clothes③cloth

重点短语

9. take place

发生；举行

In the meantime, an economic crisis took place in that country.

在此期间那个国家发生了经济危机。

The Olympic Games take place every four years.

奥林匹克运动会每四年举行一次。

联想拓展

take one s place=take the place of ...代替……

take the first place 获得第一名

in place of 代替

Page No.347

易错辨析

take place/happen/break out/occur

take place 通常表示计划、安排之内的“发生”。

happen 指事情偶然的发生，常带有未能预见的含义；另外，还有“碰巧”之意。

break out 指火灾、战争或瘟疫的突然爆发。

occur 指按计划发生，常指（某想法、某事）出现在某人的头脑中。常见结构：It occurs/occurred to sb. that 表示“某人想起某事”。

It occurred to me that I had forgotten my keys.

我想起了我忘了带钥匙。

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①It was in the church that their wedding (举行).

②Will you attend the meeting (代替) me?

③ (请就座), please! We re ready to start.

④It’s hard to find a man to (代替) the present manager.

⑤Liu Xiang (获得第一名) in the 110m hurdle race.

Page No.348

答案：①took place②in place of③Take your place/seat

④take the place of⑤took the first place

10. in memory of

=to the memory of 纪念；追念

Many ceremonies are in memory of famous people.

很多典礼是为了纪念名人的。

The statue was built in memory of the famous scientist.

这个雕像是为了纪念那位有名的科学家而建的。

联想拓展

in honour of 为了纪念……；向……表示敬意

in praise of 歌颂；称赞

in favour of 赞同，支持

in charge of 负责

in need of 需要；缺少

in search of 寻找

in possession of 拥有

Page No.349

高手过招

(1)单项填空

This monument was built the little hero.

(2009・12・陕西咸阳检测)

A. in place of B. in search of

C. in memory of D. in need of

（2）用由“in+n.+of”构成的短语填空（原创）

①A monument was set up (纪念) the dead soldiers.

②He founded the charity (兴办那项慈善事业) (怀念) his late wife.

③If you are (需要) anything, don’t hesitate to let me know.

④In the discussion, I was (支持) Mr Li.

解析:（1）选 C。考查短语辨析。句意为：这座纪念碑是为纪念那位小英雄而建的。in place of 代替；insearch of 搜寻；in memory of 为纪念……;in need of 需要。

（2）①in memory/honour of②in memory of

③in need of④in favour of

Page No.350

11. dress up

dress 作“打扮自己或打扮某人”讲，与介词 as/like 连用或用于 dress up as sb./dress up for sth.结构。

We are supposed to dress up as movie characters for the party, what a novel idea!

我们在晚会上要装扮成电影中的角色，这是一个多么新奇的主意啊！

They dress up for the occasion.

为了参加这个活动，他们都穿上了盛装。

She dress up in Elizabethan costume for the fancy dress ball.

她穿上伊丽莎白一世时代的服装去参加化装舞会。

联想拓展

be dressed in 穿着……衣服

be dressed as 打扮成

be well dressed 衣着讲究

dress oneself 穿衣，打扮

dress sb. 给某人穿衣服高手过招

Page No.351

高手过招

单项填空

in a white uniform, he looks more like a cook than a doctor. (2009・12・江西赣州检测)

A. Dressed B. To dress

C. Dressing D. Having dressed

解析:选 A。be dressed in ...穿着……的衣服，表示一种状态。

12. play a trick/tricks on sb.

搞恶作剧；诈骗；开玩笑

The children played a trick on their teacher on April Fool’s Day.

孩子们在愚人节那天捉弄了他们的老师。

Remember not to play any tricks on the disabled.

记住不要戏弄残疾人。

联想拓展

play a joke on sb. 开某人的玩笑

make fun of sb. 取笑某人

laugh at sb. 嘲笑某人

Page No.352

smile at sb. 向某人微笑

make a fool of 愚弄;嘲笑

高手过招

用适当的介词填空 （原创）

①Tom liked making fun others in public.

②It’s bad manners to laugh the disabled.

③These boys like playing tricks their teacher.

④He smiled me when he heard my funny answer.

答案：①of②at③on④at

13. look forward to

期待某事／做某事(to 为介词，后接名词或动名词)

We should look forward to the futurity.

我们应该展望未来。

I am familiar with his work and look forward to hearing his views on literary and artistic creation.

我熟悉他的作品，并期待他能就文艺创作方面发表自己的见解。

Page No.353

联想拓展

带有介词“to”的短语可用下面这两句话帮助记忆：

习惯于旧方式的人坚持反对新事物，这样导致许多献身于科学的人被宣判为大逆不道。不喜欢这种事实的　人谈到此事时，总期待着增添自己的努力使它开始改变。

习惯于 be (get) used to，坚持 stick to，反对 object to，导致 lead to，献身于 be devoted to，被宣判为 be sentenced to，喜欢 prefer...to，谈到 come to，期待 look forward to，增添 add to，开始 get down to。

高手过招

(1)单项填空

She must be looking forward as much to his return as he himself is to her. (2009・12・浙江杭州检测)

A.See　　B.have seen　　C.seeing　　D.be seeing

(2)用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空　（原创）

①The boy hurried forward (see) the world famous oil painting because he had been looking forward to (see) it for a long time.

Page No.354

②The day I had been looking forward to (come).

③I used to (get) up late, but now I’m used to (get) up early.

解析: (1)选 C。句意为：她盼望他归来，就如同他想见到她一样。as 引导的是省略句，完整的句子是：as he himself is to looking forward to seeing her。此处分析句子结构，同时熟知 look forward to 的用法即可突破。

(2)①to see; seeing②came③get; getting

14. turn up

出席(某活动)(常用于口语);出现;找到;把(收音机等的)音量调大一些(其反义短语是 turn down)；到场

I’m sure your watch will turn up one of these days.

我担保你的手表准有一天能找到。

We invited her to dinner but she didn t even bother to turn up.我们请她吃饭她都不露面。

I can t hear the radio very well; could you turn it up a bit?

我听不太清楚收音机,你把声音调大点行吗?

Page No.355

联想拓展

turn against 反对；背叛

turn down　（音量等）调小；拒绝

turn off 关掉

turn on 打开；发动

turn out　结果是……；证明是……

turn to sb. for help 向某人求助

turn away 走开;转过脸去;把……打发走

turn in 进入；交出；上交

turn over 打翻；移交；反复考虑

turn into 把……变成……

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

He promised to come yesterday，but he hasn’t yet.

(2009・12・浙江宁波检测)

A. turned in　　B. turned up

C. turned on　　D. turned out

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

(2)用适当的介词或副词填空 （原创）

①It’s half past ten, but he hasn’t turned yet.

②It’s wrong to turn our motherland.

③Please turn the radio a bit; I’m doing my homework.

(3)用 turn 相关短语的适当形式填空（原创）

①Don’t worry. The file is sure to .

②Please the television a bit, I can’t hear it clearly.

③It that it was Tim who broke the vase.

④The sad child his mother for comfort.

解析: (1)选 B。考查短语辨析。turn in 进入；交出；上交；turn on 打开；turn out 结果是……。均不符合句意。turn up 出现。

(2)①up②against③down

(3)①turn up②turn; up③turned out

④turned to

15. keep one s word

守信用；履行诺言；word 意为“诺言”时，是不可数名词，不可以用复数形式，其前面不可以用冠词修饰。

You should keep your word once you make it.

Page No.357

你一旦许诺就要遵守诺言。

You promised you would take the children to camp so you must keep your word.

你答应过要带孩子们去野营，所以你必须信守诺言。

联想拓展

break one s word 食言

get in a word 插嘴

in a/one word=in short 总而言之

in other words 换句话说

word for word 逐词

have a word with sb.与某人谈话

have words with sb. 与某人争吵

word came that ...有消息传来…

高手过招

单项填空

She said she wouldn’t do it, and she did keep her .

(2009・12・江西修水检测)

A. Words B. word C. customs D. apology

Page No.358

解析:选 B。句意为：她说她不会做那件事的，她确实履行了她的诺言。keep one s word 意为“履行诺言”。word 意为“诺言”时，为不可数名词。

16. set off

出发；动身；使爆炸

What time are you planning to set off tomorrow?

你打算明天几点钟启程?

The terrorist set off a bomb in the city centre and killed six people.恐怖分子在市中心引爆了炸弹，杀害了 6 个人。

联想拓展

set off for a place 出发到某地

set about doing sth.开始（某工作）；着手做某事

set out 从某地出发上路

set out to do sth.开始做某事
set sth. up 摆放或竖起某物；创立，建立
set sth. aside 将某事物放在一边；
（为某目的）节省或保留金钱或时间
set down 记下；写下
Page No.359
高手过招
用 set 相关短语的适当形式填空（原创）
①The new government must finding solutions to the country’s economic problems.
②The children the fireworks in the yard.
③She a bit of money every month.
④They a statue in honour of the national hero.
⑤They’ve on a journey round the world.
答案：①set about②set off③sets aside
④set up⑤set off/out
重点句型
17. The country, covered with cherry tree flowers, looks as though it is covered with pink snow.
（节日里）整个国度到处是盛开的樱花,看上去就像是覆盖了一层粉红色的雪。
as though/as if 意为“好像”。
联想拓展
as though/as if 引导方式从句和表语、状语从句：
Page No.360
①引导方式状语从句
She acted as though nothing had happened.
她装得好像什么事也没发生过似的。
注意：当从句主语和主句主语一致,且从句谓语中含有动词 be 时, 可把主语和 be 一起省略。
He looked about as though (he was) in search of something.
他四下张望, 好像在寻找什么。
②引导表语从句
It looks as if it’s going to rain.看样子要下雨了。
③as though 和 as if 从句是用虚拟语气, 还是用陈述语气, 完全根据具体情况而定。如果从句表示的意思与事实完全相反, 或者纯粹是一种假设, 通常用虚拟语气。
The child talks as if she were an adult.
那孩子说话的样子好像她是个大人。
高手过招
用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空（原创）
①The pencil looks as if it (break) with half of it in the glass of water.
Page No.361
②Li Ming speaks English very well as though he (be) an Englishman.
③It seems as if our team (be) going to win.
④He talks about pyramids as though he (see) them himself.
答案：①were broken②were③is ④had seen
18. It was obvious that the manager of the coffee shop was waiting for Li Fang to leave ...
很明显，咖啡馆里的经理在等李方离开……
It was obvious/clear that ...= obviously/ clearly, ... 表示“很明显……，显而易见……”。属于 It is/was + adj./n./p.p.+that clause 结构。
联想拓展

It is necessary/important/strange/natural+that+sb. should do 必要的/重要的是/奇怪的/自然的是某人应该……

It is a pity/a shame/no wonder+that+sb. should do
遗憾的是/羞愧的是/难怪某人应该……
Page No.362
It is said/believed/reported/announced/expected/ ...+
that ...据说/判断/报道/宣布/预计……
It’s suggested/ordered that sb. (should) do 建议/要求某人
（做）某事
It s no harm drinking running water in that area.
在那个地区喝自来水是无害的。
It was quite clear that they had no desire for peace.
很显然他们没有和平的诚意。
It is said that the tickets have been sold out. 据说票已售完。
高手过招
单项填空
used to be thought that the earth was square.
(2009・12・江西上饶检测)
He B. What C. It D. That
解析:选 C。考查 it 用作形式主语的用法。that the earth was
square 是真正的主语，而作形式主语的，只能是 it。
Page No.363
Unit 2 Healthy eating
Page No.364
核心单词
1. balance
n. 天平；平衡；结余，余额
v.平衡；权衡
Can you balance yourself on skates?
你穿冰鞋能保持平衡吗?
If you earn ￡100 and spend ￡60，your balance is ￡40.
如果你挣 100 英镑，花 60 英镑，那么你就会结余 40 英镑。
You have to balance the advantages of living in the country against the disadvantages.
你得权衡一下住在乡下的好处和坏处。
常用结构:
keep a balanced diet 保持饮食平衡
Page No.365
keep one s balance 保持平衡lose
one s balance 失去平衡out of
balance 不平衡
a sense of balance 平衡感
bank balance 银行余额
blance of trade 贸易差额
keep balance of nature 保持生态平衡
The two trucks had wheels out of balance on delivery.
这两部卡车在交货时车轮失去了平衡。
The boy has a lot of disadvantages, but on balance I think he is still a good boy.
这个男孩有很多缺点，但全面考虑，我认为他仍然是好孩子。 联
想拓展

balanced adj. 合理的；收支平衡的；镇静的

balanced diet 均衡饮食
a balanced judgement 公平的判决
Page No.366
高手过招
单项填空
In education there should be a good among the branches of knowledge that contribute to effective thinking and wise judgment.(2009・12・江西玉山检测)
A.distribution B.balance
C.combination D.assignment
解析:选 B。balance 平衡；distribution 分发,分配,散布,分布；combination 结合,联合；assignment 分配，功课，任务，被指定的（课外）作业；（分派的）任务，委派。根据句意，选 B。
2. lie
vi. & n.说谎；谎话，谎言(lied，lied，lying)
vi.躺，卧；处于(某一位置)，在于……(lay，lain，lying)
常用结构:
tell a lie／tell lies to sb. 对某人说谎
a white lie 善意的谎言
lie to sb. 向某人说谎
lie in 在于；处于……状态
Page No.367
there lies ... 某地有……
lie on one s back/side/stomach 仰卧/侧卧/俯卧
It’s no wonder that she lied to the court.
难怪她对法庭撒了谎。
West of the lake lies the famous city.
那个著名的城市坐落在湖的西面。
You are lying but lies can not cover up facts.
你在说谎，但谎言掩盖不了事实。
I’d rather use my money than leave it lying in the bank.
我宁愿把钱花掉也不愿搁在银行里不用。联
想拓展
lay vt. 放；搁；下(蛋)；产(卵)(laid，laid，laying)
高手过招
单项填空
There was an oil painting in the corner. It there for several days. （原创）
A. laying; had laid B. lain; had laid
C. lying; had lain D. laid; had been lain
Page No.368
解析:选 C。第一空是“处于/在于……”的现在分词，第二空是其过去完成时。
3. amount
n. 数量
vi. 合计，总计达；相当于，等同于
常用结构:
amount to 总共达；相当于；等于
an amount of ... 大量的……
the amount of.....的数量
Planning without any real action amounts to nothing.

只计划不行动等于什么都不做。

The total cost of repairs amounted to $100.
修理费用总计达 100 美元。
联想拓展
表示数量的短语及用法：
a great deal of，a large／small／huge amount of+不可数名词(作主语时，谓语用单数形式)
large／vast amounts of+不可数名词(作主语，谓语用复数形式)
Page No.369
many，a good／great many，a number of，large numbers of，a few，dozens of，scores of+可数名词复数(作主语，谓语用复数形式)
plenty of, a lot of+可数名词复数(作主语，谓语用复数形式)；也可接不可数名词(作主语，谓语用单数形式）
a large quantity of+名词，large quantities of+名词（作主语，谓语与 quantity 一致）
I need a large amount of money to buy a new house.
我买新房需要一大笔钱。
高手过招
单项填空
Because of mail we receive，we may not be able to reply to your letter.Please remember to include your full name with your letter. (2009・12・江西师大附中检测)
A. a great many of B. a large number of
C. a large amount of D. a great plenty of
Page No.370
解析:选 C。mail 邮件，不可数名词。故用 a large amount of。
4. curiosity
n. 好奇心
Children have a natural curiosity about the world around them.
小孩子对他们周围的世界有着天生的好奇心。
I opened the packet just to satisfy my curiosity.
我打开包裹只是为了满足我的好奇心。
常用结构:
out of curiosity 出于好奇
with curiosity = curiously 好奇地
联想拓展
curious adj. 好奇的
curiously adv. 好奇地
be curious about sth. 对某事好奇
be curious to do sth. 好奇地做某事
高手过招
完成句子（原创）
Page No.371
①Margaret looked at him (好奇地).
②She decided to try a cigarette (出于好奇).
③All the employees in this firm (好奇) the personal life of the general manager.
④ (奇怪的是) enough, he had never seen the little girl.
(好奇心) drove Mary to open her husband’s letter though she knew it was wrong.
答案 ：①with curiosity②out of curiosity
③are curious about④Curiously⑤Curiosity
5. benefit

vt. 有利，有益

n. 好处；利益；优势

常用结构:

benefit from/by... 从……受益，得益于……

benefit sb. 对某人有益

be of (much, great)benefit to sb. =be beneficial to sb.

对某人有益处

be of no benefit to sb. 对某人没有益处

Page No.372

for the benefit of ... 为了……的利益

I have benefited a lot from extensive reading.

广泛的阅读使我受益匪浅。

It is said Yoga is of great benefit to human health.

据说瑜伽对人体健康有很大好处。

易混辨析

benefit/interest/profit/advantage

benefit 为普通用词，指通过正当手段从物质或精神方面得到的任何好处或利益。它的复数形式 benefits 意为“救济金”。

interest 作“利益”讲时，多用复数形式，既可指集团、群体的利益，又可指个人的利益。interest 作不可数名词时，意为“利息”。

profit 着重指收益，尤指从物质、钱财等方面获得的利润。

advantage 指因某方面占优势或利用某机会以及对方弱点而获得的利益与好处。

Page No.373

高手过招

单项填空

①We should spend the money on something that will everyone. (2009・12・福建福州检测)

A. benefitB. benefit from

C. beneficialD. benefit to

②Never forget we receive from our parents.

(2009・12・福建龙岩检测)

A. the benefit B. the benefits

C. beneficial D. to benefit

②Never forget we receive from our parents.

(2009・12・福建龙岩检测)

A. the benefit B. the benefits

C. Beneficial D. to benefit

解析: ①选 A。此处需要用动词作谓语，benefit 可作及物动词，意为“对……有益”。

②选 B。句意为：永远不要忘记我们从父母那儿得到的恩惠。benefit 意为“具体的好处”时是可数名词，可用复数形式。

Page No.374

6. combine

vt.&vi. (使)联合; （使）结合

常用结构:

combine into ... 联合成……

combine ...with ...把……与……结合起来

We consider it is necessary to combine theory with practice.

我们认为理论联系实际是必要的。

Hydrogen combines with oxygen to form water.

氢与氧化合生成水。
The pursuit of knowledge should be combined with wisdom.
知识的追求应与智慧相结合。
联想拓展
combination n.结合；联合；化合（物）
a combination of ...一种……的结合（物）
in combination with 与……联合起来
Page No.375
易混辨析
join/combine/unite/connect
join 侧重把原来不相连接的事物紧密地连接在一起，但仍可再分开。也指把分散的人或几个部分的人联合起来，或加入到某团体中去。常见结构：join up 联合起来；join ...to/and ...连接。
combine 指两个或两个以上的人或物结合在一起。常见结构：combine with 与……结合。
unite 指联合、结合在一起，构成一个整体。
connect 指两事物在某一点相连接，但彼此又保持独立。常见结构：connect ...to/with 与……相连；be connected with 与……有关系。
高手过招
单项填空
①The two parties have to form a new government. (2009・12・福建厦门检测)
A. Mixed B. combined C. joined D. formed
Page No.376
② Chinese traditional medicine with western medicine. (2009・12・江苏如东检测)
A. Link B. Connect
C. Combine D. Join
解析: ①选 B。句意为：那两个党派合并组成了一个新政府。combine 指原来性质或成分不同的东西合并成一体。
②选 C。句意为：把中药与西药结合起来。combine ...with ...把……与……结合起来。
7. limit
vt. 限制；限定
n. 界限；限度
联想拓展
limited adj. 有限的
limitless adj. 无限制的
The speed limit on this road is 70 mph.
这条道路的车速限制是每小时 70 英里。
We must try and limit our expenditure.
我们必须设法限制我们的开支。
Page No.377
常用结构：
limit sb./sth. to ...限制某人/某事到（某种程度）
put a limit on ... 对……限制
there is a limit to ...对……是有限的
without limit 无限地，无限制地
高手过招
用 limit 相关短语的适当形式填空
①One’s energy is .
② (没有止境) what you can do if you try.

③He must our weekly expenditure ten pounds.答案：①limited②There s no limit to

③limit; to

重点短语

8. get away with

被放过；（做坏事）不受惩罚

If you cheat in the exam, you'll never get away with it.

考试作弊必予追究。

I won't have you getting away with cheating in the exam.

我不能容忍你考试作弊而不受惩罚。

Page No.378

联想拓展

get across=put across (使)被理解；(把……)讲清楚

get rid of 摆脱；除掉

get away (from) (从)……脱离，逃脱……

get down to (doing)sth. 开始认真地做某事

get in 插话；收获

get in touch with 与……取得联系

get into the habit of... 染上……的习惯

get into trouble 陷入困境

get out (of ...) 出去，离开，逃脱，摆脱

get hold of 抓住

get on/along well with...与……相处得好；

进展顺利(多用进行时)

get over 爬过……；克服(困难)；从……中恢复过来

get through 完成；花光(时间、金钱等)；通过；接通电话

He's not very good at getting his ideas across.

他不太善于清楚地表达自己的思想。

We should get rid of the bad style and keep the good.

我们应该摒弃不良作风，保持优良作风。

Page No.379

高手过招

(1)单项填空

—You re coughing badly, Martin. Why not give up smoking?

—Give up smoking? Easier said than done, Amy. Once

you the habit of smoking, it is very hard for you to

. (2009・12・江苏启东检测)

A. keep up; break it away

B. take up; drop it out

C. pick up; get rid of it

D. build up; do away with it

(2)完成句子（原创）

①To my surprise, the baby wolf (与……相处得不错) the dogs and then managed to survive.

②She never arrives on time at the office, but she somehow managed to (侥幸逃脱) it.

③Well, stop chatting. It's time we (开始，着手) some serious work.

Page No.380

④The news was a terrible blow to her, but she will

(从……恢复过来) the shock soon.

解析: (1)选 C。考查动词短语辨析。keep up 保持,继续,维持；break away 脱开；离开；逃脱；take up 拿起；开始；从事；吸取；接纳；drop out 退出,退学；pick up 捡起,拾起；get rid of 摆脱；除掉；build up 逐步建立；do away with 废除,去掉。

(2)①got on well with②get away with

③got down to④get over

9. take off

从……中去掉；脱掉（衣服）；起飞；突然大受欢迎，迅速流行

Her singing career took off after her TV appearance.

她在电视上亮相后歌唱事业迅速发展。

Don t take off your sweater. It s cold here.

别脱掉毛衣，这儿冷。

联想拓展

take away 拿走，消除(感情，痛苦等）

take after（相貌、体格、性情等）像（父、母等）

take back 收回

Page No.381

take down 拿下；记下；拆除

take in 欺骗；吸收；理解

take it easy 不紧张，不急

take on 呈现，具有(特征、外观等)；雇用

take out 拿出，取出；去掉

take over 接收，接管

take up 拿起；开始（从事）；继续；占据（时/空间）

take apart 拆开（机器等）

take for 认为，以为；误以为

Take away my good name, take away my life.

(谚)美名失去，生命不存。

Don t be taken in by his charm-he is ruthless.

不要被他迷人的风度所蒙蔽，其实他冷酷无情。

高手过招

用适当的介词或副词填空（原创）

①I want to take the book which you showed me yesterday.

②It’s sad to see the old museum being taken to make way for a new shopping center.

Page No.382

③She took the narrative(叙事,故事)where John had left off.

④My daughter does not take me in any way.

⑤When she fell ill her daughter took the business from her.

答案：①away②down③up④after⑤over

10. in debt

欠债；欠人情

She was in debt when she was poor, but has been out of debt since she got rich.

以前穷的时候她欠了债，可自从富了以后就不欠债了。

联想拓展

out of debt 不欠债

in trouble 处在困境中

in charge 管理；负责

in detail 详细地

in fact 事实上

Page No.383
in love 相爱
in need 需要
in surprise 惊奇地
in touch 保持联系
in danger 处在危险之中
in common 共有；共同
in general 通常；一般地说
in line 站队
in mind 意欲；心想
in order 有秩序地in
tears 在哭泣
in public 公开地；当众
高手过招
单项填空
I’ll always be to you for your help. (2009・12・江苏扬州检测)
in debt B. debt C. running into debt D. debts
解析:选 A。句意为：由于你的帮助，我总是欠你的。
Page No.384
11. before long
不久以后
The dictionary will be published before long.
不久以后这本词典将被出版。
联想拓展
long before 很久以前
long ago 很久以前
高手过招
完成句子
①That happened (很久以前).
②I have seen that film (很久以前).
③His plan seemed to be too difficult, but (不久以后) it proved to be practicable.
答案：①long ago②long before③before long
12. cut down
削减；删节；砍伐
Page No.385
cut off 剪下来；切断；使突然中断cut
out 切去；省略；停止（做某事） cut
up=cut into pieces 切碎；剪碎
cut through 穿过；穿透
cut in 插入；插嘴；超车抢道
高手过招
用 cut 相关短语的适当形式填空
①Her little finger was in an accident at the factory.
②She the advertisement of the newspaper.
③He the park and reached there in time.
④I haven’t given up drinking but I’m .
⑤I’m sorry to on your conversation.

⑥You nearly caused a crash by (on me) like that.

答案:①cut off②cut; out③cut through
④cutting down⑤cut in⑥cutting in
重点句型
13. “Nothing could be better, ” he thought.
他想：“再没有比这些更好吃的了。”
Page No.386
句中形容词（或副词）的比较级 better 与否定词 nothing 连用，表达最高级的含义。常用的否定词有 no, not, never, nothing, nobody, hardly 等，表示最高级的含义。
—Did you sleep well last night? 你昨夜睡得好吗？
—Never better, like a rock. 从没这么好过，睡得很沉。
I think nothing is more pleasant than travelling.
我想没有比旅行更令人愉快的事了。
I can’t think of a better idea.我想不出一个更好的方法。
高手过招
单项填空
Your story is perfect. I’ve never heard before.
(2009・12・江苏南京检测)
A. the better one B. the best one
C. a better one D. a good one
解析:选 C。比较级与 nothing, nobody, never 等否定词连用时，实际上表示最高级的意义，意为“再……也不过了；没有比……更……的了”。句中的比较对象是一个尚未出现的新人或新事物，故用不定冠词 a/an 修饰。
Page No.387
14. Something terrible must have happened if Li Chang was not coming to eat in his restaurant as he always did.
要是李昌不像往常那样到他店里吃饭，那问题一定严重了。
情态动词+have done
①情态动词 must +have done 只用于肯定句中，表示对过去发生的事情或状态进行肯定的推测，意为“过去一定做过某事”。
②情态动词 can/could 可用于否定句中，即 can’t have done /couldn’t have done，表示对过去发生的事情或状态的肯定的推测，意为“过去不可能做过，肯定没做过某事”。
③此外，can/could have done 还可用于疑问句中表示对过去发生的事情或状态的不太有把握的推测，意为“过去可能做过……吗?”
注意：表推测的情态动词只有 can/could，常用于疑问句中。
④情态动词 may/might +have done 表示对已发生的动作或存在的状态进行不肯定的推测，might 语气稍弱一点儿，只能用于肯定句和否定句中，意为“过去可能做过某事或过去可能没做过某事”。
Page No.388
It must have rained last night, for the road is wet.
昨天晚上一定是下雨了，因为路还湿着。
You must have seen the film the Gold Rush.
你肯定看过电影《淘金热》。
My sister met him at the theatre last night, so he couldn’t have attended your lecture.
我姐姐昨天晚上在电影院遇见了他，所以他肯定没参加你的演讲。
I can’t find Tom anywhere in the office building. Where can he have gone?
我在办公楼的任何地方都找不到汤姆。他有可能去哪里了呢？
You might have read about it in the papers.
你可能在报上已经看过这个消息了。
高手过招

用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空（原创）

①—Where Margaret (can; put) the empty bottles?

—She (can; throw) them away. They must be somewhere.

Page No.389

②—Hurry up, Michael! It’s ten to three.

—Goodness me! The class (must; begin).

I’ll be late again.

答案:①can; have put; can t have thrown

②must have begun

15. He could not have Yong Hui getting away with telling people lies! 他可不能让永慧哄骗人们后跑掉。

have sb./sth. doing sth.让某人/某事一直做某事，表示一个持续的动作。用于否定句中表示不允许某人做某事。

He had me waiting for him for two hours. I can’t bear it any more!

他让我等了两个小时，我再也无法忍受了！

It’s rude of you to speak to father like that and I won’t have you speaking to father like that in future.

你那样跟父亲说话很粗鲁，今后我不会再容忍你那样跟父亲说话了。

Page No.390

Won’t have sb./sth. doing sth.不能容忍某人做某事/容忍某物

have sb./sth. do sth. 使某人或某物做某事(注意不要在 do 之前加上 to)

have sb./sth. done sth. 请别人做某事(自己不去做或无法做); (主语)遭受了不好的事情

I’d have you know that I am ill.我要让你知道我病了。

Jack must have his motorbike repaired.

杰克必须把他的摩托车修理一下。

高手过招

用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空（原创）

①To my despair, the doctor me (have; wait) in the room for the whole afternoon.

②I my watch (have; repair) because it didn’t work.

③I can’ t him (have; make) noise all the time.

④Yesterday Mum Tim (have; tidy) his room since it was in a mess.

⑤The woman her handbag (have; rob) yesterday.

答案:①had; waiting②had; repaired

③have;making④had; tidy⑤had; robbed

Page No.391

16. I thought you were a new customer and now I know that you only came to spy on me and my menu, ...

我本来以为你是一位新顾客，现在我才发现你只是过来打探我和我的菜谱的……

I thought/I didn’t know/I didn’t think 表明说话人以前的想法，宾语从句随之用过去时或过去将来时。

I never thought you would come to see me and bring me such a wonderful gift.

我根本没想到你会来看我并给我带来如此好的礼物。

高手过招

单项填空

Oh, it’ s you. I you in this city. How long have you been here?

(2009·12·河北邯郸检测)

A. don’t know; were B. hadn’t known; are

C. haven’t known; are D. didn’t know; were

解析:选 D。句意为：我不知道你在这座城市。你在这座城市待了多久？I thought/I didn’t know/I didn’t think 表明说话人以前的想法，宾语从句随之用过去时或过去将来时。

Page No.392

Unit 3 The Million Pound Bank Note

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

核心单词

1. scene

n. 现场;情景;景色;发生地点;（戏剧）一场

Our reporter was the first person on the scene.

我们的记者是最先到达出事地点的。

I saw the scene with my own eyes.我亲眼目睹了那一幕。

The rocking boats along the river bank make a beautiful scene.

河边晃晃悠悠的船只构成了一道美丽的风景。

易混辨析

scene/scenery/sight/view

scene 指某一处的自然风光；情形，情景。

scenery（总称）自然景物，天然风光，是由多个 scenes 构成的自然风景。

Page No.394

sight 景象，风景，名胜，侧重指值得看的事物或很难看的东西；很可笑的事物。

view 景色，风景，侧重指从人所处的角度用肉眼所看到的景色。

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

Seeing the happy of the children playing in the park, I'm full of joy and confidence in the future of our country.

(2009・12・山东莱州检测)

A. Sight B. view C. look D. scene

(2)选词填空(scene/sight/view/scenery)（原创）

①Guilin is famous for its beautiful .

②The is a perfect dream when you see the sun rising slowly in the east.

③You can get a wonderful at the top of the tower.

④The flowers are a lovely in spring.

⑤He began to lose his six years ago.

解析: (1)选 D。句意为：看到孩子们在公园里玩耍的幸福一幕，我对我们国家的未来充满了自信和喜悦。

scene 表示包括人及其活

Page No.395

动的“景色”。

(2) ①scenery②scene③view④sight⑤sight

2. permit

vt.＆vi.许可；允许；准许

n. 通行证；许可证；执照

His health doesn't permit his travelling with us.

他的健康状况不允许他同我们一起旅行。

Weather permitting, we will go fishing.

天气允许的话，我们会去钓鱼。

The facts permit of no other explanation.

这些事实不容许有其他解释。

The nurse allowed him to remain there though it wasn't permitted.虽然规定不允许，但护士让他留在那里。

常用结构:

permit sb./sth. 允许某人/某事

permit sb. to do sth.= allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事

permit doing sth.=allow doing sth. 允许做某事

permit of ...容许……

We don’t permit pets in the classroom.
我们不允许教室里有宠物。
The teacher doesn’t permit us to touch anything in the lab.
老师不允许我们碰实验室里的任何东西。
We don’t permit smoking in the office.
办公室里不准吸烟。
易混辨析
let/permit/allow
let 表示“允许，让”，常用于口语中，一般不用于被动语态。后面常接不带 to 的不定式作宾补。
permit 和 allow 意思相近，都表示“允许，准许”。permit 稍正式一些，多指上级对下级或长辈对晚辈的准许,语气较强；allow 多指听任或不管教某人做某事。
高手过招
(1) 单项填空
—Would you permit me here?
—Sorry. We don’t permit in the library.
(2009・12・山东青岛检测)
Page No.397
A. smoking; smoking B. to smoke; to smoke
C. smoking; to smoke D. to smoke; smoking
(2) 用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空 （原创）
①Students are not (allow/permit)to enter the Net Bar.
②My mother wouldn’t let me (go) to the film.
③We don’ t allow (smoke) in our office.
④Weather (permit), we’ll go outing this weekend.
解析: (1)选 D。第一个空考查 permit sb. to do 的用法；第二个空考查 permit doing 的用法。
(2)①allowed/permitted②go③smoking④permitting
3. spot
vt. 发现；认出
n. 污点；斑点；地点
She was wearing a white skirt with red spots.
她穿着一件白底红点儿的裙子。
This is the very spot where he was murdered.
他就是在这儿遭到谋杀的。
Page No.398
常用结构:
spot sb. doing sth. 看到某人正在做某事
on the spot = on the scene 到（在）现场；当场
on the spot 当场；立即
spotless adj.没有斑点的;极其干净的
spotted adj. 有斑点的
be spotted with 被……点缀
She spotted her friend in the crowd.
她在人群中认出了她的朋友。
高手过招
(1) 单项填空
He was hit by a falling stone and got killed .
(2009・12・安徽巢湖检测)

A. on a spot　　B. in a spot

C. on the spot D. under the spot

(2)完成句子（原创）

①The police (发现) him driving a stolen car.

Page No.399

②The police were (到现场) within a few minutes of my telephone call.

③He keeps his house (极其干净的).

解析: (1)选 C。句意为：他被飞石击中，当场死亡。on the spot 当场。

(2)①spotted②on the spot③spotless

4. account

vt. 认为，把……视为

vi. 解释；说明；对……负责

n. ［U］根据，理由；［C］解释，说明；［C］描述，报道；［C］帐目

In English law a person is accounted innocent until they are proved guilty.

按照英国法律，一个人未经证实有罪之前视为无罪。

He was accounted a first-rate actor.

他被认为是一名一流的演员。He

got angry on this account.

由于这个缘故他生气了。

John gave us a detailed account of his plan.

关于他的计划约翰给我们做了详尽的说明。

Page No.400

The policeman gave an account of the traffic accident.

警察叙述了交通事故的经过。

常用结构:

account for 对……做出解释；(在数学、比例上)占；导致

by all accounts 大家都说on

account of 由于；因为

on no account 绝不可以

take account of=take ...into account 考虑到……

He could not account for his absence from school.

他无法说清楚为什么旷课。

注意：on no account 为否定意义的短语，当它位于句首时，句子使用部分倒装。

高手过招

(1)单项填空

① should any money be given to a small child.

(2009・12・安徽淮北检测)

A. On no account B. From all accounts

C. Of no account D. By all accounts

Page No.401

②We must every penny we spend during a business trip.

A. account for B. take on

C. make up D. turn out

(2)完成句子（原创）

①This is (一则激动人心的报道) of the match.

②The (帐目) show we have spent more than we received.

③Please (解释) the failure in the sports meeting.

解析: (1)①选 A。on no account 绝不可以；from all accounts 和 by all accounts 均意为“根据各种说法”；of no

account 不重要，通常作表语或定语。

②选 A。account for sth.意为“（对自己所掌管的钱等）作令人满意的交代”。

(2)①an exciting account ②accounts③account for

5. seek

vt.&vi. (sought, sought) 寻找；探索；寻求

You must seek permission from the manager.

你必须请求经理批准。

Page No.402

The explanation is not far to seek.

这种解释不难理解。

常用结构:

seek (for/after) sth./sb. 寻找某人/某物

seek to do sth. 试图做某事

seek happiness/comfort/wealth/success

追求幸福/安慰/财富/成功

seek sth. from sb. 向某人寻求某物

seek one’s fortune 闯世界；寻找发迹的机会

They are seeking to mislead us. 他们竭力误导我们。

高手过招

用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空（原创）

①I think it’s time we (seek) legal advice.

②They are seeking (change) the rules.

答案①sought②to change

重点短语

6. bring up

培养；抚养；养育或教育某人；提出；呕吐某物

Page No.403

She brought up five children.

她养育了五个孩子。

Her parents died when she was a baby and she was brought up by her aunt.

她出生后不久就父母双亡, 是由姑母抚养大的。

常用结构:

bring sb. up to be/as 培养某人成为……

bring sb. up to do sth. 培养某人做……

联想拓展

bring forward 提出（问题、建议、计划等）

bring down 降低；压倒

bring about 使发生

bring to light 发现bring

in 引入

bring out 推出，使显出

bring on 引起，带来

Page No.404

高手过招

完成句子（原创）

①He was (从小就受到要尊敬老师的教育) the teachers.

②He (提出) a good suggestion at the meeting.

③She was so sick that she (吐出) all that she had had.

答案：①brought up to respect②brought up/put forward

③brought up

7. go ahead

执行;进行，前进;（用于祈使句）可以;往下说;用吧;开始吧

Despite the bad weather, the journey will go ahead.

尽管天气不好，旅行将照常进行。

The building of the new bridge will go ahead as planned.

新桥的修建将按计划进行。

联想拓展

ahead of 在之前；领先于；胜过

ahead of time/in advance 提 前go

against 违背；反对；不利于

go around/round/about （疾病）传播

Page No.405

go after 追求

go by 过去go

in for 爱好

go out（火、灯等）熄灭；外出

go over 复习；检查

go through 遭受；经历；通过

go up 上升；增长

go without 没有……也行；将就

go wrong 出毛病

高手过招

完成句子（原创）

①After a pause, he (往下说) with his speech.

②The new bridge was completed (提前).

③ (径直向前走) for 200 meters and then turn left.

④—Could I use your bike?

— (用吧).

答案：①went ahead②ahead of time

③Go straight ahead④Go ahead

Page No.406

8. by accident = by chance

偶然；无意中;不小心

Last time I ran across her in the street by accident.

上次我偶然在街上碰见她了。

I only found it by accident.

我只是碰巧找到的。

联想拓展

y contrast 对比之下

by mistake 错误地by

hand 用手;用体力by

machine 用机器高手

过招

用“by+n.”构成的短语填空（原创）

①I was in such a hurry that I took someone else’s umbrella .

②These toys are made instead of , so they are very expensive.

③She had found the file .

Page No.407

答案：①by accident/chance/mistake

②by hand; by machine③by accident

9. to be honest=honestly speaking

说实话

To be honest, I am not satisfied with what you did.

说实话，我对你做的事不满意。

To be honest, I know nothing about him except that he is from America.

老实说，我只知道他是一位美国人。

联想拓展

to be frank=frankly speaking 坦率地说

to be exact=exactly speaking 确切地说

to tell you the truth 实话告诉你

to make things worse 更糟的是

To tell you the truth，I don t think you are right.

实话告诉你，我认为你不对。

To be exact，every minute more than 130 million gallons of water plunge to the bottom of the gorge over 320 feet down.

Page No.408

准确地说，每分钟就有超过 1.3 亿加仑的水流倾泻到 320 多英尺之下的峡谷深处。 这种不定式短语是坦白陈述时所用的套语，表明说话人的观点或态度，在句子中作插入语，没有任何形式上的变化，即:不受句子 其他成分(特别是主语)的影响。

高手过招

单项填空

I wouldn ’ t buy that house; , it ’ s too close to the main road.

(2009・12・福建泉州检测)

A. being honest B. honest

C. to be honest D. having been honest

解析:选 C。考查动词不定式作插入语的用法。to be honest 作插入语时，没有其他形式的变化，只能用动词不定式形式。

10. on the contrary

与此相反；正相反(只作状语)

It doesn’t seem ugly to me; on the contrary, I think it’s rather beautiful.

我觉得它并不丑, 恰恰相反,我认为它相当漂亮。

Page No.409

It wasn’t a good thing; on the contrary, it was a huge mistake.这并不是一件好事，相反，这是个巨大的错误。

联想拓展

(be) contrary to 违反（某事物）；与……相反

Contrary to popular belief, many cats dislike milk.

与普遍看法相反，许多猫并不喜欢牛奶。

高手过招

用 contrary 相关短语的适当形式填空（原创）

①The car isn’t expensive. , it’s quite cheap.

②The results were expectation.

答案：①On the contrary②contrary to

11. as for

至于，关于

As for you, you ought to be ashamed of yourself.

至于你, 你应该感到惭愧。

联想拓展

as to 至于，关于；提到；就……而论(至于，说到)

Page No.410

高手过招

完成句子（原创）

①He was uncertain (至于) which road to take.

②Would you be so kind (至于) help me to move the stone?

my past, I’m not telling you anything.

答案：①as to②as to③As for

12. take a chance=take chances

冒险，碰运气

He took a chance when he made the investment.

当时他投资时是冒了很大风险的。

联想拓展

have a good chance/no chance/not much chance of (doing) sth./to do sth./that ...大有希望/没有可能/没什么希望做某事

by chance=by accident 偶然地；意外地

give sb. a chance 给某人一个机会

the chances are (that) ...

=it is likely that ...很可能……

Page No.411

高手过招

翻译句子

①很可能她要来。

②我遇到她完全是偶然的。

答案：①The chances are that/It s likely that she ll be coming.

②I met her by chance.

重点句型

13. Well, towards nightfall I found myself carried out to sea by a strong wind.

快到黄昏的时候，我发现自己被一阵大风刮到了海上。

find+sb./sth.+宾语补足语=find(+that)+sb./sth.+谓语动词

联想拓展

find+it+adj./n./adv./prep. 觉得做某事是……

find +sb./ sth. doing 发现……在做……(主动)

find sb./ sth. done 发现……被做……(被动或表示状态)

Page No.412

find oneself in/at... 发觉自己在某处/处于……

find sb./sth.+adj.+to do 觉得……(to do 用主动形式表被动意义)

I found that the boy was hiding behind the door.

=I found the boy hiding behind the door.

我发现那个男孩子藏在门后。

When day broke, we found ourselves in a small village at the foot of the mountain.

破晓时，我们发现自己在山脚下的一个小村子里。

She got home, only to find the door locked/closed.

她回到家，却发现门锁上了。

Marx found idioms hard to learn.

=Marx found it hard to learn idioms.

马克思觉得习惯用语很难学。

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①The film star (发觉自己被围住) a group of fans immediately he got off the car.

Page No.413

②He found a wallet (躺) on the ground.

③A cook will be immediately fired if he is found (在吸烟) in the kitchen.

④I found it impossible (劝服；说服) him to give up smoking.

⑤I (觉得难以想象) the life in the future.

⑥I (发现灯亮着) all through the night.

答案：①found himself surrounded by②lying

③smoking④to persuade

⑤find it hard to imagine⑥found the lights on

14. The next morning I'd just about given myself up for lost when I was spotted by a ship.

第二天早上，我正感到绝望的时候，一艘船发现了我。

句中的 when 表示“这时，就在这个(那个)时候(=and then；and just then；and at that time)”，当 when 作此意讲时，通常和正在发生的或即将发生的动作连用，构成：be doing ...when .../be about to do ...when ...的句型。其中 when 引导的从句要用一般过去时。

Page No.414

I was wandering through the streets when I caught sight of a tailor's shop.

我正在街上闲逛，(这时)忽然看见了一家服装店。

We were having a meeting when someone broke in.

我们在开会的时候，有人突然闯入。

We were about to set off on our way when it suddenly began to rain. 我们快要动身离开的时候，天突然下起了雨。

高手过招

单项填空

Jasmine was holidaying with her family in a wildlife park she was bitten on the leg by a lion.

(2009・12・河南开封检测)

When B. while C. since D. before

解析:选 A。when 在本句中为连词，相当于 and just then, and just at that time, 意为“就在那时”。引导一个忽然出现的动作。

句意为：Jasmine 正在和她的家人在野生动物园度假时，她被狮子咬伤了腿。

Page No.415

Unit 4

Astronomy：the science of the stars

Page No.416

1. spread

vt.&vi. 展开,铺开;散布;扩大;延伸

The bird spread its wings. 那只鸟展开了翅膀。

Flies spread disease. 苍蝇传播疾病。

常用结构:

spread sth. with sth. 用……抹/涂/铺……

spread ...on ...把……抹/涂/铺在……

be spread for 摆好（桌子）准备

spread oneself\[口\]舒展四肢(躺下)
spread out 张开，伸开，铺开，展开，伸长
Page No.417
高手过招
单项填空
Paper making began in China and to Europe.
(2009・12・河南郑州检测)
A. Spread B. grew
C. Carried D. developed
解析:选 A。句意为：造纸术起源于中国，又传播到了欧洲。spread 传播。
2. method
n. 方法
He has introduced a new method of teaching.
他引进了一种新的教学方法。
What is the most effective method of birth control?
控制出生率的最有效的方法是什么？
联想拓展
by this means=in this way=with this method
用这种方法
Page No.418
易混辨析
method/means
method 侧重“理论方法”，指做某事的具体步骤或程序。
a new teaching method 一种新的教学方法
means（单复数同形）侧重“通过手段”或“利用工具”去达到某种目的。
高手过招
选词填空(method/means)（原创）
①The quickest of travel is by plane.
②She has a very scientific of dealing with political problems.
答案：①means②method
3. harmful
adj. 有害的
常用结构:
do sb. harm/do harm to sb. 对某人有害
mean no harm 无意伤害别人;没有恶意
harm one’s image/reputation 损害某人的形象/名声
Page No.419
do more harm than good 弊大于利
There is no harm in (sb. s) doing sth.
=It does no harm (for sb.) to do sth. (某人) 做某事无害处
be harmful to 对……有害
harm n.&v. 损害，伤害
Smoking is harmful to your health. 吸烟有害健康。
高手过招
单项填空
He is a nice dog. He won’t do you any .（原创）
ill B. bite C. hurt D. harm

解析:选 D。考查固定搭配。do sb. harm/do harm to sb. 表示

“对某人有害”。句意为：这是一条温顺的狗，它不会伤害你。 故选
D。
4. mass
n. 质量；团；块；大量；(前加 the) 群众
Aliter of gas has less mass than a liter of water.
1 公升气体的质量少于 1 公升水的质量。
Page No.420
She has a mass of things to do.
她有一大堆的事情要做。
The masses have boundless creative power.
人民群众有无限的创造力。
常用结构:
be a mass of 遍体是……; 充满了……
in mass 全部, 全体; 整个地
in the mass 总体上;总的说来
the (great) mass of 大多数, 大部分
masses of sth.大量的东西
高手过招
单项填空
The young dancers looked so charming in their beautiful clothes that we took pictures of them.
(2009・12・安徽合肥检测)
A. many of B. masses of
C. the number of D. a large amount of
Page No.421
解析:选 B。句意为：年轻的舞蹈家们穿着美丽的衣服看起来很迷人，因此我们给他们拍了许多照片。masses of=lots of，后跟复数名词。
5. pull
v. 拉，拖，拔；移动
n.拉，拖；牵(引)力
You push and I ll pull.
你来推，我来拉。
I felt a pull at my sleeve and turned round.
我觉得有人扯我的袖子，便转过身来。
常用结构:
pull ahead (of sb./sth.) 领先于（某人/物）
pull (sb.) back（使某人）退却；撤回（某人）
pull off (sth.)（指机动车辆）驶离（道路至路侧停车处停下）pull out (sth.) 拉掉；使分离；掏出；驶离（车站）
pull on 穿，戴上（袜子、手套等）
pull together 同心协力；通力合作
Page No.422
高手过招
用 pull 相关短语的适当形式填空（原创）
①I arrived as the last train was .
②He a gun and aimed at the criminal.
③So long as we , there’s no mountain top we can’t conquer.
答案：①pulling out②pulled out③pull together

6. cheer

vt. & vi. (使)高兴、振奋；(对)欢呼
The crowd cheered loudly as the Queen appeared.
女王出现时群众高声欢呼。
He was greatly cheered by the news.
他听到这个消息非常高兴。
常用结构:
cheer sb. on 为某人加油
cheer (sb.) up（使某人）更高兴；（使）振奋起来
Page No.423
联想拓展
cheerful adj.高兴的
cheerless adj.不高兴的；阴冷的高手过招用
cheer 相关短语的适当形式填空（原创）
①Your visit has greatly him up.
②The crowd the runners as they started the last lap.
③You look as though you need up.
答案：①cheered②cheered; on③cheering
7. puzzle
vt.&vi.（使）迷惑；（使）苦思
n.迷；难题
puzzled adj. 无法了解的；困惑的
puzzling adj. 令人费解的
Her reply puzzled me.
她的回答把我弄糊涂了。
Their reason for doing it is still a puzzle to me.
他们为什么要那样做此事我仍感到莫名其妙。
Page No.424
常用结构：
sb. be puzzled by sth.某人对……感到迷惑
puzzle about/over sth.对某事感到迷惑
puzzle one’s brain 冥思苦想；绞尽脑汁
solve a puzzle 解决一个难题
高手过招
用 puzzle 的适当形式填空
①To explain the findings, he offers two theories.
②I that I haven’t heard from Liz for so long.
③She listened with a expression on her face.
④No one has yet succeeded in explaining the of how life began.
答案：①puzzling②am puzzled③puzzled④puzzle
8. exist
vi. 存在，生存
existence n. 存在
Does life exist on Mars?
火星上有生命吗？
Page No.425
I can hardly exist on the wage I’m getting.
我靠自己挣的工资简直难以糊口。

常用结构：

exist+prep. 存在于某地方
exist on sth. 靠某物生存
高手过招
用 exist 相关短语的适当形式填空
①This plant only Australia.
②Can you such a low salary?
③I doubt the of alien.
答案：①exists; in②exist on③existence
重点短语
9. in time 意为“及时”时相当于 early enough, soon enough;意为“终于，早晚”时相当于 sooner or later。
We got to the station just in time to catch the bus.
=We got to the station just in time for the bus.
我们到达车站时，刚好赶上了那班汽车。
Page No.426
The doctor came in time to save her life.
医生及时赶来救了她的命。
You ll succeed in time if you keep on working hard.
假若坚持努力下去，你迟早会成功的。
联想拓展
be in time for sth./be in time to do sth.
对于某事是及时的/及时做某事
ahead of time 提前；提早
all the time 一直；始终
at one time 曾经；一度
at a time 一次
at times 有时
at the same time 同时；然而；可是
from time to time 不时；偶尔
in no time 立刻；马上
take one s time 不急，慢慢来
time and time again 一次又一次；一再
Page No.427
高手过招
单项填空
—I was disappointed in time when I didn’t pass the examinations.
—Don’t be so discouraged. You’ll be successful in time. (2009・12・河南平顶山检测)
A./; / B. a; a C./; a D. a; /
解析:选 D。句意为：——我没通过考试那段时间我很失望。——别灰心。你迟早会成功的。第一个空考查的是 when 引导的定语从句，表示在某段时间里，故应用 in a time。而第二个空表示“迟早”，故用 in time。
10. prevent ...from
阻止；制止
The heavy rain prevented us from going there.
这场大雨使我们没能到那里去。
易混辨析
prevent/stop/keep/protect
prevent, stop, keep 与 protect 四者的常见结构为：

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

prevent ...(from) doing sth.；stop ...(from) doing sth.；keep ...from doing sth.；均表示“阻止……做某事”。上述三个结构中，在主动语态中 stop 与 prevent 后可省去 from，但在被动语态中不可省略; 而 keep ...from ...中的 from 在任何情况下都不能省略。另外，

protect ...from ...表示“保护……不受……侵袭；阻挡；防御”。from 后接能带来伤害或损害的事物。

This plan will be kept from being carried out.

这个计划将被阻止实施。

高手过招

单项填空

Some policemen should be sent to　　them　　the trees.

（原创）

A. prevent; to cut down　　B. stop; cutting down

C. keep; to cut down　　D. keep; cutting down

解析:选 B。句意为：应该派一些警察去阻止他们砍伐树木。keep/prevent/stop ... from doing sth.阻止……做某事,其中 keep ...from doing sth. 中的 from 不可省略。故选 B。

Page No.429

11. break out

突发；爆发（无被动语态）

Trouble may break out at any moment.

灾难在任何时候都可能突然发生。

When did the war break out? 战争什么时候爆发的？

It was at midnight that a fire broke out.

在午夜时分发生了一起大火。

联想拓展

break away from 脱离（政党等）；打破（陈规等）

break down　出故障；（计划等）失败；（身体、精神等）垮掉

break in　破门而入，闯入；打断（话语）等

break into 破门而入；突然……起来

break off　折断；突然中止；断绝；结束

break through 突破

break up 敲碎；放假；散会

易混辨析

come about/happen/take place/break out/occur

Page No.430

come about 发生，相当于 happen, take place。后面不可以接宾语，也不可以使用被动语态。

happen 强调偶然发生。

take place 指按计划、安排发生；举行

break out 多用于指战争、火灾、疾病、疫情的突然爆发。

occur 常用于句式： sth. occurs to sb. 某事发生在某人身上。高手过招

用 break 相关短语的适当形式填空　　（原创）

①A terrible tsunami　　in the southeastern countries of Asia at Christmas, 2004.

②When do you　　for Christmas?

③Negotiations between the two sides have　　.

④His house was　　last week.

答案：①broke out②break up③broken down④broken into

12. block out

挡住（光线）

That wall blocks out all the light.那堵墙把光线都遮住了。

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

联想拓展

burst out 大声喊叫;突然……起来

go out 外出；过时；熄(灯)

put out 关(灯)；扑灭；生产

come out 出现，显露；出版;结果是

help out 帮助解决难题(或摆脱困境)

look out 留神；注意

watch out 注意；提防；向外看

find out 找出，查明，发现pick

out 挑出;辨认出，分辨出speak

out 大声地说;大胆地说

think out 仔细思考(某事)；想出（主意等）

hang out 挂出;闲逛

knock out (拳)击中，击倒，打昏

sell out 售完(某种货物)，脱销

turn out 结果证明是

run out (of) 用完，耗尽

check out 结账离去，办妥手续离去

give out 分发（试卷等)；发出（光、热等)；用尽；耗完；筋疲力尽

Page No.432

高手过招

用 out 相关短语的适当形式填空（原创）

①At the end of the race his legs and he collapsed on the ground.

②It’ s easy to him in a crowd because he is very tall.

③His new book will next month.

④We thought it was going to rain; it to be a fine day.

⑤We of/from our hotel at 5 a.m. to catch a 7 a.m. flight.

答案：①gave out②pick; out③come out

④turned out⑤checked out

13. What it was to become was uncertain until between 4.5 and 3.8 billion years ago when the dust settled into a solid globe.

随后它会变成什么没人能知道，直到 38~45 亿年前，这团尘埃才慢慢地形成一个固体的球状物。

What it was to become ...是 what 引导的主语从句，what 在从句中作 become 的宾语。

Page No.433

What surprised everybody was that he didn’t come to the meeting.

使大家惊奇的是他竟没有参加会议。

What he did added to our difficulty.

他所做的增加了我们的困难。

“be+动词不定式”在本句中表示按照计划、安排将要发生的动作。

When are they to hand in their plan?

他们的计划什么时候交上来？

You are to do your homework before you watch TV.

你得做完了作业才能看电视。

联想拓展

“be+to”还可以表示以下含义：

表示可能性，相当于 can,主要用于疑问句和否定句。表示命令，意为“必须，不得不”，意思等同于 must, have to，表示假设。表示“命运注定……”，通常用于过去时。

How am I to know what has become of him?

我怎么知道他的遭遇如何呢？

Page No.434

Certain skills must be learned if one is to use English well.

如果想要用好英语，某些技巧是必须学的。

He was never to see his wife again.

他注定再也见不到他妻子了。

Were we to offer you more money, would you stay?

如果我们给你加钱，你愿意留下吗？

高手过招

单项填空

In dry weather the flowers will have to be watered if they . （原创）

A. have survived B. are to survive

C. would survive D. will survive

解析:选 B。考查真实条件句。are to survive 在此处并不表示将来，而表示“期望”。

14. But when I tried to step forward, I found I was carried twice as far as on the earth and fell over.

而当我试着向前迈步的时候，我发觉我被送出去很远，步子的跨度竟是地球上的两倍，因而我摔倒了。

Page No.435

twice as ...as ... 是……的两倍

联想拓展

英语中的倍数表达法：

倍数+as +adj./adv.+as 是……的几倍

倍数+adj./adv.的比较级+ than 比……(多/大)几倍

倍数+ the +表示长度/高度/宽度等的名词+ of 是……长度/高度/宽度的几倍，此结构中常用的名词有：size, height, weight, length, width, depth 等。

This ruler is three times as long as that one.

=This ruler is twice longer than that one.

=This ruler is three times the length of that one.

这把尺子是那把的三倍长。

There are four times as many students as we expected.

到的学生是我们预计的五倍。

Page No.436

高手过招

(1) 翻译句子 （原创）

这个房子是那个的三倍大。

(2) 完成句子

到的客人是我们预计的两倍。

There are we expected .

答案：(1)This house is three times as big as that one./This house is twice bigger than that one./This house is three times the size of that one.

(2)twice as many guests as

Page No.437

Unit 5

Canada-“The True North ”

Page No.438

1. surround

vt.&vi. 包围，围绕

常用结构：

surround ...with ... 使……包围
be surrounded by/with 被……包围
The city is surrounded on all sides by hills.
这个城市被群山环绕。
联想拓展
surrounding adj. 附近的;周围的
surroundings n. 环境;周围的事物
Page No.439
易混辨析
surroundings/condition/environment
surroundings 意为“环境”时，要用复数形式，主要指周围的物质环境。
condition 的复数形式 conditions 可表示“环境，情况”，但主要表示抽象意义上的。
environment 意为“环境”时，既可表示抽象概念也可表示具体意义，包括周围环境、外界、自然环境、社会环境等。
She works in pleasant surroundings.
她在愉快的环境中工作。
It’s difficult to imagine you re living in such poor conditions.很难想像你在这样差的条件下生活。
An unhappy home environment can affect a child’s behaviour.不幸的家庭环境可能对孩子的行为造成影响。
Page No.440
高手过招
单项填空
by the police, the thief had no choice but to surrender （投降）.
(2009・12・辽宁大连检测)
A. Surrounded B. Having surrounded
C. To be surrounded D. Surrounding
解析:选 A。be surrounded by 被……包围。句子主语 the thief 与 surround 呈被动关系。故选 A。
2. border
n. 边界；国界；边沿
vt.&vi. 与……接壤；接近
I met him in a border town.我在一座边境小镇认识了他。
She crossed the border in disguise.她伪装过了边境。
易混辨析
border/boundary/bounds/frontier
这四个词都含有“边界”的意思。
border 指“边界”时，常指“边境”，即沿着两国边界的地区。
boundary 指“边界线”，主要指领土的边界。
Page No.441
bounds 指“具体的界线”，常用复数形式，主要用于诗文中。
frontier 指“就一国而言的边界”。
高手过招
单项填空
Her handkerchief has a blue , which makes it special in the room.
（原创）
A. Border B. line C. map D.sign
解析:选 A。句意为：她的手帕有一个蓝色的花边，这使它在房间里很特别。border 此处意为“边饰”。
3. measure
vi.&vt. 测量；衡量；判定

n.［C,U］ 尺寸；量具；计量单位；措施；（一定的）量，程度

常用结构：
measure A by B　用 B 衡量 A
sth. measures 2 metres by 4 metres 某物长 4 米宽 2 米
measure sb. for a suit = make a suit to sb's measure
给某人量身做一套衣服
Page No.442
take measures 采取措施
beyond measure 无法估计；极度
full/short measure 足量/不足量
in full measure 最大程度地，最大限度地
in some/equal measure 在某种/同等程度上
Can you measure accurately with this ruler?
用这把尺子能量得准吗?
It's hard to measure his ability when we haven't seen his work.
没有见过他的作品, 很难估计他的能力。
Our thanks are due in equal measure to every member of the team.我们同样感谢每一位队员。
We must take preventive measures to reduce crime in the area.
我们必须采取预防措施来减少这个地区的犯罪。
高手过招
(1) 完成句子　（原创）
①The tailor made a suit　（为我量身订做）.
Page No.443
②Success isn' t　(以……衡量) how much money you have.
(2) 翻译句子
①我们教室的尺寸是长 10 米宽 6 米。
②一棵高达 30 米的树被砍倒了。
答案：(1)①to my measure②measured by
(2)①Our classroom measures 10 metres by 6 metres.
②A tree measuring 30 metres was cut down.
4. distance
n. 距离；远方
v. 不介入，与……疏远
Page No.444
常用结构：
at a distance 隔一段距离；距离稍远
in the distance 在远方
out of distance from 离……太远；达不到
keep sb. at a distance 对……冷淡；与……疏远
keep distance from 与……保持距离
distance oneself from 使远离；使疏远
My house is four miles　distance from the sea.
我家离海 4 英里。
What' s the distance to Beijing? 到北京的距离是多少？
The beach is within walking distance of my house.
海滩离我家很近，走几步路就到了。
We saw lights in the distance.我们看到了远处的灯火。

She was warned to keep her distance from John if she didn t want to get hurt.

有人警告她说，如果不想受到伤害就离约翰远一点。
After he retired, he tried to distance himself from politics.
退休后，他便尽量使自己远离政治。
Page No.445
联想拓展
distant adj. 遥远的；远处的；久远的
高手过招
单项填空
All human beings have a comfortable zone regulating the
they keep from someone they talk with.
(2009・12・江西瑞昌检测)
Distance B. scop C. range D. boundary
解析:选 A。keep distance from 与……保持距离。
5. mix
vt.&vi. 混合；调配
常用结构：
mix A and/with B 把 A 与 B 混合起来
mix sth. up 把某物拌和；混淆某物
mix sth. in/into 把某物掺进去
be/get mixed up with sth./sb. 与某事有关；与某人混在一起
The chemist mixed (up) some medicine for me.
药剂师给我配了些药。
Page No.446
Oil and water don t mix. 油和水不能混合。
Oil won t mix with water. 油不能和水混合。
联想拓展
mixture n.［U,C］ 混合（物）；混合状态
高手过招
用 mix 相关短语的适当形式填空 （原创）
①Don’t try to business pleasure.
②Mix the eggs the flour.
③I don’ t want to in the affair.
答案：①mix; with②into③be mixed up
6. impress
vt.使印象深刻；使铭记
常用结构：
impress sth. on/upon sb. = impress sb. with/by sth.
使某人铭记某事
The sights of the city never fail to impress foreign tourists.
外国游客无一不对该市留有深刻印象。
We were most impressed with/by your efficiency.
你的工作效率很高，我们极为钦佩。
Page No.447
impression n.［C］印象；感想
impressive adj.给人印象深刻的；令人敬佩的
make/give/create an impression on/upon...
给……一个印象

have/get the impression that/of 有……的印象

高手过招

用 impress 相关短语的适当形式填空 （原创）

①Father me the value of hard work.

②One candidate in particular us her knowledge.

③You an excellent us.

④When I first met him I he was a humorous man.

答案：①impressed on②impressed; with

③made; impression upon④had the impression that

重点短语

7. settle down

舒适地坐下或躺下；（使）安静、安顿、安心；习惯于新的生活方式/工作等

She settled down in an armchair to read her book.

她舒适地坐在扶手椅上看书。

Page No.448

When are you going to marry and settle down?

你什么时候结婚过上安定生活?

联想拓展

settle down to doing sth.使……安下心来做某事

settle (down) in ... 在……定居下来

settle a dispute/an argument/an issue

解决争端/争论/问题

高手过招

(1)单项填空

New water wells encouraged people near the wells.

(2009·12·陕西西安检测)

A. to be settled downB. to settle down

C. to be settling downD. to live down

(2)完成句子（原创）

Something is disturbing him, so he can’t (安下心来) his work.

(3)用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

He finally settled down to (do) his homework.

Page No.449

解析: (1)选 B。考查固定搭配。encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事；settle down 定居。

(2)settle down to(3)doing

8. catch sight of

看见

She said that she caught sight of me in the crowd.

她说她在人群中一下子就看见了我。

联想拓展

at first sight 初次见到时；乍看上去

at the sight of 一看见……就……

lose sight of 看不见

out of sight 看不见（视野之外）

in/within sight 看得见；在眼前

高手过招

单项填空

There was nobody when the man came round the corner.

(2009·12·江西安福检测)

A. out of sight　　B. at sight
C. lose sight　　D. in sight
Page No.450
解析:选 D。根据句意可知,空格处的意思应该是“视野之内；看见”。in sight 看得见；在眼前。
9. as far as
远到，直到；至于
I’ll walk with you as far as the post office.
我会陪你走到邮局。
I’ve read as far as the third chapter. 我已读到第三章了。
联想拓展
as far as sb. can see/tell/ remember
就某人看来/所说/所记得
as/so far as sb./sth. is concerned 就某人/事而言
far from sth. 毫不；一点也不； 远非
So far, so good. (谚) 到目前为止，一切都很顺利。
高手过招
完成句子　　（原创）
①　　(对我个人来说), you can do what you like.
②The problem is　　(绝非易事).
③We’ll go by train　　(直到) London, and then take a bus.
Page No.451
答案：①As far as I’m concerned②far from easy
③as far as
10. in the distance
在远处；在远方
We can see the mountain in the distance.
我们从远处就可以看到那座山。
Night fell, the hills in the distance turn dark blue.
夜色渐近，远处的山变成了深蓝色。
联想拓展
at a distance 隔一段距离，距离稍远一些
from a distance 从远方
keep a distance 别靠近；保持距离
keep sb. at a distance 对某人保持疏远
高手过招
用适当的介词填空
①We can see a windmill　　the distance.
②The picture looks better　　a distance.
答案: ①in②at
Page No.452
11. have a gift for
对……有天赋
gifted adj. 有天赋的，有才的
He has a gift for dancing.他有跳舞的天赋。
Mother has a gift for making people feel at home.
妈妈有一种总让人感觉像在自己家一样的天赋。
The composer is also a gifted pianist.

这位作曲家也是位很有天赋的钢琴家。

高手过招

单项填空

You have a for music and I think you can have a chance to be a great singer.

A. Power B. skill C. energy D. gift

解析：选 D。考查固定搭配。have a gift for 对……有天赋。

重点句型

12. Rather than take the aeroplane all the way, they decided to fly to Vancouver and then take the train from west to east across Canada.

Page No.453

她们不想一路乘飞机，而决定先飞到温哥华，再从西海岸乘火车横穿加拿大到达东海岸。

常用结构：

rather than... 是……而不是……；与其……不如……；不愿

He ran rather than walked.他是跑的而不是走的。

Rather than allow the vegetables to go bad, he sold them at half price. 与其让蔬菜烂掉，他不如半价把它们卖掉。

联想拓展

do A rather than do B = rather than do B, sb. does A

某人不做 B 却做 A

A rather than B 是 A 而不是 B

would rather do A than do B = would do A rather than do B

宁可做 A 而不做 B

prefer to do A rather than do B 最喜欢做 A 而不做 B

would rather sb. did/had done sth. 宁愿某人做某事

温馨提示

rather than 表示客观事实，它连接的并列成分可以是名词、代词、形容词、介词(短语)、动名词、分句、不定式、动词等。后接不定式时，不定式可以带 to，也可以不带 to。但 rather than 位于句首时，则只能接不带 to 的不定式。

Page No.454

高手过招

(1) 用括号内所给词语的适当形式填空 （原创）

①Rather than (ride) on a crowded bus, he always prefers (ride) a bicycle.

②I’d rather you (not come) yesterday.

③I think Tom, rather than you, (blame).

(2) 翻译句子 （原创）

①他一路跑过来而不是走过来。

②她喜欢把一些东西保存在房间里而不是把它们扔掉，尽管大部分都是无用的。

答案：(1)①ride; to ride②hadn’t come③is to blame

(2)①He came running all the way rather than walking.

②She likes to keep things in the house rather than throw them away, though many are useless.

Page No.455

13. It is so wet there that the trees are extremely tall, some measuring over 90 metres.

那儿的湿度很大，所以树都长得特别高，一些高达 90 多米。

some measuring over 90 metres 是独立主格结构。

联想拓展

独立主格结构由名词或代词加上其他成分构成，在语法上是一个独立的短语，不是句子，作用相当于状语 从句，可表示时间、原因、条件、行为、方式或伴随情况。

构成形式：名词(代词) + 现在分词/过去分词/形容词/副词/不定式/介词短语。

①作时间状语:

The meeting over, they left the hall.
会议结束了，他们离开了大厅。
②作原因状语:
My watch having been lost, I didn't know what time it was.
我的表丢了，我不知道几点钟了。
③作条件状语:
Time permitting, I shall go to the cinema with you.
Page No.456
如果时间允许的话，我会和你一起去看电影。
④描述伴随行为或补充说明:
Mary entered the room, her hands in her pockets.
玛丽走进房间，手放在口袋里。
高手过招
(1)用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空（原创）
①The test (finish), we began our holiday.
②Weather (permit), we are going to visit you tomorrow.
(2)完成句子
①He came into the room, his ears (冻得发红).
②He came out of the library, a book (夹在胳膊下).
答案：(1)①finished②permitting
(2)①red with cold②under his arm
Page No.457
必 修 4
Page No.458
Unit 1 Women of achievement
Page No.459
核心单词
1. achievement
n.［C］成就；功绩;\[U\]实现；完成；达到联
想拓展
achieve v.取得，实现
achieve an aim/a goal 达到目标
achieve success 获得成功
He received the Nobel Prize for his scientific achievements.
他因科学上取得的成就而获得诺贝尔奖。
Flying across the Atlantic for the first time was a great achievement. 首次飞越大西洋是一个伟大的功绩。
Page No.460
高手过招
完成句子（原创）
①没有人民的支持，我们将一事无成。
Without the support of the people we can .
②我只完成了我所希望完成的工作的一半。
I have achieved only half of I hope to do.
③祝贺你获得这样完美的胜利。
Congratulations to you (介词) such a complete victory.
答案: ① achieve nothing ②what ③ on achieving
2. behave

vi.举止，行为，表现；（机器等）工作，运转（常与 well/badly 等副词连用）

vt.守规矩；举止有礼

常用结构：

behave oneself 使某人自己举止规矩

Behave yourself; don't make a fool of yourself.

注意你的举止, 别闹出笑话来。

How is your new car behaving? 你的新车性能如何？

联想拓展

behaviour n. (人的)言行举止，行为；（动物）习性，自学 成才

behaviour towards/to... 对……的态度/行为

Page No.461

高手过招

(1)单项填空

①David is quite well in school. He obeys the teachers and gets As in all his subjects.

（2009・11・山东潍坊检测）

A. Behaved B. concerned

C. Involved D. respected

(2) 完成句子 （原创）

①父母让孩子们在客人面前举止礼貌。

The parents asked the children to in front of the guests.

②她对这个孩子的良好行为感到高兴。

She is pleased with the child's .

解析：(1) 选 A。be well behaved 为固定搭配，意为“表现优秀”，联系空后的内容可知,A 项最佳。

(2) ① behave well ②good behaviour

Page No.462

3. worthwhile

adj.值得做的；值得的，可用作表语或定语，其后可加 to do/doing。

易混辨析

worth/worthy/worthwhile

worth 只能作表语，其后接钱数、名词或及物动词的动名词的主动形式: be worth doing。

worthy 可作表语，后接 of+名词/动名词的被动形式/不定式的被动形式: be worthy of+n./being done / to be done； 也可作定语，表示“值得……的；有价值的”。

worthwhile 可作表语或定语;a worthwhile job 一份值得做的工作。常用结构：it is worthwhile to do/doing 做某事是值得的。

a worthy winner 名副其实的赢家

Buying the car at this price is not worthwhile.

以这样的价格买车不值得。

Is it worthwhile making/ to make such an effort?

做这样的努力值得吗？

Page No.463

高手过招

(1) 单项填空 （原创）

It was the trouble to settle the problem.

A. worth to take B. worthwhile taking

C. worth being taken D. worth taking

(2) 选词填空 (worthwhile/worth/worthy) （原创）

①This vase was five hundred francs at the most.

②Everybody has roots. It is to search for his roots.

③Their efforts are of your support.

④This book is well reading and it is of being read a second time.

解析:(1) 选 B。worthwhile 后可以跟动名词也可以跟不定式，而 worth 后面只可以跟动名词的主动语态表达被动概念。

(2) ①worth ② worthwhile ③ worthy

④ worth; worthy

Page No.464

4. respect

vt.尊敬；尊重

n.敬意;问候

常用结构：

pay/give one’s respect to sb. 向某人致敬/问候

have/show respect for sb. 尊敬某人

respecting = with respect to 关于；就……而言

in all respects = in every respect 无论从哪方面来看；

在各方面

We all should respect our parents and teachers.

我们都应该尊敬我们的父母和老师。

Mr Smith always show respect to his children’s opinions.

史密斯先生总是很尊重孩子们的意见。

In respect to the content, the article is very good,but it is not satisfactory in other aspects.

就内容而言，这篇文章很好，但在其他方面还不能令人满意。

Page No.465

联想拓展

respectable adj. 值得尊敬的;正派的;高尚的

respectful adj. 有礼貌的；恭敬的

respective adj. 各自的；分别的

respectively adv. 各自地；分别地

One－way fares for adults and children were ＄18 and ＄5 respectively.

成人和儿童的单程车费分别为 18 美元和 5 美元。

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①请代我向你的父母致意。

Please your parents.

②我们的班主任是位可敬的人，我们都很尊敬她。

Our head teacher is a person, we all her.

答案:①give my respect to

②respectable; show/have respect for

Page No.466

5. argue

v.争论，辩论;说服；主张;认为

常用结构：

argue with sb. about/over sth. 就某事和某人争辩

argue sb. into/out of doing=persuade sb. to/not to do

=persuade sb. into/out of doing 说服某人做/不做某事

argue for/against 支持/反对

联想拓展

argument n.	论点；争论;论据
settle an argument	解决争端

beyond argument 无可争辩

We argued that we should be paid more.

我们据理力争自己应该得到更高的薪水。

They are arguing with the officials over foreign policies.

他们正就外交政策与官员们进行辩论。

They argued the park into lowering the price.

他们说服公园降了价。

Page No.467

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①我们总是就金钱的问题而争论。

We are always arguing each other money.

②他们说服我买了辆新的自行车。

They argued me buying a new bike.

③他反对吸烟，而且坚持认为吸烟有害健康是无可争辩的事实。

He argued smoking, and insisted that it was argument that smoking was harmful to health.

答案: ① with; about/over ②into ③ against; beyond

Page No.468

6. inspire

vt.鼓舞；激励；引发；赋予……灵感；激发

His speech inspired us. 他的发言鼓舞了我们。

The beautiful scenery inspired the composer.

美丽的景色使作曲家文思泉涌。

常用结构：

inspire sb. to sth. 鼓励某人某事

inspire sb. to do sth.鼓励某人做某事

(=encourage sb. to do sth.)

inspire sth. in sb.

(=inspire sb. with sth.) 使某人产生……；鼓励某人……

The father inspired his son with confidence.

=The father inspired confidence in his son.

这位父亲鼓励儿子要自信。

联想拓展

inspiration n. 灵感；启发；鼓舞人的事或人

inspired adj. 受到鼓舞的；有灵感的

inspiring adj. 鼓舞人心的;激励的

Page No.469

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①老师的话使他产生了希望。

The teacher’s words .

=The teacher’s words .

②学生们都被这首振奋人心的歌曲所鼓舞。

The students were all by the song.

答案: ① inspired him with hope; inspired hope in him ② inspired; inspiring

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

7. intend

vt.&vi. 计划，打算

常用结构：

be intended for 专供……使用；专为……而设计

intend to do/doing 打算……

intend sb. to do sth. 打算让某人做某事

This kind of bicycle is intended for people who are too short.

这种自行车是专为身材矮小的人设计的。

Today, I intend to finish reading this novel.

今天我打算读完这本小说。

I intend you to take over my career.

我打算让你接管我的事业。

Page No.471

高手过招

单项填空

① The book, for her sister, was lost in the mail. （2010·01·江苏南京检测）

A. intended as pleasant surprise

B. intending as pleasant surprise

C. intended as a pleasant surprise

D. intending for pleasant surprise

②Miss Wang had to catch the first bus, but she did’t get up early enough.

（2010·01·陕西西安质量检测）

A. Turned B. come C. intended D. promised

①解析：选 C。intend sth. for sb.意为“为某人准备某物”，book 与 intend 之间呈被动关系，因此用过去分词短语作定语；surprise 在这里用单数，表示“一个惊喜”。

②解析：选 C。intend 有“打算”的意思，用过去完成时，表示“曾打算如此，但没有做成”。

Page No.472

8. deliver

vt.接生(小孩)；递送；发表(演说等)

常见结构:

deliver a baby 接生小孩；生小孩

deliver sth. to...把某物送到……

The baby was delivered in a clinic.

孩子是在一个医疗站接生的。

Comrade Yang delivered the opening speech.

杨同志致了开幕词。

联想拓展

delivery n. 送货；交付

express delivery 快递

on delivery 送达时；货到时

Page No.473

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①一些新书已经送到学校了。

Some new books have the school.

②演员用他温柔的声音演讲。

The actor	his speech	a soft voice.

答案: ① been delivered; to ② delivered/gave; in

Page No.474

9. observe

vt. 观察；观测；遵守

She spent many year observing and recording their daily activities.

她花了许多年时间来观察和记录他们的日常活动。

常用结构：

observe+名词/代词

宾语+宾语补足语（不带 to 的不定式/动词 ing 形式）

that 从句/what 从句

I observed them enter/entering the shop.

我看到他们进了/正走进商店。

The boy observed what was going on between Tom and his little sister.

男孩观察汤姆和他妹妹之间会发生什么事。

We should strictly observe the discipline.

我们要严格遵守纪律。

联想拓展

observer n. 观察者

obstrvation n. 观察

Page No.475

高手过招

翻译句子

①我从未看过他做早操。

②我们必须遵守交通规则。

答案: ① I have never observed him do morning exercises.

② We must observe the rule of road.

Page No.476

重点短语

10. look down upon/on

蔑视；瞧不起

She looks down on people who've never been to university.

她瞧不起没上过大学的人。

You can't look down upon a person because he is poor.

你不能因为某个人贫穷就瞧不起他。

I hope you don't look down upon/on this kind of work.

我希望你不要看不起这种工作。

联想拓展

look on sb./ sth. as 把某人/某物看作……

=consider sb./ sth. as

look on 袖手旁观；观望

look into sth. 调查；观察某事物

look up 查阅(单词、资料)；向上看；好转

look (sb.) up and down 上下打量(某人)

look out for sb./sth. 警惕或留心某人/某物

look back to 回顾；回忆

look about/around　　环顾四周

look after 照料 ；照看
look forward to 盼望；期待
look for 寻找
look like 看起来像
look over 检查；检阅
look through 浏览；检查
look up to 尊敬
Page No.477
高手过招
(1) 完成句子 （原创）
①He was (被人看不起) because of his humble background.
②He is (被认为是) the leading authority on the subject.
③If you want to know how a word is used, it (查阅） in a dictionary.
(2) 选词填空 (look up/look down on/look forward to/look into) （原创）
①I’m going to your party.
②The police have received the complaint, and they are it.
③We should not manual labour.
④Please these words in your dictionary.
Page No.478
答案: (1) ①looked down on ②looked on as
③look; up
(2) ① looking forward to ② looking into
③ look down on ④ look up
11. refer to
谈到；查阅；参考；查询；提及；指……而言
联想拓展
refer to sb./sth. as 把某人/物称作
refer sth. to 把某事提交
refer sb. to 让某人向……求助
Page No.479
易混辨析
refer to/consult/look up
refer to 和 consult 都可作“查阅（词典、参考书等）”讲，表此意时两词可以互换。
look up 意为“（在词典、时刻表等中）查找……”。
We agreed never to refer to the matter again.
我们同意不再谈论这件事了。
She thought I was referring to her daughter when we were talking.
当我们谈话时她以为我指的是她的女儿。高
手过招
(1)完成句子 （原创）
① Although she didn ’ t mention any names, everyone knew who she was (谈到).
②He gave the speech (没有参阅) his notes.
Page No.480

③He likes to (被称为) “Doctor Khee”.

④My doctor me (向……求助) a hospital specialist.

(2)单项填空

①The professor at the meeting will give us a lecture next week. （2010・01・山东青州二中模块检测）

A. Referred B. referred to

C. Referring D. referring to

②If you are not sure of the meaning of this word, you can the dictionary. （2010・浙江萧山质量检测）

A. refer to B. look up

C. See D. make use of

③During his stay in our college, he often began his talk by this past experience as a soldier. （2010・01・江西南昌检测）

A. turning to B. referring to

C. sticking to D. speaking to

④Using a long stick, the teacher a place on the map and asked the children to name it. （2010・01・江苏启东检测）

A. got down to B. pointed to

C. referred to D. came to

Page No.481

(1) ①referring to ②without referring to ③ be referred to as ④ referred; to

(2) ① 解析：选 B。句意为：在会议上被提到的那位教授下周将给我们作一次讲座。用 refer to 的过去分词形式作后置定语，表示被动。

② 解析：选 A。refer to 在句中作“查阅”讲，B 项结构应为 look up the word in the dictionary。

③ 解析：选 B。考查词义辨析。turn to 的意思是“求助于”，但其宾语是人，不可以是物；refer to 的意思是“参考；查询；谈到；提到”；stick to 的意思是“坚持”。

④ 解析：选 B。 考查短语辨析。get down to 的意思是“开始；着手”，后跟名词或动名词；point to 的意思是“指着；指向”；refer to 的意思是“参考；提到”；come to 的意思是“达到”。

Page No.482

12. come across

=run across=meet by chance (偶然) 遇见；碰见

联想拓展

come about = happen 发生

come from 来自

come out 出现；开花；出版或发表；透露；显出

come up 升起；发生；出现

come up with sth. 找到或提出（答案、办法等）

come to 谈到；涉及

I came across an old school friend in Oxford Street this morning. 今天早上我在牛津大街碰见一位老校友。

She came across some old photographs in a drawer.

她在一个抽屉里偶然发现了一些旧照片。

Page No.483

高手过招

(1)单项填空

Mr Brown, could you tell me how the differences between American English and British English ?（2010・01・山东济南检测）

A. came about B. came to

C. came up D. came across

(2)用 come 短语的适当形式填空 （原创）

①I some new words while reading.

②His new book will next month.

③She a new idea for increasing sales.

④Can you tell me how the accident ?

⑤How did it that he knew where we were?

(1)解析：选 A。考查词义辨析。come about 意为“产生”，符合句意；come to 意为“达到（某个数字）”；come across 意为“偶然遇到；从……上走”；come up 意为“来到”。 (2)①came across ②come out ③came up with ④came about ⑤come about Page No.484

13. carry on

继续；坚持

Let’s carry on our homework.

让我们继续做我们的家庭作业。

We must carry on until the rescue team arrived.

我们必须坚持下去直到救援队到来。

联想拓展

carry out 执行；实施

carry away 带走；冲走

carry off 夺去

We will carry out the plan as soon as it is made.

这个计划一制定出来，我们就会执行。

We planted many trees to stop the water from carrying away the soil. 我们种这么多树的目的是阻止土壤流失。

Page No.485

高手过招

单项填空

Do you mind if I with my work while you are getting tea ready.

（2010·01·山东胜利一中检测）

carry out B. come on

C. carry on D. go over

解析：选 C。carry on 在这里是“继续下去”的意思。A 项有一定干扰性。 carry out 也有“进行，开展”的意思，然而 carry on 为不及物动词，而 carry out 为及物动词。

Page No.486

重点句型

14. Only after her mother came to help her for the first few months was she allowed to begin her project.

她母亲头几个月来帮她的忙，这才使她得以开始自己的计划。

“only+状语”放在句首时，主句部分要用部分倒装，即：将助动词、情态动词或连系动词置于主语之前。 但“only+主语”放在句首时，主句不倒装。

Only in this way can we learn English better.

只有这样，我们才能学好英语。

Only then did I remember that I had left my cell phone in the restaurant.到那时我才记起我把手机忘在餐馆里了。

Only when Mum is sick will she stay in bed.

只有生病的时候妈妈才会卧床休息。

Page No.487

高手过招

单项填空

① Only then how much damage had been caused.（原创）

A. she realized B. she had realized

C. had she realized D. did she realize

② by keeping down cost will Power Data hold its advantage over other companies.

（2010・01・安徽合肥高三检测）

Only B. Just C. Still D. Yet

①解析：选 D。“only+状语”放在句首时，主句部分要用部分倒装，再根据时间 then 判断，主句应用一般过去时，所以选 D。

②解析：选 A。四个选项中，只有“only+状语”放在句首时，主句才用部分倒装。

Page No.488

15. For forty years Jane Goodall has been outspoken about making the rest of the world understand and respect the life of these animals.

40 年来，简・古道尔一直在呼吁世人了解并尊重这些动物的生活。

本句用的是现在完成时，即“has/have been doing”，表示从过去某个时间开始的动作或状态一直延续到现在，可能还会再进行下去。

—What have you been doing?

你一直在做什么？

—I have been practising the piano.

我一直在练习弹钢琴。

Page No.489

高手过招

单项填空

①—Hi, Fracy, you look tired.

—I m tired. I the living room all day.

Painted B. had painted

C. have been painting D. have painted

②New that she is out of a job, Lucy going back to school, but she hasn’t decided yet.

A. had considered B. has been considering

C. Considered D. is going to consider

①解析：选 C。答句句意为：我一整天都在给起居室刷油漆。表示过去开始的动作一直持续进行到现在，用现在完成进行时。

②解析：选 B。句意为：露西现在没有工作，她在考虑回学校，但她依然没有做决定。表示过去开始的动作一直持续进行到现在，用现在完成进行时。

Page No.490

Unit 2 Working the land

Page No.491

核心单词

1. struggle

v.挣扎；努力；拼搏；斗争

n. (为争取自由、政治权利等而进行的)斗争，奋斗

常用结构：

struggle with 与……斗争

struggle for 为争取……而斗争

struggle against 与……斗争；为反对……而斗争

struggle to do sth. (=make great efforts to do sth.)

努力做某事

struggle to one’s feet 挣扎着站起来

She struggled to keep back the tears. 她努力忍住泪水。

It was a hard struggle to get my work done on time.

为使工作按时完成, 我做了一番努力。

Page No.492

易混辨析

struggle/fight

struggle 指较长时间的、激烈的斗争，往往指肉体及精神上的战斗。

fight 意为“搏斗，打斗，打架”，表示“斗争”时，包含体力和勇猛的因素。高

手过招

(1) 单项填空

The working people have never stopped their struggle unfair treatment.（ 2010・01・山西太原五中检测）

A. against B. for C. from D. to

(2) 完成句子 （原创）

①我们应当帮助那些仍在为独立而斗争的人们。

We should help those who are still .

②他们得和各种各样的困难作斗争。

They had to .

Page No.493

(1) 解析：选 A。struggle against 意为“同……作斗争”；struggle for 意为“为了……而斗争”。

(2) ①struggling for independence

②struggle with/against all kinds of difficulties

2. expand

v.扩大；扩展；增加；增长；（使）膨胀；阐述；使变大

常用结构：

expand...into...将……扩展/发展成……

expand on 阐述；详谈

He is thinking of expanding his business.

他在正考虑扩大他的生意。

In ten years the city’s population expanded by 12%.

十年之中,该市人口增加了百分之十二。

Page No.494

联想拓展

expansion n. 展开；膨胀；扩展

expansive adj. 广阔的；易膨胀的

易混辨析

expand/extend/spread/stretch

expand 意为“展开，扩大”，不仅指尺寸的增加，还可指范围和体积的扩大。

extend 意为“伸出，延伸”，指空间范围的扩大，以及长度，宽度的向外延伸，也可指时间的延长。

spread 意为“传播；蔓延；铺开”。一般指向四面八方扩大传播的范围，如传播（疾病），散布（信息）等。

stretch 意为“伸展(身体等)，拉长；连绵”，一般指由曲变直，由短变长的伸展，不是加长。

Page No.495

高手过招

选词填空（expend/extend/spread/stretch）（原创）

①The fire soon to the nearby houses.

②The tourist season from May till October.

③A balloon when it is blown up.

④The cat out in front of the fire.

答案:①spread ②extends ③expands ④stretched

3. equip
vt. & vi. 配备；装备
常用结构：
equip sb./sth. with 用……武装某人；用……装备某物
equip sb./sth. for 为……而武装某人；为……而装备某物
a piece of office equipment 一件办公设备
Page No.496
They equipped themselves for the expedition.
他们为远征准备装备。
A good education should equip you for life.
良好的教育能使你受用终生。
高手过招
(1) 单项填空
All classes of this school are with modern . （原创）
A. equipped; equipment B. equipped; equipments
C. equipping; equipments D. equipping; equipment
(2) 完成句子 （原创）
①The soldiers were well (装备) weapons.
②This library (为……而装备) atomic research.
③Our classroom (装备有) a computer and a tape recorder.
Page No.497
(1) 解析：选 A。equip ...with ...意为“用……装备……”，被动形式为 be equipped with。第二空 equipment 意为“装备；设备”，是不可数名词。
(2) ①equipped with ② is equipped for
③ is equipped with
4. regret
vt.& vi. 后悔；遗憾
n. 遗憾；懊悔
常用结构：
regret doing= regret having done=regret to have done
后悔做了某事
regret to do 遗憾将要做某事
regret to say/tell/inform 遗憾地说/告诉/通知
much to one’s regret 深感遗憾
with regret 遗憾地
Page No.498
Tom regretted telling his parents the thing.
汤姆后悔告诉了父母那件事。
I regretted to tell you you hadn’t passed the driving test.
我很遗憾地告诉你你没有通过驾驶考试。
He told me with regret that he couldn’t come to the party.
他很抱歉地对我说他不能参加这个聚会了。
He gave up teaching in 1998, much to his students regret.
他于 1998 年放弃了教学，这使他的学生很遗憾。
高手过招
(1) 单项填空
They failed to pass the exam last time. I regretted them.

（2010・01・江西赣州质量检测）

A. to be not able to help B. not being able to help
C. being not able to help D. not be able to help
Page No.499
(2)用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空 （原创）
①I now regret (leave) school so young.
②I regret (inform) you that your contract will not be renewed.
(3)完成句子
(我非常抱歉), I am unable to accept your invitation.
(1)解析：选 B。考查 regret doing 这一结构的用法。本空表达对过去发生的事情感到遗憾，同时还考查了动名词的否定形式 not doing。
(2)①leaving②to inform
(3)Much to my regret/To my great regret
5. reduce
vt.减少；缩小；降低；使……陷入某种更糟的状态
He is trying to reduce expenses. 他正试图减少开支。
We must gradually reduce the wage gap.
我们必须逐步缩小工资差距。
Page No.500
常用结构：
reduce sth. to... 减少到……
reduce sth. by... 减少了……
be reduced to 沦落为……
The shopkeeper reduced the price by ＄10.
店主把价格降了 10 美元。
The poor boy is reduced to begging.
那个可怜的孩子已沦为乞丐。
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①她的体重减少了 5 公斤。
She her 5 kilos.
②炸弹爆炸使得该城市化为废墟。
The bombs the city .
答案: ① reduced；weight by ② reduced；to ruins
Page No.501
6. comment
vi. &vt. 表达意见；作出评论
n.［C&U］ 评论；议论
常用结构：
comment on/about sth./sb. 对某事/某人进行评论
make comments/no comment on sth./sb.
对某事/某人进行评论/不进行评论
The scandal caused a lot of comment.
这件丑闻遭到很多议论。
“Will you resign, Minister?” “No comment!”
“部长，您是要辞职吗?”“无可奉告。”
高手过招

(1)用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空　　（原创）

Do you have any comments (make) on the recent developments?

Page No.502

(2) 完成句子 （原创）

①Asked about the date of the election, the Prime Minister (发表意见) no decision had yet been made.

②She was asked about the pay increase but (不进行评论) on it.

答案:(1)to make

(2) ①commented that ② made no comment

重点短语

7. thanks to

由于；多亏（有时用作反语）;因为

Thanks to your help, we were successful.

由于你的帮助，我们成功了。

Thanks to you, I was saved from drowning.

多亏你，我才没被淹死。

Thanks to the bad weather, the match had been cancelled.

多亏了这倒霉的天气，比赛被取消了。（反语）

Page No.503

联想拓展

表示“因为，由于”的短语还有：

because of，owing to，on account of，due to，as a result of。

温馨提示

以上这些都是介词短语，因此后面可以跟名词或动名词而不可以跟从句。

高手过招

单项填空

①It was your timely help that we accomplished the task on time. （2010·01·山西运城检测）

A. Because B. thank C. thanks to D. as

② the new policy, we are now having a happy life. （2010·01·安徽亳州检测）

A. Thanks to B. Because

C. For D. Thanks for

①解析：选 C。because 和 as 虽然也表示“因为，由于”，但后面需接句子，而句中是短语，故应用 thanks to。句意为： 幸亏你及时帮忙，我们才按时完成了任务。

②解析：选 A。考查近义词辨析。thanks to 意为“多亏了”；because 后应加句子;for 表示补充说明的原因。

Page No.504

8. rid ...of

摆脱；除去

You should rid yourself of that bad habit.

你应该改掉那个坏习惯。

联想拓展

be rid of 摆脱

get rid of 摆脱；除掉；去掉

rid oneself of debt 还清债务

break away from 摆脱；放弃

You must break away from such a bad habit.

你必须改掉这样的坏习惯。

It won't be long before we can be/get rid of the pest altogether.
不用太久，我们就能把这种害虫消除干净。
高手过招
同义句转换 （原创）
Could you rid yourself of the bad habit of smoking?
Could you the bad habit of smoking?
答案: get rid of
Page No.505
9. would rather
宁愿，宁可
I'd rather you didn't. (常用来委婉拒绝别人)
我希望你不要。
He would rather stay at home watching TV.
他宁愿待在家里看电视。
I'd rather not go there. 我宁愿不去那里。
I'd rather you came tomorrow than today.
我宁愿你明天来而不是今天来。
I'd rather have made a telephone call to him yesterday.
我昨天本想给他打个电话的。
联想拓展
would rather...than...是常用句式，意为"宁可（愿）……（而）不要（愿）……"
would rather＋从句时，从句要用虚拟语气，用动词的过去时表示。
would rather have done 本想做……（而实际上未做）
Page No.506
高手过招
单项填空
①—Shall we go skating or stay at home?
—Which do yourself? （2010·01·江西南昌检测）
A. do you rather B. would you rather
C. will you rather D. should you rather
②I'd rather the basketball match last night. Otherwise, I would have finished my paperwork by now.
（2010·01·江苏徐州检测）
A. not have watched B. not watch
C. hadn't watch D. haven't watch
①解析：选 B。考查 would rather do sth.这一结构的用法。而 do, will 和 should 都不能与 rather 搭配。would rather (not) do sth.意为"宁愿（不愿意）做某事"。
②解析：选 A。would rather not have done 意为"本不想做……（实际却做了）"。后一句句意为：否则我现在已经完成了我的文件。 所以前句表示"本不想看球赛却看了"，故选 A。
Page No.507
10. lead to
通向；导致；造成（后果）
注意：lead to 中的 to 为介词，该短语后可跟名词或动名词。
The car accident led to his being killed.
那次车祸导致他死亡。
All roads lead to Rome.
条条大路通罗马。

Eating too much sugar can lead to health problems.

吃太多糖会导致健康问题。

His carelessness led to his failure.

他的粗心导致了他的失败。

联想拓展

result in 导致

result from 由……导致

Page No.508

高手过招

单项填空

The students in the university are all taking courses a degree. （2010·01·山东烟台检测）

A. sticking to B. leading to

C. turning to D. referring to

解析:选 B。考查动词短语辨析。stick to 坚持; lead to 导致，引起；通往；turn to 求助，转向，查阅；refer to 指的是；谈论，查阅。由句意“大学生都在学习课程，以取得学位”可知，答案为 B。

11. build up

逐步建立；逐渐增强；加强；树立；积累

The company has built up a fine reputation.

该公司已建立起良好的信誉。

You must build up your strength after your illness.

你在病后必须要增强体力。

Page No.509

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①我们应该鼓励孩子们树立信心。

We should encourage the children to .

②看到你的词汇量在逐渐增长我很高兴。

I’m very glad to see that your vocabulary is .

答案: ① build up their confidence

② gradually building up

12. focus on

集中（注意力、精力等）于……；对(某事或做某事)予以注意；使聚焦于；使直射于

He focused his mind on his lessons. 他把心思集中在功课上。

Page No.510

Today we’re going to focus on the question of homeless people. 今天, 我们主要讨论无家可归者的问题。

A near‐sighted person cannot focus accurately on distant objects. 近视的人看不清远处的物体。

联想拓展

focus one’s attention on sth.= center/concentrate/fix one’s attention on sth. 集中注意力于……

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①在我看来，学校应该把精力集中在教学上。

In my opinion, schools should .

②他把相机对准了远处的高楼。

He his camera the huge building in the distance.

答案: ① focus attention on teaching

② focused；on

Page No.511

重点句型

13. In 1974, he became the first agricultural pioneer in the world to grow rice that has a high output.
1974 年，他成为世界上第一位种植高产水稻的农业先锋。
不定式放在表示次序的词 the first, the last, the best 以及 the only, the very, the right 等词后面, 且这些词与动词不定式有逻辑上的主谓关系，结构为：the first/last/best/only/very/right ...+n. + to do sth.表示“第一个/最后一个/最好的一个/唯一的/恰好的/合适的……做某事的人/物”。
He is always the first to come and the last to leave.
他总是第一个来并且最后一个离开。
The last man to leave the sinking ship was the captain.
最后一个离开正在下沉的船的那个人是船长。
Page No.512
高手过招
单项填空
He is the last person to Mary’s birthday party.（原创）
A. to invite B. to be invited
C. invited D. being invited
解析：选 B。考查不定式作定语的用法。当名词前面有序数词或 last, next 等词修饰时，名词后面多用不定式作定语。如 New Zealand was the first nation in modern times to allow women to vote. 新西兰成为现代史上第一个允许妇女有选举权的国家。
14. Using his hybrid rice, farmers are producing harvests twice as large as before.
用他的杂交水稻种子，农民们种出的粮食比以前多了一倍。
倍数表达法：
A＋be＋倍数＋as＋adj.＋as＋B A＋
be＋倍数＋比较级＋than＋B
A＋be＋倍数＋（由某些形容词变化而来的）n.＋of＋B
Page No.513
I’m not going out with a man who’s twice as old as me.
我不愿意和一个年纪比我大一倍的男人一起参加社交活动。
We got three times as many people as expected.
来的人超过我们预料人数的两倍。
You’re not half as clever as you think you are.
你可不像自己想像的一半那么聪明。
高手过招
单项填空
What a table! I’ ve never seen such a thing before. It is it is long.（ 原创）
A. half not as wide as B. wide not as half as
C. not half as wide as D. as wide as not half
解析：选 C。考查倍数表达法。表达倍数的结构应该是：A+ be+倍数+as+ adj.+ as +B。as... as 中间是形容词或副词的原级，而不可以是比较级或最高级。
Page No.514
15. This also keeps the air, soil, water and crops free from chemicals.
这还可以让空气、土壤、水以及农作物不受化学物质的污染。
keep ...free from 无……的；免于……；摆脱……（常用作表语、后置定语或补语）
联想拓展
be free to do sth. 自由地做，随意地做
set sb. free 释放某人
get/give sth. for free 免费得到/赠送

a smoke ‾ free room/area 无烟室/区

free of charge 免费
高手过招
完成句子
用这个东西把桌子罩住，免得有灰尘落在上面。
the table dirty by putting a cover over it.
答案:Keep; free from
Page No.515
Unit3
A taste of English humour
Page No.516
核心单词
1. content
adj. 满意的，满足的
vt. 使满意，满足
n. 内容；所包含之物
He is content despite his great poverty.
他虽然很穷，但很满足。
Can you tell me the content of the box?
你能告诉我盒子装的什么吗？
常用结构：
be/ feel content with=be satisfied /pleased with
对…… 满意
be content to do sth.满意/乐意做某事
content oneself with 使某人自己对……感到满足
Page No.517
As there is no bread, we must content ourselves with pancakes.
因为没有面包了，我们只好吃煎饼了。
—Are you content with your present salary?
你对你现在的工资满意吗？
—No, not at all. 不，一点也不满意。
高手过招
翻译句子
①你对你现在的生活满意吗？ （原创）

②There is a table of contents at the front of the book.
答案: ① Are you content with your present life?
②书的前面有目录。
Page No.518
2. entertain
vt.&vi. 使欢乐；招待；款待
He entertained us for hours with his stories and jokes.
他给我们讲故事、说笑话，让我们高兴了好几个小时。
We were all entertained by his humorous stories.
他的幽默故事使我们大家都很开心。
常用结构：
entertain sb.with sth. 用……使某人快乐
entertain sb. to sth. 用……招待/款待某人

I often entertain friends to dinner on Sundays.

我常在星期天请朋友们吃饭。

联想拓展

entertaining adj. 使人愉快的；有趣的

Page No.519

entertainment n. 款待；请客；娱乐；消遣

an entertaining story/guest 一个有趣的故事/客人

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①这个孩子正在搭积木玩。

The child is his building blocks.

②那个镇上几乎没有娱乐设施。

few in that town.

③这类机器人是为娱乐而设计的。

This type of robot is intended only .

答案: ①entertaining himself with ② There are; entertainments ③ for entertainment

Page No.520

3. failure

n.［U］失败；［C］失败的经历；失败的人或事

I became successful after many failures.

在多次失败后，我终于成功了。

The new restaurant was a failure and soon closed.

那家新饭店经营不善,不久便关门了。

联想拓展

反义词：success n.成功；成功的人或事

fail v. 失败；不及格

fail in 失败；不及格；不足；缺乏

fail to do sth. （表示否定）未能做某事；没有

I failed to persuade him. 我没能说服他。

Page No.521

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①At last, he was （了不起的成功者）, while she was （失败者）.

②I （不能）see why you find it so amusing.

答案: ① a great success；a failure ② fail to

4. convince

vt. 使确信；使信服

常用结构：

be convinced/sure of sth./that 确信；坚信

convince sb. to do sth. 说服某人做某事

convince sb. of sth./that 使某人相信……

We convinced Anne to go by train rather than plane.

我们说服安妮乘火车而不是乘飞机去。

It’s hard to convince my family that we can’t afford a new car. 很难让我的家人相信我们买不起新车。

Page No.522

联想拓展

convincing adj. 有说服力的；令人信服的

convinced adj. 感到信服的；相信的

convincible adj.可被说服的，可喻之以理的

be convinced of sth./that 相信……

I am convinced of his honesty. 我对他的诚实深信不疑。

高手过招

单项填空 （原创）

①It will be very difficult to them our innocence.

A. convince; of B. believe; in

C. convince; about D. believe; of

②He couldn’t his father that John was telling the truth.

A. Convince B. believe

C. Admit D. display

①解析：选 A。convince sb. of sth.意为“使某人相信某事”，符合句意。

②解析：选 A。按照句意：他无法使他父亲相信约翰说的是事实。convince 使信服，说服。常用于 convince sb. of sth./that ...结构。believe 不能用于 believe sb. that ...结构；admit 承认，允许进入，接纳；display 陈列， 展览，显示。

Page No.523

5. direct

vt. &vi. 导演；指示；指挥

adj.直接的；笔直的；坦率的

He directed many Shakespearean plays in London.

他在伦敦导演过许多莎士比亚的戏剧。

常用结构：

direct+ sb./ sth. +to do sth. 指示/命令某人/物做某事

Direct +that sb. (should) do sth.

sth. (should) be done

指示某人做某事（虚拟语气）

The general directed that an advance (should)be made the next morning. 将军命令部队第二天早上向前挺进。

联想拓展

directly adv.直接地

direction n. 指导；方向

Page No.524

易混辨析

direct/directly

direct 是指不停步，不绕道，直奔目的地。

directly 是指一种直接的方式，着重对事物的直接影响，不着重实际、距离；表示时间，指立刻，不拖延。

We flew direct from London to New York.

我们直接从伦敦飞到纽约。

You will hear everything directly you come.

你一来就会听到所有的情况了。

高手过招

选词填空(direct/direction/directly) （原创）

①The next flight doesn’t go to Paris，it goes by way of Rome.

②He refused to answer my questions .

③We’ll come we have finished.

④He drove in the of the farm.

答案: ① direct ② directly ③directly ④ direction

Page No.525

6. particular

adj. 特别的，特殊的，挑剔的

常用结构：

be particular about 对……挑剔

in particular = particularly 特别地，特殊地

He loves playing football in particular.

他特别喜欢踢足球。

易混辨析

particular/especial/special

particular 特别的，特殊的，挑剔的,强调与众不同的，特定的，个别的。

especial 特别的，主要的，突出的。 强调的是重要性，有“优越，好感”之意。

special 专门的，特殊的，特别的。强调的是事物特有的性质，性格或专门的目的，用途。

On that particular day, the door was opened. (强调平常没有这种现象) 这扇门在特别的一天被打开了。

Page No.526

You need not be on diet but be on regulation especial for overfull.

你不必节食，但要饮食有度，不能吃得过饱。

You need a special tool to finish the task.

要完成这一任务，你需要专门的工具。

高手过招

单句改错 （原创）

①She is very particular for her clothes.

②These documents are of particularly importance.

答案: ①for→ about/over ② particularly → particular

Page No.527

重点短语

7. badly off

穷的；处境差的；缺少的

I am quite badly off recently.

最近我经济上很拮据。

联想拓展

be badly off for sth. 需要（某物）;（某物）供应不足

worse off 境况更差；更穷困

well off 富裕；处境好

（比较级：better off 境况更佳）

His health is worse off than before.

他的身体状况比以前更糟糕了。

The refugees are badly off for blankets, and even worse off for food. 难民需要毯子, 更需要食物。

Capitalism can make you well off.

资本主义可以让你变得富裕。

Page No.528

高手过招

单项填空

①Though he was , he looked down upon those who had a lot of money.

A. well of B. rich

C. badly off D. well–known

②We shouldn’t complain about being poor because many families are much .（2010・01・安徽泗县一中检测）

A. better off B. badly off

C. well off D. worse off

①解析：选 C。句意为:虽然他很穷，但是他看不起有钱人。badly off 在句中意为“穷困的”。

②解析：选 D。句意为：我们不应该抱怨贫穷，因为有许多家庭更加穷困。根据“贫穷”可以排除 A、C 两项，much 修饰比较级，所以选 D。

8. cut off

切断（水电的供应）；中断，打断（谈话）；隔离

The water supply has been cut off for several days in the city. 这个城市的水供应已经被切断好几天了。

They were cut off in the middle of their conversation on the phone. 他们在通电话时被中断了。

Page No.529

When the city was cut off, everyone knew that the total defeat was certain. 当城市被包围时，大家都知道失败已成定局。

联想拓展

cut down 砍倒；消减，降低

cut in 插嘴

cut across 取捷径；走近路

cut up 切碎

高手过招

单项填空

①He was in hospital for six months. He felt as if he

was from the outside world.

（2010・01・山东莱州检测）

A. cut out B. cut off

C. cut up D. cut through

②With the electricity , all the machines stopped. （原创）

A. cut off B. cut down

C. was cut off D. was cut down

①解析：选 B。考查短语辨析。cut out 删去；cut off 隔离，常与 from 连用；cut up 切碎；cut through 抄近路。由句意可知，选 B 项。

②解析：选 A。the electricity 与 cut off 之间呈被动关系，所以用“with+ sth.+ done”的结构。

Page No.530

9. pick out

挑出；选出；辨认出某人或某物

She was picked out from hundreds of applicants for the job.

她是从数百位申请人里挑选出来做这份工作的。

He picked out his sister from the crowd.

他从人群中认出了他的姐姐。

联想拓展

pick at 小口地吃

pick on 选择；（作为挨骂或受罚对象）挑中（某人）

pick up 捡起；改良；进步；增加；获得；收听

高手过招

单项填空

① This picture was taken a long time ago. I wonder if you can my father.

（2010・01・陕西宝鸡检测）

A. find out B. pick out

C. look out D. speak out

②—How are you getting on with your business, Tom?

—I’m glad to say it is . （2010・1・陕西师大附中检测）

A. picking up B. making up

C. taking up　　D. turning up

Page No.531

①解析：选 B。表示从人群中“辨认出”，用 pick out，故选 B。

②解析：选 A。pick up 在句中意为“有起色，好转”。

重点句型

10. Not that Charlie’s own life was easy!

然而卓别林自己的生活也并不容易!

not that 并非，倒不是说，用于句首或短语之前，表否定含义。

Who were you with last night? Not that I care, of course.

你昨晚和谁在一起？我当然不计较。

高手过招

完成句子　　（原创）

①Kate had lost some weight—　　(我倒不关心).

(我并不是说这个很要紧), but how did you spend the money I gave you?

答案: ① not that I care　② Not that it matters

Page No.532

11. They are so hungry that they try boiling a pair of leather shoes for their dinner. 他们饿极了，只好煮了一双皮鞋来充饥。

so...that 如此……以至，在句中引导结果状语从句。 so 为副词，后跟形容词或副词。

易混辨析

so...that/such...that

so...that 中的 so 为副词，后跟形容词或副词。

such...that 中的 such 为形容词，后跟名词（名词前可有形容词修饰），当that 前面有 many, much, few, little 等词修饰时，只能用 so,不可以用 such。

He became so angry that he couldn’t speak.

他变得很生气，以至说不出话来。

It was such a sunny day that we could go out for a walk.

天气如此的晴朗，所以我们可以出去散步。

Page No.533

联想拓展

①当 little 意为“小”的时候，要用 such,不用 so。

It is such a little sheep that it can’t run fast.

这只绵羊如此的小以至于不能跑快。

②that 前面是单数可数名词，并且前面有形容词修饰时，两者可以互换使用。

He is such a kind man that we all like him.

=He is so kind a man that we all like him.

他如此善良以至于我们都喜欢他。

③so...that 中的 so 位于句首时，要求后面的主句进行部分倒装。

So fast did he run that I couldn’t catch up with him.

他跑得如此快以至于我赶不上。

高手过招

单项填空

There is　　little water that it is not enough for　　many people.（2010・01・山东青岛模块检测）

such; so　B. so; so　C. such; such　D. so; such

解析：选 B。此处 little 意为“少”，所以第一个空要用 so 修饰；第二个空后面为 many 修饰名词，故也用 so。

12. Then he cuts off the leather top of the shoe as if it were the finest steak.
然后他把皮鞋上端的皮子切下来，就像是切下一块最好的牛排。
句中 as if 引导状语从句。as if 从句中的内容有时有主观想像或夸大性的比喻，此时从句中常用虚拟语气。若从句中的动词与主句谓语动词同时发生，则从句谓语动词用过去时；若先于主句则用过去完成时，若后于主句，则用过去将来时。
He looks as if he were an artist.(同时)
他看起来就像是一位艺术家。
He speaks English so fluently as if he had studied English in America.(先于)他说英语如此流利好像他在美国学过一样。
He learns English so hard as if he would go to the USA.(后于)他学英语如此努力就像他会去美国一样。
Page No.535
高手过招
完成句子
①那个小孩和我们谈起话来就像成年人似的。
The child talked to us .
②他的行为就像知道了事实似的。
He acts as if .
答案: ①as if he were an adult
② he had known the fact
Page No.536
Unit 4 Body language
Page No.537
核心单词
1. represent
vt. 象征；表示；作为……的代表；代表；（尤指以绘画，雕刻等）表现；描绘；描写
The red lines on the map represent railways.
这张地图上的红线代表铁路。
He was picked out from the whole class to represent them at the other school.
他被挑选出来作为全班同学的代表，到另一所学校去。
She represents her mother as the kindest mother in the world. 她把她的妈妈描绘成世界上最好的母亲。
联想拓展
representative n. 代表；众议员
adj. 典型的；有代表性的
representation n. 表现；陈述；代理
Page No.538
易混辨析
represent/stand for/on behalf of
represent 指“代表某人/某个团体/政府等，或指某种标志代表什么，某物表现/描绘的是什么”。
stand for 通常指字母、数字、符号等代表/象征什么。
on behalf of 指代表/代替某人，只能作状语。
高手过招
选词填空(represent/representation/representative) （原创）
①Each colour on the chart a different department.
②The were all amazed by what had happened in the factory.
③Our company has no in Africa.
答案: ①represents ② representatives ③ representation
Page No.539

2. approach

vt.接近，走进;着手处理

n. 接近，临近；方法，途径

He approached me with stealthy steps. 他悄然走近我。

Our approach scared the butterfly and it flew away.

我们走近时把那只蝴蝶吓跑了。

易混辨析

approach/way/method/means

approach 除了意为“方法”之外，还有“接近”的意思。an approach to(介词)“……的方法”。

way 构成 in the way“用这种方法”;the way to do/the way of doing (to 为不定式)“做某事的方法”。

method 构成 with a method “用一种方法”。

means 意为“方式，方法”。单复数同形，构成 by means of “通过……方法”。

Page No.540

He put up a new approach to the difficulty.

他提出了解决这个困难的新方法。

Can you tell me the way to work out the maths problem?

你能告诉我做那道数学题的方法吗？

We should improve our teaching method, with which we can make ourselves understood better.

我们应该改善我们的教学方法，用这些方法，可以使学生更好的理解我们。

We arrived there by means of plane. 我们坐飞机到达那儿。

高手过招

(1)单项填空

There is no easy to the mathematics. （原创）

A. Way B. mean C. method D. approach

(2) 单 句 改 错 （原创）

①His approach for the problem is special and proves good.

②All the approaches of the airport were blocked by the police.

(1) 解析：选 D。approach 方法，可与 to 连用，意为“……的方法”;means 方式，不可与 to 连用;methods 与 with 搭配;way 与 of 或 to 连用，to 为不定式。

(2) ①for→to。解析：approach 在句中意为“方法；步骤”，后面与介词 to 连用。

②of→ to。解析：approach 在句中意为“入口；通路”，后面与介词 to 连用

Page No.541

3. defence

n. 保卫，防御；防卫设备;(被告的)答辩；辩护

常用结构：

in defence of 保卫……；为……辩护

注意： defence 后接“入侵者”或“造成危害者”时用介词 against；若后接“被保护者”时用介词 of。

The forest will act as a defence against desert dust.

森林能起到防御沙漠尘土的作用。

This fort was once the main defence of the island.

这座堡垒曾经是这个岛上主要的防御设施。

The defence of the accused was rather weak.

被告人的辩护软弱无力。

Page No.542

联想拓展

defend v. 防护；辩护；防守；保卫

The wall was built to defend the road from being washed away by the sea.

建这个围墙是为了保护这条路不被海水冲垮。

易混辨析

defend/protect/guard/preserve

这四个词都有“使安全或保持安全状态不遭受危险、攻击或伤害”的意思，但它们之间还有些差异。

defend 含有“采取措施抵制进攻”的意思。

protect 常含有“提供安全的方式来驱开不适、伤害或进攻”的意思。

guard 含有“看守”的意思。

preserve 含有“采取措施维护……的安全”的意思。

Page No.543

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①那位警察看守犯人。

The policeman the prisoners.

②当那只狗攻击我时，我拾起一根木棍自卫。

When the dog attacked me, I picked up a stick and myself.

③他戴着墨镜以防他的眼睛被强烈的太阳光晒伤。

He wears sunglasses to his eyes from the strong sunlight.

答案:①guarded ② defended ③ protect

Page No.544

4. close

adv. 接近地；靠近地；紧密地（常与介词 to 连用）

adj. 近的；接近的；(关系)密切的；严密的；(尤指比赛)势均力敌的

v. 结束；关闭；关

His house is close to the factory. 他家靠近这个工厂。

易混辨析

close/closely

close 是指距离、场所、地点等的“接近，靠近”，可以说是一种实际意义上的“接近”。

closely 是指抽象意义上的“接近”，多用比喻意义，有“亲密地；严密地；仔细地”等含义。由 close 和 closely 这种意义上的区别，我们可以很轻松地区别 high/highly；wide/widely；

Page No.545

deep/deeply 等一类词。带 －ly 的副词往往用作抽象意义或比喻意义，而不带 －ly 的副词多用作实际意义。

The thief came close to him and stole the money from his pocket. 小偷走近他，把他口袋里的钱偷走了。

Good teaching and good testing are closely related.

出色的教学工作与完善的测试制度密切相关。

高手过招

选词填空（close/closely） （原创）

①It was very cold, so the little girl stood to her mother.

②The policeman examined the room to find the lost jewels.

答案: ①close ②closely

Page No.546

5. curious

adj.好奇的，感兴趣的；奇异的，不同寻常的

The foreign tourists were surrounded by the curious children. 外国游客被一群好奇的孩子包围着。

He is suffering from a curious disease.

他患了一种奇怪的病。

常用结构：

be curious about 对……感到好奇

be curious to do 急于做/极想做
联想拓展
curiosity n.好奇curiously
adv. 好奇地out of
curiosity 出于好奇
I asked out of mere curiosity.
我只不过是出于好奇问问罢了。
Page No.547
高手过招
单项填空
I was to find out what he said. （原创）
Strange B. amusing C. curious D.conscious
解析：选 C。考查形容词词义辨析。strange 奇怪的;amusing 令人快乐的;curious 好奇的；conscious 有意识的。
6. likely
adj. 可能的（表示可能性很大时，可用 most，very 修饰 likely）
常用结构：
It is likely that sb. ...
=sb.is likely to do...某人可能做某事
not likely (表示坚决不同意)绝不可能；绝对不会
Page No.548
易混辨析
possible/probable/likely
possible 表示客观上潜在的可能性，也许实际发生的可能性并不大；一般不用表示人的词作主语。只有 possible 后面可以接 for sb. to do sth.，而 likely 和 probable 都不能。
probable 表示有几分根据的推测，比 possible 表示的可能性大。换句话说，probable 的“有可能”，是指有实际的依据或逻辑上合乎情理。一般不用表示人的词作主语。
likely 强调表面上看来有可能，与 probable 意思接近，有时可以互换，但 likely 常暗示从表面迹象来判断，probable 则指经过权衡正反两方面的理由后相信某事是真实的或大概会发生。只有 be likely 前面的主语可以是人，而 possible 和 probable 则不能。
It is possible to transmute one form of energy into another.
把某种形态的能量改变成另一种形态的能量是可能的。
Page No.549
It is possible that the first people crossed into Austalia from Asia on a great land bridge.
第一批从亚洲进入澳大利亚的人可能是从一座巨大的陆地桥上过去的。
It is probable that our school will buy a new computer.
我们学校很有可能买一台新电脑。
It is probable that she forgot.她很可能是忘了。
It’s very likely that he’ll succeed.
=He is very likely to succeed. 他极有可能成功。
I’m hardly likely to finish it within a week.
我不可能在一周内把它干完。
Page No.550
高手过招
单项填空
①I can’t go out. It is very that Mary will ring me tonight. （2010·山东聊城模块检测）

A. Likely B. possibly C. probably D. perhaps

②Tom was to win first prize in the competition, but his illness made him miss the chance.
（2010・01・浙江台州检测）

Possible B. probable C. likely D. Maybe

①解析：选 A。四个选项中只有 likely 是形容词且符合习惯搭配，其他三个选项都是副词。

②解析：选 C。maybe 是副词，故可排除 D 项。句子是人作主语，故只能选 likely。

Page No.551

7. ease

n. 安逸；舒适

v. 减轻（痛苦，忧虑）；缓和；放松

The injection brought her immediate ease.

她经过注射后，疼痛消失了。

常用结构：

at ease 感到舒适而无忧虑；感到放松，不拘束

with ease 毫不费劲地，轻而易举地

We are at ease for your safe return.

见您平安归来，我们感到放心了。

The question was so easy that I could answer it with ease.

这个问题如此简单以至于我回答得很轻松。

Page No.552

高手过招

(1)单项填空

He felt completely ease Mary. （原创）

A. at; with B .at ; to C. with; with D. to; to

(2)完成句子 （原创）

①听说孩子们都很安全，她才放心。

Her mind knowing that the children were safe.

②她不断练习奏鸣曲直到熟练为止。

She practiced until she could play the sonata .

(1) 解析：选 A。句意为：他和玛丽在一起时感到完全放松。根据句意可知，选 A。

(2)①was at ease ②with ease

Page No.553

重点短语

8. lose face

丢脸，丢人

You’ll lose face if you don’t keep your promise.

你如果没有遵守诺言，会丢脸的。

When Tom failed to beat his opponent, he felt he had lost face with his friends.

汤姆没能打败对手，这让他在朋友面前很丢脸。

联想拓展

lose heart 泄气；灰心

lose one’s heart to 爱上；钟情于

lose weight 减 肥lose

one’s way 迷路Page

No.554

lose one’s life 丧生

lose courage 丧失勇气

高手过招

lose sight of 看不见

高手过招

单项填空

In order not to , he spent the whole night preparing for the speech of next day.

（2010・01・浙江嘉兴一中检测）

A .lose courage B. lose heart

C. lose face D. lose voice

解析：选 C。句意为：为了不丢面子，他花了整个晚上准备第二天的演讲。lose face 丢人，丢脸。

重点句型

9. I saw several young people enter the waiting area looking around curiously.

我看见几个年轻人走进了等候区，好奇地向四周张望。

looking around 是现在分词作伴随状语。

Page No.555

联想拓展

伴随状语的特点

它所表达的动作或状态是伴随着句子谓语动词的动作而发生或存在的。

He sat in the armchair, reading a newspaper.

他坐在扶手椅里读报纸。

All night long he lay awake, thinking of the problem.

他整夜躺在床上睡不着，思考着那个问题。

高手过招

单项填空

①“You can’t catch me!” Janet shouted, away.（原创）

A. Run B. running C. to run D. ran

②He glanced over at her， that though she was tiny；she seemed very well put together.

（2010・01・浙江宁波检测）

A. noting B. noted

C. to note D. having noted

Page No.556

①解析：选 B。running 作伴随状语, 因为逻辑主语 Janet 与 run 之间呈主动关系，且 run 与谓语动词 shouted 的动作同时发生，所以用现在分词作伴随状语。

②解析：选 A。noting 作伴随状语，意为“注意到；发现”。因为 he 与 note 呈主动关系，且 note 与谓语动词 glanced 的动作同时发生，所以用现在分词作伴随状语。

10. Not all cultures greet each other the same way, nor are they comfortable in the same way with touching or distance between people.

各种文化背景下人们互致问候的方式不尽相同，身体接触和相互间距离的程度也并不一样。

这个句子是由一个中心词组 not ...nor ...连接起来的，意为“既不……也不……”。部分否定通常由 not+all/both/each/everybody/everything 等来表达。

温馨提示

并不总是用这种方式表达部分否定，有时也以一般否定句的形式出现，即把否定主语的 not 与谓语动词放在一起。Not every Welshman speaks Welsh.

并不是每个威尔士人都说威尔士语。

Page No.557

All is not gold that glisters. 发光的并不都是金子。

若要表示全部否定，则应用相应的表示全部否定的否定词。

all→ none （一个人也没有、没有任何东西）;

both→ neither （两个都不）;every→ no(没有，不是)；everyone→ no one(没有人);everything→ nothing(什么也没有)等。

高手过招

I like neither of the books. 这两本书我都不喜欢。

高手过招

单项填空

—I think the whole class is going on a field trip next Friday.

—I’m not sure. has paid the transportation fee. （ 2010·01·江西九江检测）

A. Not everyone B. No one

C. None of them D. Neither of us

解析：选 A。B 项与 C 项为全部否定，意为“没有一个人”，故排除。D 项意为“两者都不”，不符合语境。A 项表示部分否定，意为“不是所有人”，符合上下文语境，故选 A。

Page No.558

Unit 5 Theme parks

Page No.559

核心单词

1. theme

n. 题目；主题（曲）

易混辨析

theme/topic/title/subject

theme 意为“主题；论题；题目”。演讲、文章或艺术作品的题目，主题，主题思想；乐曲的主题，主旋律。

topic 意为“话题，主题”。指人们普遍感兴趣或对之持有不同观点，可供讨论的题目，也可指名篇作品的主旨或某个章节、段落的要点。

title 意为“标题；题目”。指文章、书、绘画等作品的名称，还有“头衔；称呼”之意。

subject 意为“题目；主题”时，指在讨论、信件、书本中写的或讨论的事、人、观点或事件。侧重发言人或作者等暗示的主旨，含义较广。

Page No.560

高手过招

选词填空(theme/subject/title/topic)

①This is a one‐man show of paintings whose was the dullness of modern life.

②It was the book’s eye‐catching that helped me make up my mind to buy it.

③The of your article is very good, but your spelling and style must be improved.

④What books have you read on this ?

答 案 :①theme ②title ③topic ④subject

Page No.561

2. various

adj.各种各样的

There are various colours to choose from.

有各种各样的颜色可供选择。

There are various ways of cooking an egg.

鸡蛋有多种不同的做法。

联想拓展

variously adv.（情况、时间、处所等）不同地

vary v.变化；不同

variety n.(pl.) varieties 变化，多样性

He was variously described as a hero, a genius and a fool. 他被说成是英雄、天才、笨蛋，不一而足。

Leaves vary with the seasons. 叶子随着四季的变化而改变。

Page No.562

易混辨析

various/different

various 表示“各种各样的”，主要指彼此不同且种类繁多，强调“异”而且“多”。

different 表示“不同的”，指的是种类不同、不相像、不一样等，强调“异”。

高手过招

单项填空

①He had a wide of interests, which made him a popular person that all of us like to make friend with.（2010・01・江西吉安检测）

A. world B. variety C. various D. difference

②Geographers usually get information by comparing and contrasting places on the earth.（2010・01・湖北黄冈检测）

similar B. various C. distant D. famous

①解析：选 B。考查固定搭配。a wide variety of ...意为“跨度极广的；多种多样的”。

②解析：选 B。句意为：地理学家通常通过比较和对照地球各种各样的地方来获得信息。 similar（相似的）只揭示了两者的相同、相似，未对应不同；而 distant (遥远的)与 famous(著名的)均与“相似与不同”不符，故排除 A、C、D 三项。

Page No.563

3. advance

v.前进；推进；进展

n.前进；发展

Our soldiers advanced bravely towards the enemy.

我们的战士勇敢地朝着敌人挺进。

The enemy’s advance was stopped. 敌人的推进被阻止。

常用结构：

in advance=ahead of time 预先;提前

advance on/towards sb./sth. 向某人/物前进

advance in sth. 改进/改变某物

联想拓展

advanced adj. 高级的；先进的

China has become one of the most advanced countries in technology. 中国已成为世界上科技最先进的国家之一。

Page No.564

高手过招

完成句子

①女房东要求预付三个月的租金。

The landlady wanted three months rent .

②英国是一个发达的工业化国家。

England is country.

答案: ① in advance ② an advanced industrial

4. admission

n. 允许进入；入场费；门票；承认

Admission to Beijing University depends on examination results. 北京大学的入学以考试成绩为主。

Admission to the concert costs 30 dollars.

音乐会的门票是 30 美元一张。

He is a coward by his own admission.他承认自己是个胆小鬼。

Page No.565

admit v. (admitted; admitted) 准许进入；录取；承认

be admitted to 被录取到……

admit doing sth. 承认做某事

高手过招

单项填空

Nowadays ， more and more students are admitted key universities every year.

（2010·01·湖北武汉测）

In B. to C. on D. for

解析：选 B。be admitted to 意为“被录取到……”。

5. swing

vt. &vi. 摇摆；摆动

n. \[C\]秋千；摇摆

His arms swung/He swung his arms as he walked.

他走路时摆动着手臂。

The girl sat on a swing, swinging back and forth.

Page No.566

那个女孩坐在秋千上，前后摇摆。

常用结构：

swing around/round 突然转向相反方向

swing sb. from sth. to sth. (使某人)突然改变观点或情绪等

高手过招

完成句子

①她左右晃腿。

She her legs .

②她突然生气地转过身来。

She on her angrily.

答案:①swung; from side to side ②swung around/round

重点短语

6. no wonder

难怪；怪不得

No wonder he is not hungry, he has been eating sweets all day. 难怪他不饿，他一整天都在吃糖果。

No wonder you’re so experienced, you have worked here for ten years. 怪不得你这么有经验，你在这里已经工作 10 年了。

Page No.567

联想拓展

wonder vi.&vt. 感到惊异；(对)……感到奇怪；想要知道

n. ［U］ 惊奇；惊叹；［C］奇迹；奇观；奇事

It is a wonder that ...真想不到，令人惊喜的是……

wonder that … 感到奇怪，觉得惊讶

wonder whether (if)/when/why/how ...

想知道是否/什么时候/为什么/怎么……

He wondered why people built ugly homes, when they could have beautiful ones.

他很奇怪为什么人们本可以造出漂亮的房屋，而偏偏建造出丑陋的房子来。

It is a wonder that he remained alive after dropping from the roof of a ten–story building.

他从一幢十层楼的顶上摔下来，但仍然活着，真是个奇迹。

no doubt/no wonder

no doubt 是 there is no doubt ...的省略说法，表示“……毫无疑问”。

no wonder 是 It is no wonder that ...的省略说法，表示“怪不得，难怪……”。

Page No.568

高手过招

单项填空

—Brad was Jane’s brother!

— he reminded me so much of Jane!

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

A. No doubt B. Above all

C. No wonder D. Of course

解析：选 C。no wonder 意为“难怪”，上句句意为：布拉德是珍妮的哥哥。所以下一句应为“难怪他们长得像”。

7. come to life

复活；苏醒；变得活跃；恢复生气

I love to watch everything come to life in spring.

我喜欢看到春天万象更新。

In a few minutes Tom suddenly came to life.

过了一小会儿，汤姆突然苏醒过来。

The quiet girl has come to life since she worked as a saleswoman.

Page No.569

那个少言寡语的姑娘自从当上售货员后变得活跃了起来。

联想拓展

bring sb./sth. to life 使某人/某事苏醒；使生动；使活泼

come out 出现；出版；结果是

come to 加起来总共有(共计)；谈到;涉及;突然想到

come up with 提出；想出

come about 发生;产生

come across 偶遇；偶然发现

The doctor brought the patient to life after a few minutes treatment. 经过几分钟的治疗，医生让这个病人苏醒过来。

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①春天来临，万物复苏。

Spring is here and everything .

②鲜花可以使沉闷的房间恢复生气。

Flowers can a dull room back .

答案: ①comes to life ②bring; to life

Page No.570

重点句型

8. Whichever and whatever you like, there is a theme park for you! 无论你喜欢哪一个，不管你喜欢什么，都会有一个适合你的主题公园！

whichever 不管哪一个；任何一个。可以引导名词性从句，也可以引导让步状语从句。

Whichever dictionary you want to buy, I’ll pay for it.

无论你想买哪本词典，我都愿意付款。(引导让步状语从句)

You can choose whichever you want.

你想要哪一个，就挑选哪一个。

Page No.571

易混辨析

whichever/whatever

这两个词的意思不同，whichever 意为“无论哪个；无论哪些”；whatever 意为“无论什么；凡是……的事物”。

whichever/which

whichever 可以引导名词性从句或让步状语从句，which 是个疑问词；用在疑问句中，或作关系代词，引导定语从句。

no matter which/whichever

no matter which 只能引导让步状语从句；而 whichever 可引导让步状语从句和名词从句。no matter which 可

以用 whichever 代替，但两个同时出现在选项中时，必须选 whichever。

Page No.572

高手过招

单项填空

①We’ll eat at restaurant has a free table. （2010・01・河北南宫中学检测）

A. which B. whatever

C. whichever D. no matter which

②These wild flowers are so special that I would do I can to save them. （2009・12・河北石家庄检测）

A. whatever B. that

C. which D. whichever

①解析：选 C。介词 at 后跟的是宾语从句，故可先排除 D 项，因为 no matter which 只可引导让步状语从句。也可排除 A 项, which 是疑问代词，用于陈述句中不合适。句意为：哪个饭馆有空桌我们就在哪儿吃吧。根据句意可知，选 C。

②解析：选 A。考查关联词引导宾语从句时的用法差异。that 引导宾语从句时，只起连接作用，在从句中不充当任何成分。whichever 意为“无论哪个”；whatever 意为“无论什么”。根据句意可知，选 A。

Page No.573

9. Every area of the park is modelled after life in the days of King Arthur and knights of the Round Table.

园内所有景区都是按照亚瑟王和圆桌骑士生活的时代复制的。

be modelled after 根据……模仿；仿造

His voice is modelled after Xiao shenyang.

他的声音是模仿小沈阳。

The painter modelled his style after that of Picasso.

这位画家的风格是模仿毕加索。

高手过招

完成句子

她以她的妈妈为榜样。

She herself her mother.

答案:models; after

Page No.574

必 修 5

Page No.575

Unit 1 Great scientists

Page No.576

核心单词

1. characteristic

n.特色；特性；典型

adj.特有的，表示特性的；典型的

Kindness is one of his characteristics.

和善是他的特性之一。

A characteristic of the camel is its ability to live for a long time without water.

骆驼的一个特点是不喝水也能活很长时间。

Page No.577

He proved himself a true gentleman and the beauty of his was seen at its best when he worked with others. （2010・01・山东德州检测）

A. Characteristic B. character

C. Appearance D. temper

解析:选 B。句意为：他证明自己是个真正的绅士，和别人一起工作的时候，他的性格总表现出最好的一面。character 作名词时，表示“性格；特点”，一般是不可数名词；characteristic 是可数名词，常用复数形式，表示“总的特点”。

易混辨析

character/characteristic

character n.性格，品质（本身具有的）；角色，人物；字体，字符

characteristic n. 特点，特征（用以区别于其他事物的）

高手过招

单项填空

Page No.578

2. defeat

vt.击败；打败；使（计划、希望）落空

Our team defeated our opponent by 5:0.

我们队以五比零的比分战胜了对手。

He was defeated in his plan.他的计划失败了。

易混辨析

defeat/conquer/overcome

三个词都含有“战胜”、“击败”的意思。

defeat 指“赢得胜利”，尤其指军事上的胜利，如：defeat the enemy(打败敌人)。

conquer 指“征服;战胜”,尤其指获得对人、物或感情的控制，如：conquer nature（征服自然）。

overcome 指“战胜；压倒；克服”，尤其指“感情”，如：overcome difficulties（克服困难）。

Page No.579

defeat/beat/win

defeat, beat 都表示在战斗或竞赛中“战胜,打败(对手)”,后接竞争对手。如：beat the competitor/the country/the team ...打败对手/国家/团队……

win 也表示“战胜,赢得”,但它的宾语通常是比赛、战争、奖品或表示尊重、崇拜之类意义的词。如：win a race/a battle/a war/a scholarship/a prize/a medal/success/friendship/reward ...赢得比赛/战役/战争/奖学金/奖品/奖章/成功/友谊/奖赏……

高手过招

选词填空（beat/defeat/conquer/win） （原创）

①By not working hard enough you your own purpose.

②Some countries may be but can never be .

③Who is the drum?

④He the first prize in the writing contest.

答案:①defeated ②defeated; conquered

③beating ④won

Page No.580

3. attend

v. 注意；留意；处理(与 to 连用)=do with；

出席；到场；照看；照料=take care=look after

常用结构：

attend school/college 上学/上大学

attend a lecture/meeting 听讲座/出席会议

attend a wedding/ceremony 出席婚礼/参加典礼

attendance n. 出席；出席的人数；伺候；照料

We’ll attend to the problem later. 稍后我们将关注这个问题。

Which doctor is attending you? 哪个医生为你看病?

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①他们在我们不在时管理事务。

②他在这个领域很出名，今晚会有成千上万的敬仰者参加他的讲座。

答案：①They attended our affairs during our absence.

②He is famous in this field, and tens of thousands of fans will attend his lecture this evening.

Page No.582

4. expose

vt.暴露；揭露；使曝光，常与介词 to 连用，表示“使暴露于（日光、风雨等）；受到风险；使面临”。

常用结构：

expose sth./sb./oneself (to ...) 显露或暴露于……

be exposed to 暴露于……

Don’t expose it to the rain/wind.别让它被雨淋/风吹。

The soldiers in the open field are exposed to the enemy’s fire. 空地里的士兵暴露于敌人的火力之下。

The crime of the corrupt officials must be exposed without any reserve. 对贪官污吏的罪行一定要毫无保留地予以揭发。

Page No.583

高手过招

用 expose 的适当形式填空（原创）

①In summer, the sun can be very harmful to your skin.

②The soil was washed away by the flood, bare rock.

答案: ① being exposed to ② exposing

5. cure

vt.&n. 治愈，治疗；常用于“cure sb. of ...”结构中。The doctor cured her of a bad cold.医生治好了她的重感冒。It is possible to cure the sickness.治愈这种疾病是可能的。Page No.584

易混辨析

cure/treat/heal/recover

cure 意为“治疗；治愈”，多用于指药物治疗并治愈某种疾病或改正不良习气。

treat 为日常用语，意为“治疗；医治”，指治疗病人的全过程或活动。

heal 意为“治愈（伤口）；医治”，指治好外伤或烧伤后的部位，使伤口愈合，不用于指治疗感冒等疾病。

recover 意为“痊愈,复原”，主要是指从病中痊愈了，常与 from 连用。

That pill cured my headache.那种药片治好了我的头疼。

That will cure him of his bad habits.那将改正他的坏习惯。

There are only two doctors to treat more than 50 patients.

只有两名医生来治疗 50 多个病人。

The wound on my arm has healed.我胳膊上的伤已痊愈了。

He’s now fully recovered from his bad cold.

他现在已完全从重感冒中康复了。

Page No.585

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①盘尼西林治好了他的肺炎。

Penicillin his pneumonia.

②事故后卡车司机的擦伤得到了治疗。

After the accident, the lorry driver for cuts and bruises.

③他手指上的伤口很快愈合了。

The cut on his finger quickly.

答案：①cured him of ②was treated ③healed

Page No.586

6. absorb

vt. 吸收；吸引；吸收（液体，气体，光，声等）；汲取，理解（知识等）；使全神贯注；吸引（注意等），后常接介词 in/by；合并（公司等）；吞并；常接介词 into；承受；经受。

联想拓展

absorbed adj. 精神集中的

absorbing adj. 十分吸引人的

absorb from sth. 从……中吸收

be absorbed in 专心于，全神贯注于

Cotton gloves absorb sweat. 棉手套吸汗。

So many good ideas! It’s too much for me to absorb all at once. 这么多好主意！我很难一下子完全吸收。

The old man was completely absorbed in the book.

老人全神贯注地读这本书。

The surrounding small towns have been absorbed into the city. 四周的小城镇已并入到这座城市中。

Page No.587

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①那个人因为看报纸太入神而撞到了墙上。 ，the man walked into a wall.

②他们聚精会神地看着电视里的表演，舍不得离开。

They were the show on television that they found it hard to pull away.

答案：①Deeply absorbed in the newspaper

②so deeply absorbed in watching

Page No.588

7. blame

vt.责备；谴责；归咎于

n.责怪；(过失、过错等)责任

常用结构：

blame sb. for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事而指责某人

blame sth. on sb. 因某事而指责某人

sb. be to blame for(doing) sth. 因(做)某事某人应受到谴责

The student blamed the teacher for his failure.

学生因失败而责怪老师。

The careless driver is to blame for the traffic accident happening yesterday.

那个粗心的司机该为昨天发生的交通事故负责。

Who is to blame for the failure?

谁该为这次的失败负责?

温馨提示

be to blame 应负责(无被动形式)

Page No.589

高手过招

(1)单项填空

We all feel it is Jack as well as his wife that for their son’s bad performance at school.

（2010·01·陕西西安检测）

A. are to blame　　B. is to be blamed

C. are to be blamed　　D. is to blame

（2）翻译句子

①看来霍乱的流行要归罪于饮用水了。　　（原创）

②这件事谁也不能怨。

③他指责你玩忽职守。

Page No.590

解析：（1）选 D。句意为：我们觉得对于孩子在学校里的不好表现，除了杰克的妻子外，杰克也有责任。be to blame 是习惯表达方式，要用主动形式表示被动含义。且主语为 Jack，故选 D 项。

(2) ①It seemed that the water was to blame for cholera. ②Nobody is to blame for it. ③He blames you for neglect of duty.

Page No.591

8. link

vt. 连接；联系

n. 环；连接；联系；纽带

常用结构：

link ...to/with　　将……和……连接/联系起来

link up　　连接起来

The highway links Shanghai to/with Beijing.

这条公路连接着上海和北京。

Your story links up with his.

你所说的和他所说的能联系起来。

A lot of links fitted together form a chain.

许多链环连在一起组成链条。

Old friends are a link with the past.

老朋友是连接往事的纽带。

Page No.592

易混辨析

join/connect/combine/unite

join 指的是任何事物的直接连接，连接的程度可紧可松，含有“还能分开”之意。常用结构join ...to, join up。

connect 指的是通过某种媒介物把事物连接起来，事物的特征还保持着，常表示与技术有关的连接以及火车、飞机等实行联运。常用结构 connect ...with/to。

combine 着重指两个或两个以上的人或事物为了共同的目的而结合在一起，结合后原来的部分可能仍不改变，但也可能失去其本性，常用结构 combine ...with。

unite 强调紧密地结合成一体，含极难分开之意,常用结构 unite ...with。

Please join this pole to that one.

请把这根竿子和那根竿子接起来。

This flight connects with New York one.

这班飞机在纽约可接上另一趟航班。

We should combine theory with practice.

我们应该理论联系实际。

Page No.593

高手过招

翻译句子　　（原创）

①这两个城镇由一条铁路连接起来。

②这些事件之间都有一些微妙的(subtly)联系。

答案： ①The two towns are linked by a railway.

②These events are all subtly linked together.

Page No.594

重点短语

9. put forward

提出(意见、建议)；推荐；提名；将表拨快

He put forward a better plan.

他提出了一个更好的计划。

Can I put you/your name forward for golf club secretary?

我推荐你（提名让你）担任高尔夫球俱乐部的秘书好吗？

He puts forward several interesting plans.

他提出了几项令人感兴趣的计划。

It’s an explanation often put forward by our friend.

这是我们的朋友经常做出的解释。

联想拓展

put in 打断；插嘴；进港

put off 推迟；延期

put on 穿；上演

put away 放好

put down 写下

put on weight 发福；长胖

put out 生产；扑灭

put up 举起；张贴

put back 放回，送回

Page No.595

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

At the meeting, he his plan. （原创）

A. looked forward to B. put forward

C. took forward D. came forward

（2） 完成句子 （原创）

她正为选举制度改革提出一些建议。

She is some proposals for electoral reform.

解析:(1) 选 B。句意为:在会议上,他提出了他的计划。put forward 提出。

(2)putting forward

Page No.596

10. look into

调查；了解；研究；朝……里面看

联想拓展

look around/round/about 环顾四周

look after 照顾；照料

look back 回头看

look back to/upon/on 回顾；回想

look down upon 俯视；轻视

look for 寻求；寻找

look forward to 盼望

look on 旁观

look on/upon...as 把……看作

look out	往外看；注意；当心

look through 透过……看；浏览

look up 抬头看；查阅

Page No.597

温馨提示

look into 与 one’s face/eyes 等连用，表示“注视”。

He looks into her face with great interest.

他饶有兴趣地注视着她的脸。

Let’s look into the problem together and figure out a way to solve it.让我们一起来研究这个问题，想出解决的办法。

Page No.598

高手过招

单项填空

① In other words I should not watch TV, or your shoulder at other people while we are talking together.（2010·01·江西上高检测）

A. look out B. look into

C. look at D. look over

②There was a fire in the hotel. The is now being looked .（2010·01·山西太原五中检测）

A. reason; through B. reason; into

C. cause; through D. cause; into

解析: ①选 D。考查短语辨析。look out 向外看；look into 调查；look at 看；look over 从……上看过去。

②选 D。cause 的意思是“起因”；look into 的意思是“调查”。

Page No.599

11. apart from

除……之外；脱离开；此外

Apart from a few faults，he is a trustworthy teacher.

除了少数的几个缺点外，他是个值得信赖的老师。

Apart from being too large, the trousers don’t suit me.

除了太长，这条裤子的款式也不适合我。

There can be no knowledge apart from practice.

没有知识能脱离实践。

Page No.600

易混辨析

apart from/except for/except/besides/but for/in addition to/except that

apart from 表示“除……外（别无）”时相当于 besides 和 except for,但 apart from 还有“除……以外（还）”之意。另外，apart from, except for 都可用于句首，但 except 不能。

except“除……”（不包括其后的宾语），besides“除了……还”（包括其后的宾语）。另外，besides 还可以作副词,表示“并且，而且”。

but for 表示“如果不是由于……”之意（=If it were not for...或 If it had not been for...）。

in addition to 相当于 besides，表示“除……之外，还有”（包括除去内容在内）。

except that 后面跟句子，用来表示理由或细节。

Page No.601

高手过招

（1）单项填空

English, the speaker also has a good command of Russian and French.（2010·01·河北石家庄检测）

A. Except B. Except for

C. Beside D. Apart from

（2）用 apart from/except for/except/except that/besides 填空（原创）

①We go there every day Monday.

②He is a good man his bad temper.

③Your article is good there are some spelling mistakes.

④ the cost, it will take a lot of time.

⑤ that, everything goes well.

Page No.602

(1)解析:选 D。 apart from 相当于 besides，意思是“除……外，还有……”。except 表示“除……，不包括在内”，从后面的 also 看，应用 besides 或 apart from。

(2)①except ②except for/apart from

③except that ④Apart from/Besides

⑤Apart from/Except for

12. make sense

讲得通；有道理；有意义(反义词组 make no sense)

Your story doesn't make sense to me.

你编的故事我听不明白。

It makes good sense to take good care of your health.

照顾好你的身体是明智的。

Page No.603

联想拓展

lose/recover one's sense=be out of one's sense

失去/恢复知觉;丧失/恢复理智

bring sb. to one's sense 使某人苏醒过来

come to one's sense 苏醒过来

make sense of 理解；明白

make no sense 没有道理；没有意义

in a/one sense 从某种意义来说

in all sense 从任何意义上说

in no sense 绝不是；绝非

There is no sense in doing sth.做某事没有道理。

Page No.604

高手过招

单项填空

①What he says makes no to her.

（2010·01·山东济南模块检测）

A. Care B. sense

C. Interest D. meaning

② The poem is hard to understand. Can you make of this poem?

（2010·01·辽宁大连检测）

A. Idea B. knowledge

C. Sense D. Understanding

解析: ①选 B。make sense 为固定搭配，意思是“起作用，有意义”。

②选 C。make sense of sth.“理解或弄懂困难的或无法理解的事物”。另外，sense 还可作动词，意为“意识到(某事物)；感觉到”。

Page No.605

重点句型

13. So many thousands of terrified people died every time there was an outbreak.

每次暴发（霍乱）时，都有大批惊恐的老百姓死去。

本句是一个复合句，every time 引导的是一个时间状语从句，意思是“每当……”，相当于“when”。另外，此状语从句中还有一个“there be”结构。So many thousands of terrified people died 是主句。

Page No.606

联想拓展

类似的时间状语归纳：

each time 每次；每当

at the time 在那个时候；（当……）的时候

any/next/the first/the last time 意为“任何/下一次/第一次/最后一次”。

the moment, the minute, the second, the instant, immediately, directly, instantly 等都可以引导时间状语从句，意为“一……就……”。

She went to see him directly she got the letter.

她一收到信就去看他了。

Immediately the meal was over, he switched on the radio.

一吃完饭他就把收音机打开了。

She came to the scene the moment she heard of the accident.她一听说发生了事故，就立刻赶到了现场。

The last time we talked he said he needed another two days.上次我们谈话时他说他还需要两天。

Page No.607

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

She said to me, “I’ll tell you the result of test I know it.” （2010·01·陕西师大附中检测）

A. Because B. the moment

C. After D. though

（2） 同义句转换 （原创）

I gave Mary the money when I saw her.

I gave Mary the money I saw her.

解析：（1）选B。the moment 意为“一……就……”，相当于as soon as。类似用法的连词还有: the minute/instant; instantly/immediately/directly 等。

(2)the minute/the moment

Page No.608

14. He placed a fixed sun at the centre of the solar system with the planets going round it ...

他把太阳固定在太阳系的中心位置上，而行星则围绕着太阳转……

此句中“with+宾语+宾语补足语(v. ing/v. ed/to do/adj./adv./prep. phrases)”构成的复合结构在句中常用作状语，表示方式，原因或条件等。

With the old man leading the way, we started towards the forest.在这位老人的带领下，我们开始向森林进发。

She ran and ran with beads of sweat running down her face.

她不停地奔跑，汗珠顺着脸颊流下来。

Page No.609

高手过招

翻译句子

①老师微笑着走进教室，身后跟着一群小朋友。

②随着考试的结束，我们的假期开始了。

答案：①With a group of children following, the teacher came into the classroom with smile.

②With the test finished, we began our holiday.

Page No.610

Unit 2 The United Kingdom

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

核心单词

1. convenience

n.便利;方便

联想拓展

inconvenience n. 不方便

convenient adj. 便利的;适宜的

conveniently adv. 便利地，方便地

常用结构：

at one’s convenience 在某人方便的时候

for one’s convenience(of) 为了某人的方便

for convenience’s sake 为了方便起见

make a convenience of 利用……

Page No.612

We bought this house for its convenience.

我们买下这所房子是为了方便。

Please come at your convenience.

请在你方便的时候来。

Gas is one of the conveniences the newly built apartment building provides.

这幢新造的公寓大楼装有煤气等设备。

Page No.613

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

Come and see me whenever .

（2010·01·江苏南京检测）

A. you are convenient B. you will be convenient

C. it is convenient to you D. it will be convenient to you

（2） 翻译句子 （原创）

①你如果方便就来看看我。

②你明天方便开始工作吗?

解析：(1) 选 C。convenient 的主语不可以是人，排除 A、B 两项。whenever 引导的是时间状语从句，其谓语动词要用一般现在时，不可以用一般将来时。

(2)①Come and see me if it is convenient to you.

②Will it be convenient for you to start work tomorrow?

Page No.614

2. arrange

v. 安排；排列；协商

常用结构：

arrange for 安排,准备

arrange with sb. about sth. 与某人商定某事

The child was required to arrange his shoes in a neat row by his parents.家长要求这个小孩把鞋放成整齐的一排。

He was arranged by his family to marry a girl of his own class.

他家里安排他娶一个门当户对的女孩。

Page No.615

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①你得在会议开始前把书架上的书整理好。

②他们在秘密地为一场盛大的婚礼做准备。

答案：①You should finish arranging the books on the shelves before the meeting.

②They are arranging for a big wedding secretly.

Page No.616

3. delight

n. 快乐;高兴;喜悦

vt.使高兴； 使欣喜

常用结构:

take/find/have delight in 喜爱;以……为乐

to one’s delight 令某人高兴的是……

delight in 嗜好；因……感到快乐

Sometimes an old movie can still delight the people who have a sweet memory for the old days.

有时一部旧片仍能给怀念旧时光的人们带来喜悦。

The movie Xi Yangyang & Hui Tailang gave delight to millions of children.电影《喜羊羊与灰太郎》使千万小朋友获得快乐。

Page No.617

高手过招

(1)单项填空

, the bookseller gave him something else as a present.（2010·01·安徽合肥检测）

A. To the boy’s delight B. To the boy’s surprising

C. To the boy’s sadness D. To make the boy’s happy

（2）翻译句子 （原创）

①他的表演使观众感到满意。

②唱歌是她的主要爱好。

③年轻人喜欢旅行。

解析：(1) 选 A。考查固定搭配。to one’s delight 意为“使某人高兴的是”，常用的名词有 surprise, excitement, disappointment, joy 等。

(2)①He delighted the audience with his performance.

②Singing is her chief delight.

③The young have/take/find delight in travels.

Page No.618

4. debate

vi.& n.辩论；讨论

常用结构：

debate with sb.about/over/on/upon sth.与某人辩论某事

under debate 在辩论中

open a debate 开始辩论

易混辨析

debate/argue

debate 指各自陈述理由，强调公正、公开，气氛较为激烈。

argue 意为“说理；争论”，通常指提出理由来支持自己的观点，并企图说服别人，着重使用说理的方式来论证主张。

After much debate，we decided to move to Beijing.

我们经过充分讨论后决定迁往北京。

They debated about the proposal for three days.

他们为那项计划争论了三天。

I debated the idea in my mind until I feel asleep.

我入睡前一直在思考这个问题。

After a long debate the bill was passed in Congress.
经过长时间的辩论后，议案在国会获得通过。
Page No.619
（1） 完成句子（原创）
(他们正在讨论)whether to go to the mountain or go to the seaside.
（2） 翻译句子
The debate was launched by the Government.
答案：(1)They are debating
(2)这场争论是由政府发起的。
5. influence
n. 影响，有影响的人(或事)
vt. 影响，改变
常用结构：
have an influence on/upon/over... 对……有影响
under the influence of 受到……的影响
Page No.620
易混辨析
influence/affect/effect
influence 指通过说服、举例等对行动、思想、性格等产生不易觉察到的,潜移默化的影响。
affect 指产生的影响之大足以引起反应,着重“影响”的动作,有时含有“对……产生不利影响”的意思。
effect 指“实现”、“达成”,着重指“造成”一种特殊的效果。
My teacher’s influence made me study science at college.
受我老师的影响，我上大学学了理科。
He was influenced by Michelangelo later on.
他后来受到米开朗琪罗的影响。
Africa’s climate is strongly influenced by the continent’s position on the globe.
非洲的气候受到它在地球上位置的强烈影响。
Fear affects some people by making them powerless to act.
由于害怕，有些人束手无策。
Page No.621
高手过招
（1） 完成句子 （原创）
Probably we (彼此影响).
（2） 用 influence/affect/effect 的适当形式填空 （原创）
①This article will my thinking.
②This book a change in my opinion.
③ by a high school biology teacher, he took up the study of medicine.
答 案 ：(1)influence each other (2)①
affect ②effected ③Influenced
Page No.622
6. available
adj.可获得的；可购得的；可找到的
常用结构：
available to sb. 能够被某人所用/为某人所获得的
available for sth. 能够为……所用的/能够用于……的
available to do sth. 能够用于某目的的
Tickets are available from the box office.

售票处可以买到票。

He is not available for the job.
他不适合做这个工作。
TV sets are available in any department stores.
电视机在任何一家百货公司里都能买到。
Page No.623
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①The swimming pool is available only in summer.
②Is the manager available for the moment?
答案：①这个游泳池只在夏天开放。
②经理此刻有空吗？
重点短语
7. consist of
由……组成(用于主动语态)=be made up of
联想拓展
consist in 主要是；主要在于
consist with 与……一致/与……并存
温馨提示
以上词组都不能用于被动语态。
Our class consisted of fifty students at that time.
当时我们班有 50 个学生。
Page No.624
高手过招
用适当的介词填空 （原创）
①The United Nations Organization consists over 160 nations.
②Our greatest happiness consists serving the people.
③Health doesn’t consist smoking.
答案：①of ②in ③with
Page No.625
8. break away (from)
突然逃掉或离开；断绝往来；挣脱（束缚）;脱离；改掉(旧习惯)；破除(旧做法)
The thief broke away from the policeman.
小偷从警察那里逃脱了。
He broke away from all his old friends.
他同所有的老朋友断绝了往来。
You must break away from such habits.
你必须改掉那些习惯。
联想拓展
break down 坏掉；打破
break into 闯入；打断(话题)
break into pieces 成为碎片
break out 爆发
break through 突围；突破
break up 分解;结束；放假
break in 闯入；插话
break off 中止；中断高手过招
Page No.626

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

①News reports say peace talks between the two countries with no agreement reached.（2010·01·河南镇平检测）

A. have broken down　　B. have broken out

C. have broken in　　D. have broken up

②He his engagement just before the wedding.（2010·01·河南郑州检测）

A. broke out　　B. broke away from

C. broke off　　D. broke up

（2） 用适当的介词或副词填空（原创）

①Thieves broke the house when the couple were watching TV.

②A quarrel broke between them.

③The soldiers broke the enemy’s defence works.

④The school has broken for the holidays.

⑤Dad would occasionally break with a suggestion.

⑥Tom broke the door of our classroom last week.

Page No.627

解析：(1)①选 A。句意为：据报道，两国和平谈判失败,没有达成任何协议。因此，该空应填 have broken down, 表示“(和平谈判)失败”。

②选 C。考查短语辨析。break off(=cease suddenly, discontinue)突然中断，符合句意“就在婚礼前他解除了婚约”。

(2)①into ②out ③through ④up

⑤in ⑥down

9. leave out

省去；遗漏；不考虑

You have left out the most important word in this sentence.

你在这一句中遗漏了最重要的一个单词。

Don’t leave me out when you invite people to your party.

当你邀请人们去参加聚会时，别把我漏掉了。

Page No.628

联想拓展

leave for　　动身到(某处)

leave alone　　不管；撇下……一个人

leave aside　　搁置

leave behind　　遗忘；遗留高手过招

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

The printer has left two lines from this paragraph.（2010·01·河南洛阳西安检测）

A. off　　B. out　　C. over　　D. with

（2） 用适当的介词或副词填空（原创）

①They were left in the wilderness.

②He was asked to make up the information left by the leader.

解析：(1) 选 B。考查词组辨析。leave off 表示“停止、中断或脱掉”；leave out 表示“漏掉， 忘掉，省略”；leave with 常表示“把……留给……”。句意为：印刷的人在这一段中漏掉了两行。

(2)①alone②out

Page No.629

重点句型

10. There is no need to debate any more about why different words are used to describe the four countries.

没有必要再去争论为什么要用不同的词去描述这四个国家。

there is no need to do sth.没有必要做某事

联想拓展

there is no doubt that.....是毫无疑问的

there is no possibility that.....是没有可能的

there’s no point in doing sth.　　做……没用/没意义

It’s no good/ no harm/ no use doing sth.做某事没有好处/害处/用处

there’s no use/no good/ no point（in）doing sth.

做某事没有用处/好处/意义

It is no wonder that...难怪……

There is no need to worry at all.根本没必要着急。

There is no point in complaining; they never take any notice.埋怨没用，人家根本不理睬。

Page No.630

高手过招

翻译句子　　（原创）

①我们有必要再去那一趟吗?

②没必要给他写封信告知这个消息。

答案：①Is there any need for us to go there again?

②There is no need to write to him and inform him the news.

Page No.631

11. It seemed strange that the man who had developed communism should have lived and died in London.这似乎很奇怪：这位发展了共产主义的人竟然在伦敦生活过，并且在伦敦去世。

在“It is/was necessary/important/strange/incredible”及“It is a pity/a shame/no wonder”之后由 that 引导的主语从句中用“should+v.”的形式，should 可省略。此处“should have+v. ed 分词”结构用来表示“竟然已经……;居然已经……”，表示说话人对已经出现的事态感到“惊奇、惊喜、怀疑”等。

It is necessary that he（should）be sent there at once.

有必要马上派他到那里去。

It is strange that the wheel should turn so slowly.

真奇怪，这个轮子竟然转动得如此慢。

It is a great pity/shame/that he should be so conceited.

真遗憾，他竟会这样自高自大。

I’m surprised that he should have been so foolish.

我很奇怪，他竟然会这么傻。

Page No.632

高手过招

单项填空

①—I think I’ll give Bob a ring.

　—You　　. You haven’t been in touch with him for ages.（2010·01·浙江嘉兴检测）

A. Will　　B. may　　C. have to　　D. should

②　　fired, your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off.（2010·01·浙江绍兴检测）

A. Would you be　　B. Should you be

C. Could you be　　D. Might you be

解析：①选 D。should 意为“应该”，多表示某事宜做、应当做或必须做，强调主观方面。根据所提供的情景“You haven t been in touch with him for ages”可知，由于多年没有联系，所以应该给 Bob 打电话。will 意为“将”。may 意为“可以”。have to 意为“不得不”，表示因客观原因不得不做某事。

②选 B。考查虚拟条件句的倒装。虚拟条件句的从句部分含有 were, should 或 had 时，可省略 if，再把 were,

should 或 had 移至从句的句首，变为倒装。句意为：即使你被解雇了，医疗保障和其他福利也不会立刻中

断。

Page No.633

Unit 3 Life in the future

Page No.634

核心单词

1. impression

n.印痕；印记；印象；感想

常用结构：

have an impression of sth. / doing sth. 对(做)某事有印象

make an impression on sb. 给某人留下印象make

no impression on 对……无影响 / 效果give sb.a

favorable impression 给某人留下好印象an

impression of one’s foot 某人的脚印

Your performance gave me a strong impression.

你的表演给我留下了很深的印象。

What I said made no impression on him.

我的话对他不起作用。

Page No.635

联想拓展

impress v.留下印象

impress sth.on / upon one’s mind 把……牢记在心上

高手过招

单项填空

She spoke very confidently because she wanted to make a great on her employer at the first time.

A. Influence B. pressure

C. Impression D. Effect

解析:选 C。make an impression on sb. 给某人留下印象。

Page No.636

2. lack

v.&n. 缺乏；缺少的东西

注意：lack 作名词时，后常接 of。lack 作动词时，既可作及物动词，也可以作不及物动词，作不及物动词时，后常接 for 或 in。lack 不用于被动语态。

常用结构：

lack sth. 缺少某物

lack for sth. 缺少；需要

for/through lack of... 因缺乏……

no lack of... 不缺乏

a/the lack of..... 的缺乏

He didn’t go there because he lacked courage.

他没去那里，因为他缺乏勇气。

The plant died for lack of water.植物因缺水而死。

They lacked for nothing.他们无所需求。

联想拓展

lacking adj. 匮乏的；不足的；没有的be

lacking in 缺乏（品质、特点等） She

seems to be lacking in common sense. 她

似乎缺乏常识。

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

高手过招

(1)单项填空

Though money, his parents managed to send him to university. （2010・01・陕西宝鸡检测）

A. Lacked B. lacking of

C. Lacking D. lacked in

(2)完成句子 （原创）

①因为缺乏兴趣这次旅行被取消了。

The trip was cancelled through .

②他缺乏信心。

He .

解析:(1) 选 C。考查分词作状语。his parents 与 lack 之间呈主谓关系，所以应用现在分词作状语；lack 作动词时不与 of 搭配，所以答案选 C。

(2)①lack of interest ②lacks confidence

Page No.638

3. sight

n. 视力；视觉；看见；光景，奇观；名胜

常用结构：

lose sight of 看不见；忘记；失去

catch sight of sth./sb. 看见某物/人

at first sight 初看之下；乍看起来

at (the) sight of 一看见就……

out of sight 看不见

be in sight 看得见，在眼前

Out of sight, out of mind. 眼不见,心不烦。

Last summer we had seen the sights of Beijing.

去年夏天我们游览了北京的名胜。

Crusoe was frightened at the sight of a man’s footprint.

克鲁索看到一行人的脚印，他非常害怕。

Page No.639

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

For miles around me there was nothing but a desert, without a single plant or tree .

（2010・01・陕西商洛检测）

A. in sight B. on earth

C. at a distance D. in place

（2） 完成句子 （原创）

我们失去了许多珍贵的动物。

We several precious animals.

解析:(1) 选 A。in sight 为固定搭配，意为“看得到”；on earth 用在疑问句或否定句中，用来加强语气，意为“究竟；到底”；at a distance 意为“在远处”。

(2)have lost sight of

Page No.640

4. require

vt. 需要；要求；命令

常用结构：

require that+主语+(should)+动词原形 需要某人做某事

require sb. to do sth.　　命令某人做某事

require sth.（of sb.） 要求（某人）某事

I will do everything that is required of me.

凡是要求我的事，我都会办到。

The situation requires that I（should）be there.

形势需要我去那里。

Page No.641

温馨提示

require 后接宾语从句时，宾语从句必须用 should do 的虚拟语气，其中 should 可以省略。

另外，表示“需要”，且是物作主语时，后接动词 ing 形式的主动形式表示被动含义，可以等于不定式被动形式；在这一点上，need 和 want 用法相同。

The house requires mending.

=The house requires to be mended. 房屋需要维修。

All cars require servicing regularly.

所有汽车都需要定期检修。

They required him to keep it a secret.

他们要求他对这事保密。

Page No.642

高手过招

单项填空

①In competition, women are required some of their exercises music.（2010・01・山西平遥检测）

A. perform; to B. to perform; to

C. performing; with D. to perform; by

② All the people present agreed that the matter required .（2010・01・山西太原检测）

A. to look into B. being looked into

C. to be looked D. looking into

解析: ①选 B。be required to do sth.意为“被要求做某事”。第二个空的 to 是介词意为“随着，伴着”。

②选 D。require, want, need 表示“需要”，当其主语是动作的承受者时，其后的宾语常用动词不定式的被动形式或动名词的主动形式。

Page No.643

5. assist

vt.&vi. 帮助；援助；参与;出席

常用结构：

assist sb. in/with sth. 帮助(某人)某事

assist sb. in doing sth. 帮助(某人)做某事

assist sb. to do sth. 帮助(某人)做某事

assist with 帮助(照料，做)；在……上给予帮助

I am willing to assist you whenever there is an opportunity.

有机会我愿随时帮你。

I’m afraid I can’t assist you, you have to go and see the manager. 我恐怕帮不上忙，你得去找经理。

The headmaster assists with a lot of things when free.

有空时校长会帮忙做很多事。

Page No.644

高手过招

用 assist 的相关短语填空 （原创）

①The young nurse was very nervous when she in her first operation.

②A team of nurses　　the doctor　　performing the operation.

③She employed a woman to her the housework.
④Good glasses will you read.
答案：①was assisting ②assisted; in
③assist; with ④assist; to
Page No.645
重点短语
6. take up
从事；占(时间、空间、注意力等)；继续
This table takes up too much room. 这张桌子太占地方。
She has taken up a job as a teacher. 她当上老师了。
This chapter takes up where the last one off.
本章继续上一章的内容。
联想拓展
take off 脱掉（衣服等）；起飞；打折；作为折扣而减价
take over 接管；获得对……的控制或管理
take apart 拆开；分开后将……分成许多部分
take for 把……视作；误认为
take...for granted 认为……是理所当然
take down 写下；记下
take back 收回(诺言)
Page No.646
高手过招
单项填空
① In Singapore, a southeastern Asian country, the Chinese people the largest percentage of its population, so you can speak Chinese there. （2010・01・安徽利辛检测）
A. make up B. take up
C. hold up D. turn up
②Since the 2008 Olympic Games Beijing has taken a new look everywhere. （2010・01・山西四校检测）
Up B. on C. over D. Off
解析: ①选 A。考查短语辨析。make up 编造; 弥补; 组成; 构成；take up 拿起来; 占据(时间或空间)；hold up 阻止；turn up 开大; 调高; 出现。
②选 B。考查短语辨析。take on 呈现; take up 拿起; 从事; take off 脱下; take over 接管。
Page No.647
7. sweep up
打扫；横扫
These students are sweeping up dead leaves.
这些学生们正在扫(拢)落叶。
He ran forward and swept her up into his arms.
他跑上前去一把将她抱在怀里。
The whole country was swept up in the excitement.
全国上下都沉浸在兴奋的气氛中。
We’d better sweep up all the bits of broken glass quickly.
我们最好快点把玻璃碴子扫干净。
联想拓展
sweep aside 放/堆到一边; 不予理会
sweep away 扫清;消灭;彻底消除

sweep off	扫清；吹走；大量清除

sweep out 扫掉; 清除

sweep over 将……一扫而光; (某种感情)掠过（……的心头）

Page No.648

高手过招

用 sweep up 的适当形式填空 （原创）

①After the party, the house needed .

②The leaves were into the air by the strong wind.

答案：①sweeping up ②swept up

重点句型

8. This is similar to the “jet lag” you get from flying,...

这就与你乘坐飞机会产生时差反应相似，……

Page No.649

联想拓展

when flying 是 when you are flying 的省略形式。在有些表示时间、条件、方式或让步的状语从句中，如果谓语包含动词 be，从句的主语又和主句的主语一致，或者主语是 it，通常可以把从句中的主语和 be 动词省略。

When asked where’s the toilet, the waitress showed the way politely to the guest.

当被问及厕所在哪里时，服务员非常有礼貌地给客人带路。

Until finishing the homework, the child was allowed to watch the cartoon film.

直至完成作业，小孩才允许看卡通片。

If necessary, you can call help from the police.

有必要时，你可以向警方求助。

Page No.650

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①即使被打死，他仍然保守秘密。

②可能的话，到机场来接我。

③过马路时，孩子们被要求停下观望，再手牵手通过。

答案: ①Though beaten to death, he still kept the secret.

②If possible, please come to meet me at the airport.

③When crossing the road, the children are required to stop to look around and walk hand in hand.

Page No.651

9.....some chairs rose from under the floor as if by magic.

……一些椅子就像变魔术一样从地板下面升了起来。

注意：from 后面有时可接介词短语或 where 从句。

from under the floor 从地板下面

联想拓展

from behind the door 从门后面

from under the table 从桌子底下

From under the tree the man kept an eye on the sheep.

那个老人从树下留意着他的羊。

Page No.652

高手过招

单项填空

His head soon appeared out of the window, he saw nothing but trees.

（2010・01・山西大同检测）

Where B. which C. there D. from where

解析:选 D。该句是非限制性定语从句，尽管先行词可以表示地点，但句中强调目光的发出地，所以应用介

词 from+关系副词 where。

Page No.653

Unit 4　　Making　the　news

Page No.654

核心单词

1. eager

adj. 热切的；渴望的

联想拓展

eager 的用法

表示渴望得到某物，后接介词 for, after, about；

表示渴望做某事，后接不定式；

后接 that 从句时，从句谓语一般都用“should＋动词原形”的虚拟语气结构。

We are all eager for/after/about knowledge.

我们都求知心切。

He is eager for/after/about success. 他渴望成功。

He is eager to go abroad. 他渴望出国。

She is eager to see her parents. 她渴望见到她的父母。

He’s eager that they (should) come to see him.

他很希望他们来看他。

Page No.655

易混辨析

eager/keen/anxious

eager 指“以巨大的热情渴望实现愿望或达到目标的”，有时也指“由于其他感情影响而表现急不可耐的”。

keen 指“对某人、某物怀有极大兴趣或热情的”。

anxious 指“热切地希望实现愿望，并因顾虑愿望落空而心情不安，感到焦虑的”。

Page No.656

高手过招

（1）单项填空

He wasn ’ t with what he had gained and wanted to get more.（2010・01・河北唐山检测）

A. Proud　　B. content　　C. eager　　D. anxious

(2)完成句子（原创）

①She (渴望) new skills so that she can be qualified for the job.

②He took a medical examination two days ago and now he (渴望) know the result.

解析:(1) 选 B。be content with 意为“对……感到满足”。

(2)①is eager for ②is eager to

Page No.657

2. meanwhile

adv. 此时；同时；其间

n. 同时(=meantime)

meanwhile 意为“同时，在此期间”，作为副词和名词，表示在某动作或情况发生或存在期间将可能发生另一件事。它不用于说明人或事物的另一面。

常用结构：

in the meanwhile　　在此期间（=in the meantime）

They’ll be here soon. Meanwhile we’ll have some coffee.

他们即刻就到，我们现在先喝点咖啡。

Meanwhile, my tongue was busy searching out the hole where the tooth had been.
与此同时,我的舌头正忙于寻找被拔牙齿的伤口。
Meanwhile, two other actors had carried two large food baskets to a shady spot under some trees.
与此同时,另外两位演员把两个盛着食物的大篮子拿到树下荫凉的地方。
Page No.658
高手过招
（1） 单项填空
Mother went shopping; , I cleaned the house.
（2010・01・河北邯郸检测）
A. While B. when
C. and when D. meanwhile
(2)完成句子 （原创）
简在写信，而与此同时帕特正在看电视。
Jane was writing a letter Pat was watching TV.
解析:(1) 选 D。从本句的结构来看，空白处不需要连词，所以选项 A、B、C 均不正确。
(2)and meanwhile
Page No.659
3. case
n.事；案例；情形；场合；状况；事实；实情；案件；诉讼；病症；病例
This is a case of stupidity, not dishonesty.
这只是个愚蠢的例子，并非不诚实。
The police have a clear case against the prisoner.
警察有充足的事实对付那个囚犯。
In this case I’m acting for my friend Mr Smith.
我在这次诉讼中代表我的朋友史密斯先生的利益。
常用结构：
as is often the case 这是常有的事
as the case stands 在目前的情况下；就现有的情况而论
in this/that case 如果是这样/那样的话
in any case 无论如何；总之
in case+(that) clause 假使；如果；万一
in case of 万一……；如果发生……
(just)in case 以防(万一) (引导虚拟语气)
in most cases 在大多数情况下
Take a hat with you in case the sun is very hot.
倘若太阳照射得很厉害，你就把帽子戴上。
In case of rain they can’t go. 万一下雨，他们就不能去了。
Page No.660
高手过招
完成句子（原创）
①As you can imagine, everything in our school is (状况良好).
② (如果) snow, you must put on your heavy coat.
③You shouldn’t speak in class. (如果那样的话), you can’t hear what the teacher says.
④You shouldn’t get angry with your teacher (无论如何).
⑤ (决不) can you hurt our feeling as well as friendship.
Page No.661

⑥The naughty girl made a face in class yesterday,

(正如往常那样).

⑦You should take some measures

(根据具体的情况).

⑧ Everything here is normal (就目前的情况而言).

⑨Your article is well written (就所有情况而言).

⑩The little girl hid the story book (以防) her teacher would see it.

答案：①in good case ②In case of

③In that case ④in any case

⑤In no case ⑥as is often/usually the case

⑦as the case may be ⑧as the case stands

⑨in all cases ⑩in case

Page No.662

4. deny

vt. 否认；否定；拒绝相信；拒绝

He said that I had stolen his bicycle, but I denied it.

他说我偷了他的自行车，可是我否认了。

He denied his country. 他背弃了自己的国家。

He denies his wife nothing. 他对他的妻子有求必应。

常用结构：

deny oneself 自制；克己；舍弃

deny doing sth. 否认做过某事

deny sb. sth. 拒绝给某人某物

deny+that 从句否认……

Page No.663

易混辨析

deny/decline/refuse/reject

deny 指“坚定地否认某事为真实的”。

decline 指“较正式地、有礼貌地谢绝”。

refuse 是普通用语，指“坚决、果断或坦率地(不友善地)拒绝”。

reject 指“以否定、敌对的态度而当面拒绝(通过抛弃或送走、专横地拒绝)”, 主语可以是人或物，后接名词，不能接动词不定式。

He asked her to go to the movies three times, but each time she rejected him.他三次约她去看电影，但每一次都被拒绝了。

Page No.664

高手过招

用 deny/decline/refuse/reject 的适当形式填空 （原创）

①The patient’s body the heart transplant.

②She to have lunch with us, saying that she wasn’t feeling well.

③He doesn’t dare to the charges, does he?

答案：①rejected ②declined ③deny

Page No.665

5. cover

vi. （常与 with 连用）盖；覆盖

vt. 包括;涉及;报道

n. 遮盖物；盖子；罩子 （图书、杂志的）封面

The town covers 5 square miles. 这座小镇占地 5 平方英里。

I want to cover 100 miles by dark. 我想在天黑之前走完 100 英里。

The review covered everything we learned last term.
这次复习包括上学期我们所学的全部课程。
常用结构：
be covered with 盖满；覆满；充满（羞惭，慌乱等）
from cover to cover 从头到尾一页不漏
under the cover of 在……掩护下；打着……的幌子
cover up 完全盖住; 盖好
She covered the table with a cloth. 她用一块布把桌子罩起来。
Page No.666
高手过招
单项填空
① The wild flowers looked like a soft orange blanket the desert. （2010・01・四川雅安检测）
A. Covering B. covered
C. Cover D. to cover
②—May I have a talk with one of your sports reporters?
— Sorry, but all of them are out to the main events of the day. （2010・01・吉林通化检测）
Get B. find C. cover D. Search
解析: ①选 A。a soft orange blanket 与 cover 之间存在主谓关系，因此要用现在分词作定语，它相当于定语从句 which/that covered...而不定式作定语一般表示将要发生的动作，故不能误选 D。
②选 C。 get 得到；让；find 找到; cover the events 采访事件; search 调查；只有 C 项符合题意。
Page No.667
重点短语
6. concentrate on
集中；全神贯注于
I can’t concentrate (on my studies) with that noise going on. 吵闹声不绝于耳, 我无法集中精力（于学习）。
We must concentrate our efforts on improving education.
我们必须致力于改进教育工作。
Having failed my French exams, I decided to concentrate on science subjects. 我因法语考试不及格而决心专攻理科。
This firm concentrates on the European market.
这家公司把工作重点集中在欧洲市场。
常用结构：
concentrate one’s mind/attention on （upon）
=fix one’s attention on=focus on=be absorbed in
把注意力集中在
Page No.668
联想拓展
put one’s heart into sth. 全身心地做某事
devote oneself to sth./doing sth. 把自己奉献给……
concentrated adj. 极度的; 紧张的; 浓缩的
concentrated study/hate/effort
紧张的学习/强烈的仇恨/专心致志的努力
concentrated fire 集中的火力
concentrated food 压缩食品
Page No.669

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①(集中精力)your study if you want to catch up with the class.

②He （投身于）helping the people in need. He set a good example for us.

答案：①Put your heart into/Concentrate your mind on

②devoted himself to

Page No.670

7. accuse ...of...

因……控告/指责……

I don’t think anyone can accuse him of not being frank.

我看谁也不能说他不坦率。

You can’t accuse Stephen of robbing the bank. He was round at my house all evening.

你不能控告斯蒂芬打劫银行，他整晚都在我家。

易混辨析

accuse/charge

accuse, charge 这两个动词都有“控诉，指控”之意，但它们后面所搭配的介词不同。

accuse v.指控，控诉，常与介词 of 连用。

charge v.可以指因为小错而受的责备，也可指因违法而受到控告，与介词 with 连用。

Page No.671

高手过招

单项填空

The policeman stopped him when he was driving home and him of speeding.

（2010・01・浙江杭州检测）

Warn B. accused C. charged D. Deprived

解析:选 B。warn sb. of... 警告、告诫某人……;accuse sb. of...控告某人犯有……；charge sb. with... 指控某人犯有……罪；deprive sb. of sth.剥夺某人某物。

Page No.672

重点句型

8. What do you imagine will be your future occupation? Suppose you were to be a journalist for China Daily, do you know what kinds of jobs they have?

你认为你未来的职业是什么？假设你即将成为《中国日报》的记者，你知道他们要做哪些类型的工作吗？

“be to+动词原形”的常见用法：

①表示“按计划、安排即将发生某事或打算做某事”。

②指该做或不该做的事情（语气上接近于 should, must, ought to, have to），表示命令、吩咐或禁止的语气。

③指能或不能发生的事情（接近于 can, may），表示可能性。

④表示不可避免将要发生的事情，后来注定要发生的事情。

Page No.673

⑤用于条件从句，意为“如果想……，设想”（接近 if ...want to/if ...should）。

We are to meet at the school gate. 我们将在学校门口见面。

You are to go to bed and keep quiet, kids. Our guests are arriving in less than 5 minutes.

孩子们，你们必须上床睡觉，不准吵闹。我们的客人五分钟之内就要到了。

How am I to know what has become of him?

我怎么知道他的遭遇？

His discussion with his new boss,Hu Xin, was to strongly influence his life as a reporter.

他同新上司胡新的讨论对他的记者生涯必将产生很大的影响。

If you are to succeed, you have to make more efforts.

如果你想成功的话，你必须更加努力。

Page No.674

高手过招

单项填空

Greater efforts to increase agricultural production must be made if food shortage avoided.

(2010·01·安徽舒城检测)

A. is to be B. can be

C. will be D. has been

解析:选 A。句意为：如果要避免食品短缺，就必须作出更大的努力来增加农业产量。条件状语从句中，要用一般现在时表示将来，故排除 C 项；B、D 两项与句意不符。“be+不定式”可用于条件状语从句中，表示“如果想……”。

Page No.675

9. A footballer was accused of taking money for deliberately not scoring goals so as to let the other teamwin.

一个足球运动员被控受贿，故意不进球，好让另一队赢球。

易混辨析

so as to/in order to

so as to 意为“为了，目的是”，后接动词原形，在句中作目的状语，其否定形式为 so as not to do sth.，可以转化成 so that 引导的目的状语从句。

in order to 也可以作目的状语，但是 so as to 和 so that 引导的目的状语不可置于句首，且 so that 目的状语从句的谓语动词常含有 can,could,may,might 等词。

She got up early in order to（so as to）catch the early bus.

＝In order to catch the early bus, she got up early.

为了赶上早班车，她起得很早。

He spoke loudly so as to be heard.

他大声说话，以便让人听到。

Page No.676

高手过招

单项填空

The brilliance of his satires was make even his victims laugh.

（2010·01·安徽淮北检测）

so as to B. such as to C. so that D. such that

解析:选 B。句意为：他的讽刺太生动了，以至于被讽刺的人都笑了起来。so 修饰形容词，such 修饰名词或作表语。so that 和 such that 常引导结果状语从句，所以排除 C、D 两项。

Page No.677

Unit 5 First aid

Page No.678

核心单词

1. aid

n.& vi. 帮助；援助；资助

vt.&n. 帮助;援助;救助

They aided flood victims. 他们援助遭受水灾的灾民。

They aided in solving the problem. 他们帮忙解决这个问题。

常用结构:

first aid 急救

aid sb. 帮助某人

aid sb. with sth. 帮助某人(做)某事

in aid of 支持;为……筹措

aid sb. in (doing) sth. 在……方面帮助某人

联想拓展

表示一般意义的“帮助”或“援助”时，aid 是不可数名词；表示具体意义的“助手”、“辅助用品”时，aid是可数名词。如：A dictionary is an important aid in learning a new language.(字典是学习一种新语言的重要工具)。用作动词时，搭配为 aid sb. to do sth.帮助某人（做）某事(其中的 to 不可省略)，也可用于 aid sb. in doing sth.帮助某人(做)某事。

易混辨析

aid/help/assistance

aid 表示经济或其他方面给予的帮助或援助，多指强者(或足够者)援助弱者，多用于团体。

help 指给人精神或物质上的帮助，强调受助者的需要，有利于达到一定的目的或目标。

assistance 多指个人给予道义、知识、物质等方面的帮助，所提供的帮助往往只起辅助作用。

Page No.680

高手过招

单句改错 (原创)

①The family lived on government aids for two years.

②We may travel on/under the aid of a good map.

③We，ve aided him finish the work ahead of time.

答案：①aids→aid ②on/under→with

③finish→to finish 或 in finishing

Page No.681

2. injury

n. 损伤；伤害

Many common injuries happen every day in the home.

家庭中每天都有许多常见的意外伤害。

常用结构:

do sb. an injury	伤害某人
be an injury to sb./sth.	伤害；危害某人/某事
escape injury	免受伤害
repair injury	赔偿损害
serious／severe injuries	重伤
a slight injury	轻伤

In the crash he suffered severe injuries to the head and arms.

在事故中他头部和双臂受了重伤。

Page No.682

易混辨析

injure/wound/hurt

injure 指人在意外事故中受到的伤害,用于无生命物体的损坏，更多用于表示对人的某个部位的损伤。

wound 指利器或子弹对肉体造成的伤害。是出血的、严重的伤，特指战场上的受伤。也指感情受伤。hurt 指的伤害与 injure 同样严重，也可指较轻的疼痛，常指因不小心而引起的痛苦或意外地受到伤害。hurt 也可指对人的感情的伤害。

Your remark may injure her pride.

你的话也许会伤她的自尊。

Blood gushed from his wound.血从他的伤口涌出。

Hurt other people, hurt yourself.害人害己。

Page No.683

高手过招

选词填空(injure/hurt/wound) （原创）

①Ten soldiers were killed and thirty serious .

②He was deeply by her dishonesty.
③I my back lifting that box.
④In the traffic accident ten were killed and eight were .
⑤She felt at your words.
⑥The bullet him in the shoulder.
答案：①wounded ②hurt ③hurt ④injured
⑤hurt ⑥wounded
Page No.684
3. situation
n. 形势;处境;事态;局面;位置
易混辨析
situation/state/condition
situation 指一定时期内总的情况、形势、事态，亦可指国际、国内形势，是可数名词。
state 用单数形式表示人或事物的情况及状况，如外貌、心理、外观等方面，可与不定冠词连用，常用于 in a state of 或 in a... state。
condition 的单数形式表示人或物本身的状况，在这个意思上与 state 相近；而复数形式则指事物之外的环境与情况，与 circumstances 意思相近。
When he later grew to dislike Eliza, he faced a difficult situation.
当他接下来对伊丽莎的讨厌与日俱增的时候，他陷入了一种困难的境地。
Page No.685
After that I give the students various situations and they make up sentences about them.
从那以后，我提供给学生各种各样的情境，他们依照这些情境造句。
His business is in a good state. 他的生意很好。
The condition of the house was so bad that nothing could make it safe to live in.
房屋的条件太差了以至于不能安全地住在里面。
温馨提示
situation 与 condition, occasion, point, case 一样，后常用 where, in which 引导定语从句。
Can you imagine a situation where/in which you can use the word?你能想像出可以使用这个单词的语境吗？
Page No.686
高手过招
用适当的关系代词或关系副词填空 （原创）
①He，s got himself into a dangerous situation he is likely to lose control over the plane.
②I can ,t think of the situation I meet my father.
③They have to think of a good idea to cope with the situation they face.
答案：①where ②where ③that/which
Page No.687
4. damage
vt.& n. 损害；毁坏
易混辨析
ruin/destroy/damage
ruin 强调毁灭的彻底性，并且是一次性的行动。这种毁灭也许力量不是很大，但其严重性却使其不能修复,它强调的是毁坏的长期结果。
destroy 指通过某种有力的或粗暴的手段使之毁灭或无用，一般不能或很难修复，有时用于比喻意义。
damage 则指对价值和功能的破坏，多用于无生命的东西，一般还可以修复。
The storm ruined the crops. 暴风雨毁坏了庄稼。
The house across the street is in ruins.
街道对面的房子已是一片废墟。

He has destroyed my hope. 他破坏了我的希望。

Page No.688

The earthquake destroyed a lot of buildings.

地震毁坏了许多楼房。

The bridge was damaged by the flood.

那座桥梁被洪水损坏了。

温馨提示

destroy 只能用作动词，而 ruin 和 damage 既能用作动词又能用作名词。

高手过招

单项填空

An earthquake struck this area, a lot of damage. (2010・01・山东青岛二中模块检测)

Making B. causing C. done D. Caused

解析:选 B。make 与 damage 不能搭配使用；“造成损失、损害”用 do/cause damage；此处的动词与前面的句子构成逻辑上的主谓关系，所以需用现在分词作结果状语。

Page No.689

5. present

n.礼物；目前

adj.在场;出席;当前的

v.颁发;授予;赠给

常用结构：

be present at 出席

the present day=today 今天

at present／at the present time＝now 现在

for the present=for the time being 暂时

the present 现在(相当于名词)

present sb. with sth=present sth. to sb. 把某物送给某人

present day attitudes/fashion 现在的态度/流行款式

Page No.690

联想拓展

present 作动词，表示“给予，赠送”之意，常用于 present sth.to sb.或 present sb.with sth.搭配中，此外，present 作动词还有“呈现，显示；阐述，表达；引见”等意思。

①作形容词既可作前置修饰语，也可作表语，常意为“现存的；现在的；在场的；出席的”等。

②作不可数名词时，表示区别于过去或将来的“现在”；作可数名词时，意为“礼物”。

The same problem presented itself to her again.

同样的问题又在她身上出现。

He presented the school with a check for one million dollars.他赠予学校一张一百万美元的支票。

May I present you to my husband?

我可以把您介绍给我丈夫吗?

We learn from the past, experience the present and hope for success in the future.

我们学习过去，体验现在，希望成就未来。

I got many presents for my birthday.我收到很多生日礼物。

Page No.691

高手过招

单项填空

① There are plenty of jobs in the western part of the country.（2010・01・陕西西安二中检测）

A. Present B. available

C. Precious D. convenient

②All the people at the party were all his supporters. （2010・01・江苏南京检测）

A. Present B. thankful

C. Interested D. Important

解析: ①选 B。present 在场的；available 可用的;可得到的;precious 珍贵的;convenient 方便的。根据句意,应选 B。

②选 A。(be) present at 意为“出席、在场”，符合句意。

Page No.692

重点短语

6. fall ill

生病

Hearing the bad news, he fell ill. 听到坏消息后，他病了。

联想拓展

fall behind 落后

fall sick 生病

fall asleep 入睡

fall down 掉下；倒塌

fall in love with ... 爱上……

fall off 脱落；减少；从……上掉下

fall into the habit of ... 养成……的习惯

fall over 跌倒；翻倒；落到……上

fall silent 沉默

Page No.693

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①不久后他就病倒了，而且一病不起。

He soon after and did not recover.

②形势严峻，不进则退。

Given the pressing situation, we must move forward, or we will .

③这家报纸的发行量开始锐减。

The circulation of the newspaper began to sharply.

答案：①fell ill ②fall behind ③fall off

Page No.694

7. in place

在适当的位置；适当

I like everything to be in place.

我喜欢所有的东西都放在原来的地方。

With everything in place, she started the slide show.

一切就绪，她开始放幻灯片。

联想拓展

be in/out of order 有条理/无条理；坏了

be in/out of control 正常/失控

be in/out of danger 有危险/脱离危险

in place of...＝take the place of... 代替；取代

give place to 被……取代；让位于……

out of place 不在适当的位置；不合适

Page No.695

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

His efforts to raise money for his program were because no one showed any intention to take a cent out of their pockets. （2009・湖北）

A. in place B. in sight

C. in effect D. in vain

(2) 完成句子 （原创）

①你可以用木柴来取代煤。

You can use wood coal.

②棉花要取代丝绸。

Cotton is silk.

③你的提议很恰当。

Your proposal is quite .

Page No.696

解析:(1) 选 D。考查介词短语。根据下文“no one showed any intention to take a cent out of their pockets”可知,为集资做出的努力都白费了，故选 in vain(白费力)。in place 在适当位置;in sight 在视线内;in effect 实际上。

(2)①in place of ②taking the place of

③in place

Page No.697

8. make a difference

有很大差别；有很大不同；有很大的关系/影响

Whether he could get the support from his parents made a great difference to the plan.

他是否能得到父母的支持对这个计划的影响很大。

Does it any difference whether he ll attend the meeting?

他出不出席会议有什么区别吗？

联想拓展

make a difference between ...and ... 区别对待……

make some difference to 对…… 有些关系

make no difference to 对……没有关系

make all the difference 关系重大；大不相同

Page No.698

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①这次旅行对他以后的人生很有影响。

②让警察知道一些证据关系重大。

答案：①The travel made a difference to his later life.

②It makes all the difference to inform the policemen of some evidence.

Page No.699

重点句型

9. Remove clothing using scissors if necessary unless it is stuck to the burn.

除非衣服粘贴在烧伤面上，否则都要把衣服脱掉。如果需要的话，可以使用剪刀。

unless 是连词，意为“如果不，除非”。在真实条件句中，unless 引导的肯定条件状语从句，可以和 if...not... 引导的否定状语从句互换。

Unless you change your mind，I won，t be able to help you.

=If you don t change your mind，I won ’ t be able to help you.

除非你改变想法，否则我不能帮助你。

I want you to keep working unless I tell you to stop.

=I want you to keep working if I don’t tell you to stop.

如果我没说让你停，你就得继续干。

注意：unless 不可用于假想的事情，因此当 if...not 引导非真实条件状语从句时，一般不可改用 unless。

Page No.700

高手过招

单项填空

① All the dishes in this menu, otherwise stated, will serve two to three people. （2009・全国Ⅱ）

A. As B. if C. though D. unless

② Don ’ t promise anything you are one hundred percent sure. （2008・浙江）

A. Whether B. after C. how D. unless

③ you have tried it, you can’t imagine how pleasant it is. (2006・北京)

Unless B. Because C. Although D. When

④We don’t keep winning games we keep playing well. (2006・浙江)

Because B. unless C. when D. While

Page No.701

解析: ①选 D。考查状语从句的引导词。句意为：在这份菜单上的所有菜，除非另外说明，会给两到三个人食用。

②选 D。句意为：除非你有完全的把握，否则不要做出承诺。unless 除非。

③选 A。句中 unless 意为“如果不”,可以与 if...not 互换。

④选 B。unless 意为“除非”,强调条件，符合句意。

Page No.702

10. John was studying in his room when he heard screaming.

约翰正在房里学习，突然听到一声尖叫。

此句型中 when 作并列连词,相当于 and then,意为“正当……时，突然”。

常用结构：

be doing...when... 正在做……突然……

had done...when... 刚做了……突然……

be about to do...when... 刚要做……突然……

be on the point of doing sth. when... 刚要做……突然……

Page No.703

高手过招

单项填空

① She had just finished her homework her mother asked her to practice playing the piano yesterday. （2009・福建）

A. When B. while C. after D. since

②We were swimming in the lake suddenly the storm started.

A. When B. while C. until D. before

③I along the street looking for a place to park when the accident .

A. went; was occurring B. went; occurred

C. was going; occurred D. was going; had occurred

解析: ①选 A。由句意可知此处 when 用作并列连词，意为“这时”。②选 A。when 作连词，表示“正在这时”。句意为：我们正在湖中游泳，突然暴风雨来了。③选 C。主句要用过去进行时,表示当时正在路上走着；when 引导的从句多用一般过去时。

Page No.704

选修 6

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

Unit 1 Art

Page No.706

核心单词

1. faith

n. 信任；信念；信心

常用结构：

break one s faith with sb. 对某人不守信用

keep faith with sb. 守信于某人

lose faith in 不再信任

have faith in 相信; 信任

in good/bad faith 真心诚意/虚情假意

Page No.707

高手过招

单项填空

Above all, you should have faith yourself.

In B. with C. of D. For

解析：选 A。have faith in 相信，信任。句意为：首先，你必须要相信自己。故 A 项符合句意

After repeated failure, he lost faith in himself.

不断的失败之后，他对自己失去了信心。

Faith can remove mountains. 信仰能移山。

Never break faith, or you will lose all your friends.

不要背信弃义，否则你将失去所有的朋友。

Page No.708

2. aim

n. 目标；目的

v. &vt. 瞄准; （向某方向）努力

What is your aim in life?

你生活的目标是什么?

常用结构：

take aim (at) 瞄准……

aim at 向……瞄准；旨在，针对

aim high 胸怀大志;心气很高

He aimed the gun at the enemy officer.

他用枪瞄准了敌人的军官。

Our factory must aim at developing new models of machines.

我们的工厂必须致力于研制新型机械。

Page No.709

高手过招

(1)单项填空

①The Hope Project helping build schools in the poor areas.

A. Aims B. aims to

C. is aimed to D. is aimed at

②—What is your in this Olympic Games?

—To win the gold medals.

A. Attention B. idea C. opinion D. aim

（2） 完成句子

①This anti smoking campaign mainly (针对) young teenagers.

②The hunter （瞄准）the lion and fired.

③He （力求）at accuracy.
④He could not （瞄准）straight.
⑤He is leading a life without （目标，方向）.
Page No.710
解析：(1)①选 D。考查 aim 的固定搭配。be aimed at 旨在，目的是。
②选 D。考查词义辨析。attention 注意力；idea 想法；opinion 观点;aim 目的，目标，打算。
(2)①aims at ②aimed at ③aimed ④aim ⑤aims
Page No.711
3. consequently
adv.&conj. 所以，因而(=therefore)
Mr Foster has never been to China. Consequently he knows very little about it.
福斯特先生从未去过中国，所以对中国了解得很少。
联想拓展
be consequent on/upon 因……引起的；是……的后果
consequence n. 后果；结果；重要性
be of consequence 重要的
as a consequence=as a result 结果
in consequence 由于
as a consequence of=as a result of 作为……的结果
in consequence of 由于；作为……的结果
He is a man of great consequence.
他是一个重要的人物。
Page No.712
高手过招
单项填空
The rain yesterday was heavy. , the roads were flooded.
A. As a result of B. As a consequence
C. Consequence D. In consequence of
解析：选 B。此处为“结果”之意，作插入语，应用相当于副词的短语，as a consequence= consequently。
Page No.713
4. possession
n. （尤作复数）所有；财产
常用结构：
in possession of sth. 拥有/占有某物
in the possession of/in one s possession 被……拥有
take/gain/get/have possession of sth. 拥有某物
When his father died, he came into possession of a large fortune. 父亲死后，他拥有了一大笔遗产。
The people had to gather up their few possessions and escape from the hills.
人们不得不收拾仅有的财产，逃下山去。
联想拓展
possess vt. 拥有；具有；支配
Page No.714
高手过招
完成句子
①那幢房子归我所有。
The house is / .

②我们直到签订了所有的文件，才能拥有这座房子。

We can't the house until all the papers have been signed.

答案：①in my possession/in the possession of me

②take possession of

Page No.715

5. concentrate

vt. 集中,浓缩

常用结构：

concentrate on/upon 集中在； 专心于

concentrate one s attention/mind on 注意力集中在……

I quickly concentrated the camera on the children.

我迅速把照相机的镜头对准孩子们。

联想拓展

pay attention to 注意

focus on 集中(注意力,关心)于……

fix one's attention/eyes/mind on

集中精力/目光/心思在……

The children fixed their eyes on the teacher in class.

孩子们聚精会神地听老师讲课。

Page No.716

高手过招

单项填空

All her energies are upon her children and she seems to have little time for anything else.

A. Aimed B. concentrated

C. Guided D. Directed

解析：选 B。concentrate energies upon sth.表示“把精力集中在某事上”。aim 可以与 at 搭配;direct 可以与 to 搭配，表示“把精力集中在……上”。

Page No.717

6. attempt

vt. 尝试；企图

n. 努力；尝试；企图

常用结构：

attempt to do/doing

=try to do/doing

=make an attempt to do/doing 尝试做……

at one's first attempt 某人第一次尝试

in an attempt to do sth. 试图做某事

make an attempt on sb.'s life 企图谋杀某人

attempt at/on sth. 试图做某事

Page No.718

They attempted to finish the task before July.

他们试图在七月以前完成这项任务。

They attempted on the life of the dictator.

他们试图杀死这个独裁者。

He made an attempt on the world record.

他试图打破世界纪录。

Her attempt at poetry was a failure.她尝试写诗但失败了。

易混辨析

attempt/try/manage

attempt 为正式用语，常指一次的而不是连续的尝试，往往暗示这种尝试达不到目的，常包含“冒险”的意义。try 为一般用语，指为成功做某事而付出努力或花费一定代价；后接不定式时表示“试图做某事”；后接动名词时表示“试着做某事”。

manage 表示“成功地做成某事”，强调结果。

Page No.719

高手过招

单项填空

He to escape from the prison, but he couldn't find anybody to help him.

Succeeded B. attempted C. advised D. Thought

解析：选 B。句意为：他企图越狱，但找不到人帮他。attempt to do sth.试图做某事。

7. score

n. 二十；划痕， 刻线； 欠帐； 得分， 成绩； 评分；乐谱

v. 划线，做记号；记分，得分；谱曲

Yao Ming scored again in the second half.

姚明在下半场时再次得分。

常用结构:

three score (of) people 60 人

make a good score 得分多;成绩好

in scores 很多的， 大批的

score out 划掉，删去

Page No.720

联想拓展

scoreboard n. 记分板/牌

scorer n. 记分员；得分的运动员

scores of 很多（前面不能加数词)

温馨提示

数词+score，不加 of；但用 a score of。

score 前有数词修饰，而且 score 后所修饰的名词前有 the, those, these 等表示限定的词时，必须加 of。

Page No.721

高手过招

单项填空

Shortly after the flood. Two police were sent to the spot to keep order.

A. scores of B. scores

C. score of D. Dozens

解析：选 C。dozen 和 score 前面有具体数字时，它们后面不用复数。正确的表达为：two score (of) police 四十名警察； two dozen police 24 个警察。

Page No.722

重点短语

8. a great deal

大量，许多

We are living close to each other, so I see him a great deal.

我们住得很近，所以我经常碰到他。

联想拓展

量词短语归类:

修饰可数名词复数的： many, a good/great many, a great/large(small) number of, hundreds (thousands/millions/billions) of, dozens of, scores of。

修饰不可数名词的：a great/good deal of, much, much of, a large/great amount of。

修饰可数名词复数或不可数名词的：a lot of, lots of, plenty of, half of, part of, one third of, ...percent of。

Page No.723

温馨提示

a great deal 可在句中作状语，修饰动词或形容词和副词的比较级，此时不加 of。

deal 用来表示“大量，相当多”时不用 large 修饰，而习惯用 great/good 来修饰。

a great deal of 表示“许多”时,只能修饰不可数名词。

高手过招

单项填空

We waited for the report of exam with anxiety.

A. a great deal of B. a great number of

C. a great many D. a plenty of

解析：选 A。此处 anxiety 为抽象名词，排除 B、C 两项; D 项应该为 plenty of。

Page No.724

重点句型

9. Among the painters who broke away from the traditional style of painting were the Impressionists, who lived and worked in Paris.

在那些突破传统画法的画家中有生活和工作在法国巴黎的印象派画家。

关于倒装句:

表示方位的副词或介词短语位于句首，主语是名词，谓语是不及物动词，如 come, go, stand, sit, lie 等时，句子经常采用全部倒装的形式。

In front of the house sat a small boy.

房前坐着一个小男孩。

There comes the bus. 车来了。

Under the tree stand my English teacher and some of my classmates.

树下站着我的英语老师和几个同学。

温馨提示

如果主语是代词，而不是名词，句子不用倒装。

Here you are. 给你。

Page No.725

高手过招

单项填空

At the foot of the mountain .

A. a village lie B. lies a village

C. does a village lie D. lying a village

解析：选 B。因为倒装句是把谓语的一部分或者全部提前，因此决定谓语动词单复数的还是后面的主语。本句就是全部倒装的典型例子。

Page No.726

Unit 2 Poems

Page No.727

核心单词

1. convey

vt. 运送；传达；表达；转让(财产等)

常用结构：

convey sth. to sb. 向某人传达/运送某物

convey sth./sb. to someplace 把某物/某人送到某地

convey one’s feelings/thanks to sb. 向某人表达某种感情/谢意

Passengers are conveyed by bus to the airport.

旅客们被公共汽车送往机场。

A wire conveys an electric current.
电线传导电流。
Page No.728
I found it hard to convey my feelings in words.
我觉得难以用语言表达我的感情。
The old farmer conveyed his farm to his son.
老农夫将农场转让给儿子。
易混辨析
convey/transfer/transport
convey 基本含义指将物体从一地运送到另一地，或指语言、信息等的传递。也可表示财产的转让，但该词更强调通过法律手段转让财产或某种所有权。
transfer 主要指工作地点的变换、住所及物体的转移，还可指旅途中交通工具的变换，如转车、转船等。也可指把财产转让给他人。
transport 基本含义是运送。但该词通常局限于用交通工具运输货物和人。
Page No.729
高手过招
完成句子
①言语无法表达我对她有多么的生气。

how angry I am with her.
②管道将燃气从工厂传送到每家每户。

from the power plant.
答案:①Words can not convey
②Pipes convey gas to every family
Page No.730
2. transform
v. 变成，彻底改变;转换；转化；改造
常用结构：
transform ...into ... 使……变成……
transform one’s life 改变某人的一生
transform to a new place 搬到新地方
be transformed from 由……变成……；
由……迁到……
be transformed from A to B 由 A 处迁到 B 处
Hard work transformed her completely into an ordinary housewife.
艰辛劳动彻底把她变成了一个普通的家庭妇女。
The company is transformed from a family business into one with 5，000 labours.
这家公司已从家族企业变成一家拥有 5,000 名员工的大公司。
联想拓展
transformation n.改革；转变；变化
Page No.731
高手过招
单项填空
The Greens have their garage into a guest house.
A. Transformed B. transmitted
C. Transported D. Translated

解析：选 A。考查词义辨析。transform 使(形状、姿态、性质、机能等)改变，transform ...into ...把……改

变成……，故 A 项符合句意。transmit 传送；传导；传达；transport 输送；运输；translate 翻译，皆不符合句意。

Page No.732

3. appropriate

adj. 适当的；正当的

v. 侵吞；盗用；挪用；拨(专款等)

Fill in each of the blanks with an appropriate word.

在每个空白处填入一个适当的单词。

The mayor was found to have appropriated government money.

市长被查出挪用了公款。

常用结构：

an appropriate response/measure/method

恰如其分的反应/恰当的措施/方法

be appropriate to/for 适于；合乎

It is appropriate that ... (从句中用可以省略 should 的虚拟语气形式）

The government appropriated a large sum of money for building hospitals.

政府拨了一大笔钱用来建造医院。

Page No.733

联想拓展

appropriately adv. 适当地

高手过招

单项填空

His casual clothes were not for such a formal occasion.

ready B. good C. special D. Appropriate

解析：选 D。句意为：他的休闲装不适合这样的正式场合。ready 准备；good 好的；special 特别的；appropriate 合适的。

Page No.734

4. load

n. 负荷物（尤指沉重的）,载重物；压力，负担，工作量

v. 装载；给……负荷

常用结构：

a load of= loads of =plenty of 大量，许多

take a load off one’s mind 打消某人的顾虑

a heavy load for 对某人是一件重负

load (up) ...with ... 用……装……

load ...onto/into ... 把……装到……上去

load off one’s mind 去除某人的精神负担

Supporting such a large family is really a heavy load for her.

她养这么一大家子,负担真的很重。

I had loads of fun today.

我今天玩得很开心。

She loaded film into the camera.

她把胶卷装到照相机里。

Page No.735

温馨提示

load 为及物动词，后面必须接宾语，否则要用被动语态。

常见结构为：load (up) A with B 或 load (up) B onto (into) A；被动形式：A is loaded (up) with B 或 B is loaded

(up) onto A。

高手过招

单项填空

He has got money from his uncle.

A. a large amount of B. loads of

C. a load of D. All above

解析：选 D。loads of 和 a load of 表示“许多的，大量的”，既可修饰可数名词，又可修饰不可数名词。a large amount of 只能修饰不可数名词，故选 D 项。

Page No.736

5. exchange

n. 交换；交流；互换

vt. & vi. 调换；交换

An exchange of opinions is helpful.

相互交换意见是有益的。

An exchange of prisoners during a war is unusual.

战争时期很少交换俘虏。

We’ll have an opportunity to exchange views tomorrow.

明天我们将有机会交换看法。

The store will not exchange goods without a receipt.

这家商店没有收据不予调换商品。

常用结构：

exchange sth. with sb. 和某人交换某物

in exchange for 交换

exchange sth. for sth. 用某物交换某物

exchange looks 交换眼色

exchange information 交流信息

exchange greetings 互相问候;打招呼

exchange words 相互交谈

Page No.737

高手过招

用适当的介词填空

①I shook hands and exchanged a few words the manager.

②You can exchange your currency dollars in the hotel.

③Would you like my old TV in exchange this camera？

答案:①with ②for ③for

Page No.738

重点短语

6. take it easy

轻松；不紧张；从容

Take it easy. We’ll take care of everything.

放心好了，一切由我们照料。

You should take it easy this weekend.

这个周末你应该放松一下。

Take it easy, and you will make it.

别紧张，你会成功的。

联想拓展

take things easy 别紧张，慢慢来；从容不迫地进行工作

take one’s chance 碰运气

take one’s time	不匆忙；别着急；慢慢来

take sb. Wrong 误解（曲解）某人的意思
take sth. Seriously 认真地对待某事
Page No.739
高手过招
单项填空
—It can’t be too worse.
—Just , things will turn out to be better so long as you don’t stop trying.
A. be all right B. take your time
C. ignore it D. take it easy
解析：选 D。句意为：——糟透了。——沉住气，只要不放弃，事情会变好的。take it easy 表示安慰，别紧张，沉住气。
Page No.740
7. run out of
用完
We are running out of our money.
=Our money is running out.
我们的钱快花光了。
I run out of breath.
我跑得喘不过气来。
联想拓展
run out of 意为“用完了”，是及物动词短语，表示主动意义，主语一般是人。
run out=become used up,意为“……用完了”，是不及物动词短语，其主语通常为时间、食物、金钱等名词。其他有关短语：
run short of sth. 缺乏，短缺
run short 不足；短缺
give out （为不及物动词短语）用尽；分发；宣布；发出；精疲力竭
use up （为及物动词短语）用完，消耗尽
Page No.741
(1)单项填空
Can you spare me some paper? Mine .
A. has run out B. has used up
C. has run out of D. is run out
(2)翻译句子
旅行将要结束时，食物已经吃完了。
解析：(1) 选 A。空格前为 mine 作主语，相当于 my paper;run out 需要物作主语，而 D 项时态不对。
(2)Food supplies had run out toward the end of the trip.
Page No.742
8. make up of
组成……；构成（常用于被动结构）
Girl students make up 40% of the student number.
女学生占学生总数的 40%。
The medical team is made up of five doctors and ten nurses.
这支医疗队由 5 名医生，10 名护士组成。
联想拓展
make up 构成，组成；编造；化装
make up for sth. 弥补
be made up of= consist of ...由……构成，组成

be made of	由……做成(看得出原材料的样子)

be made from　　由……做成(看不出原材料的样子)
make out　　分辨，辨认出
be made in　　在……(地方)做成
be made by　　由……(某人)制造
make towards sth./make one’s way to　　向……移动，朝……走去

I’ll try to make up for the lost time. 我要尽力弥补失去的时间。

Page No.743

高手过招

单项填空

Everyone in our class likes Mary because she is good at telling and　　jokes.

A. turning up　　B. putting up
C. making up　　D. showing up

解析：选 C。按照句意此处有“编造笑话”之意。turn up 出现，将……调大；put up 张贴；show up 出现。

Page No.744

9. let out

发出；放走

Every time she moved her leg, she let out a moan.
每次她动一下腿，就会发出一声呻吟。

Don’t let out the plan to the press.别把这项计划泄露给媒体。

He let out the bird from the cage.他把鸟从笼子里放走了。

联想拓展

let down　　放下；使失望；给轮胎放气
let alone　　更不用提；更别说
let one’s hair down　　无拘无束；放松一下
let go　　放开;松手
let it go　　算了；放手
let in　　让……进来；放……进来
let off　　放（炮）；投放（炸弹）；宽恕

Page No.745

高手过招

单项填空

He accidentally　　he had quarreled with his wife and that he hadn’t been home for a couple of weeks.

A. let out　　B. took care
C. made sure　　D. made out

解析：选 A。考查动词短语辨析。let out 在本句中为“泄露”的意思。take care 小心，注意；make sure 确信；make out 辨别出，理解。

Page No.746

10. stay up

挺住；站立；熬夜；不睡觉

Our flag still stayed up after many attacks of the enemy.
经过敌人的数次进攻之后，我们的红旗依然挺立。

He stayed up late into the night yesterday.
昨天他一直熬到深夜。

联想拓展

stay ahead (of)　　(比……)领先； (走在……的)前面
stay away (from)　　不在； 外出； 走开； 别接近

stay behind	留下来不走；留在后面

stay out　　在外；不在家
stay still　　静止不动
Page No.747
高手过招
单项填空
It is your own fault that you are so tired. You oughtn't to have　so late.
A. stayed up　　B. woke up
C. made up　　D. turned up
解析：选 A。词语辨析题的关键是把握各个选项的意思，然后依据情景选择。stay up late 意思是“熬夜到很晚”。
Page No.748
重点句型
11. And said though strange they all were true.
尽管有点奇怪，但这些都是真实的。
联想拓展
　　在时间状语从句和条件状语从句中，如果从句的主语与主句的主语相一致，且从句含动词 be 时，从句可用省略主语和动词 be 的形式。
　　在 when it is+adj. 结构中，it is 也经常省略。
I'll go to Mary　s birthday party if invited to.(if invited to 等于 if I'm invited to)
如果受到邀请的话， 我就去参加玛丽的生日聚会。
What were you doing while staying at the hotel?(while staying ...等于 while you were staying ...)
待在宾馆的这段时间你在干什么？
Whenever (it was) possible, they would stop him and ask him the question.
只要可能，他们就会让他停下问他这个问题。
Page No.749
温馨提示
在条件状语从句、让步状语从句、方式状语从句中，也经常采用这种省略的形式。　高手过招
单项填空
　When　　help, one often says “Thank you.” or “It's kind of you.”
Offering　B. to offer　C. to be offered　D. Offered
　解析：选 D。首先要依据省略规则分析省略了什么。When offered 等于 When one is offered。one 是 offer 动作的被执行者，因此要用过去分词。
Page No.750
Unit 3　A healthy life
Page No.751
核心单词
1. stress
n. 压力；重音
vt. 加压力于；使紧张
Too much work and stress does damage to your health.
过量的工作和压力会对你的健康有害。
In the word “mother” the stress is on the first syllable.
在“mother”这个单词中,重音在第一个音节上。
常用结构：
under stress　　在压力之下
under the stress of　　在……的压力下

stress sth.或 lay/place/put stress on sth.

强调某事物；给某物压力

Page No.752

The weight of snow stressed the roof to the point of collapsing.雪的重量压得屋顶快要塌了。

联想拓展

stressed adj. 焦虑不安的；心力交瘁的

stressful adj. 压力大的；紧张的高手过招

Page No.753

答案：①The teacher stressed the importance of learning English.

②We put off the sports meeting under the stress of the bad weather.

2. accustom

vt. 使习惯于

常用结构：

accustom oneself to

=be accustomed to (其中 to 为介词)习惯于……

These people accustomed themselves to hard work.

这些人习惯于艰苦的工作。

I am not accustomed to being interrupted.

我不习惯被别人打扰。

He is accustomed to loneliness.

他对孤独已经习以为常。

Page No.754

联想拓展

表示“习惯于……”的短语还有：

be/get used to doing

adapt oneself to doing

adjust oneself to doing

高手过招

完成句子

①他的妈妈习惯于早起。

His mother getting up early.

②你会很快适应这里的气候。

You will soon the climate here.

答案： ①is accustomed to ②get accustomed to

Page No.755

3. quit

vt. 停止(做某事)；离开

常用结构：

quit something 离开……

quit doing something 停止做某事

He got his present job when he quitted the school.

他退学后得到现在这份工作。

Quit talking rubbish.

别胡说八道了。

Page No.756

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

Doctors are doing research to find out what happens physically when people smoking.

A. Quit B. decline C. depart D. reserve

(2) 翻译句子

①发现不良习惯时我们必须及时改正。

②我根本就没法戒掉看电视。

解析：(1) 选 A。句意为：医生正在对人们戒烟后身体上发生什么变化进行研究。decline 下倾,下降,下垂;depart离开,起程;reserve 储备,保存,预约。根据句意且主语是人可知，是停止吸烟。

(2)①We must quit bad habits as soon as we find them.

②I can not quit watching TV.

Page No.757

4. ashamed

adj.感到羞耻的；感到惭愧的（常作表语)

常用结构：

be/feel ashamed of (doing) sth./sb./oneself

为做某事/某人/某人自己而感到惭愧

be ashamed to be/to do sth. 因难为情而不愿意做……

be ashamed that ... 为……而感到惭愧或羞耻

be ashamed for sb. 替某人感到惭愧

I behaved badly yesterday and I am ashamed (of myself) now.

我昨天表现得不好，现在感到很惭愧。

She was ashamed to ask such a simple question.

她不好意思提这么简单的问题。

Page No.758

易混辨析

ashamed/shameful/shameless

ashamed 指事情使人感到羞耻，惭愧，难为情等。

shameful 指事情或行为本身不道德。

shameless 指某人或行为是可耻的。高手过招

高手过招

单项填空

I was ashamed lied to my mother.

to be B. of having C. that D. of being

解析：选 B。句意为：我向母亲撒了谎，我感到很惭愧。A 项虽有 be ashamed to do 形式,但后面是 lied，所以应排除，同样排除 C 和 D,考查的是 be ashamed of having done 结构。

Page No.759

5. effect

n. 结果，效力；作用；影响(后接 on/upon)

I tried to persuade him, but with little effect.

我尽力劝他，但他根本不听。

An effect presupposes a cause.

有果必有因。

常用结构：

have an effect on=have an influence on=have an impact on 对……有影响

put/bring/carry ...into effect 付诸实施

in effect 事实上；实际上

take effect 生效；奏效

come into effect 开始实施;开始生效

This had a great effect upon the future of both mother and son.这对母子俩的将来影响很大。

The medicine began to take effect.药力开始生效了。

Page No.760
高手过招
翻译句子
这个计划没有取得预期的效果。
答案： The plan failed to/didn’t achieve the desired effect.
6. risk
n. 冒险；风险
vt. 冒……风险； 冒……的风险
常用结构：
at risk 处于危险之中
at all risks=at any risk 无论冒什么险;无论如何
at one’s own risk 由自己负责,自担风险
at the risk of doing sth. 冒着……的危险
risk one’s life 冒生命危险
run/take a risk/risks 冒风险
run the risk of doing sth. 冒着……的风险
risk doing sth. 冒险做……
Page No.761
If you don’t obey me, you should be at your own risk.
你如果不服从我的话，你应该自担风险。
They knew they risked being arrested.
他们知道自己冒着被捕的危险。
高手过招
单项填空
He risked his job to see me off.
A. Losing B. to risk
C. being lost D. Lost
解析：选 A。risk doing sth.冒险做某事。
Page No.762
重点短语
7. due to
由于……；因……造成；归功于；应给予；应属于
Due to the foggy weather, the traffic moved very slowly.
由于有雾，车辆行进缓慢。
Our happy childhood is due to our father’s hard work.
我们幸福的童年应归功于父亲的辛勤工作。
The failure is due to his carelessness.
失败是由于他的粗心造成的。
Page No.763
联想拓展
表示“由于”的短语还有：
because of 因为,由于，常用作状语；
on account of 比 because of 更正式，多用于书面语中；
owing to 构成的短语作状语，既能指积极的原因，也可指消极的原因；
thanks to 由于，多亏，常用于书面语，多表示正面的情况，有时也表示反面的情况；
as a result of 由于；
in/as consequence of 由于……的缘故，常用于书面语中；

in view of 由于；鉴于（书面语）。

Page No.764

高手过招

单项填空

The great success of this programme has been largely
the support given by the 10 local business men.

A. instead of B. thanks to

C. due to D. as a consequence

解析：选 C。instead of 而不是；thanks to 因为，多亏了，常置于句首；as a consequence 结果，不用作表语。句意为：这个项目的巨大成功主要是由于当地 10 位商界人士所提供的支持。

Page No.765

8. be addicted to

对……上瘾；入迷；沉溺于(其中 to 为介词)

常用结构：

be addicted to sth./doing sth.=addict oneself to sth./doing sth. 沉溺于某种嗜好；醉心于某种活动

Schoolboys are easier to be addicted than schoolgirls to net.

男生比女生更容易上网成瘾。

He was addicted to cocaine.

他吸可卡因上瘾。

He was addicted to gambling.

他赌博成瘾。

联想拓展

addict vt. 使……成瘾

addict n. \[C\] 入迷的人；有瘾的人

addictive adj. 使成瘾的；上瘾的

addiction n. 沉溺；成瘾；上瘾；入迷

Page No.766

高手过招

单项填空

Although she is only 17 years old, she drugs for two years.

A. Addicts B. has addicted to

C. has addicted D. has been addicted to

解析：选 D。句意为：尽管她只有 17 岁，却有两年的毒瘾了。be addicted to 对……上瘾；其中 addicted 是形容词，前面应有系动词 be。

Page No.767

9. in spite of

不顾;不管

I went shopping in spite of the rain.

尽管下雨，我还是出去买东西了。

I know whatever you try, you'll win in spite of early difficulties.

我知道你无论做什么，不管最初多么困难，最终都会成功的。

In spite of the bad weather, we went fishing.

我们不顾恶劣的天气仍去钓鱼。

易混辨析

in spite of/despite/though/although

这四个词(组)意思相近，但 in spite of/despite 后跟名词或动名词。而 though/although 是连词，引导让步状语从句。

Page No.768

高手过招

完成句子

尽管付出了巨大的努力，我们还是没能实施我们的计划。

great efforts we failed to carry our plans out.

= great efforts we failed to carry our plans out.

= we made great efforts we failed to carry our plans out.

答案：In spite of; Despite; Although/Though

Page No.769

10. get into

陷入；染上（坏习惯）

I'm really getting into jazz these days.

近来我喜欢上爵士乐了。

I haven't really got into my new job yet.

我还没有真正熟悉我的新工作。

常用结构：

get into debt 负债累累

get into trouble/deep water 陷入困境

get into the habit of 养成……的习惯

Nobody likes to get into trouble.

没有谁愿意惹麻烦。

Page No.770

联想拓展

get along/on (with) 生活；融洽相处；进展；有起色

get away 逃脱；离开；把……送走

get down (从……)下来；吞下；写下；使沮丧

get down to 开始认真考虑

get in 进入；到达；收获；插入；陷入

get off 下来；脱下；出发；开始

get on 上车

get on with sb. 与某人相处

get over 爬过；克服；熬过；恢复

get rid of 摆脱,除去

get through 到达；做完；通过；渡过；打通

get across 使通过；被理解

Page No.771

高手过招

翻译句子

①他明天出发。

②在那时，人们陷入恐慌。

答案： ①He is going to get off tomorrow.

②At that time, people got into panic.

Page No.772

重点句型

11. Every time you feel like smoking a cigarette, remind yourself that you are a non smoker.

每当你想要吸烟的时候，你就提醒你自己：你（已经）是不吸烟的人了。

every time 在这里相当于连词，连接了两个分句；remind 后面又跟了 that 引导的宾语从句。

时间状语从句通常由when, while, as before, after, as soon as 等从属连词引导，但有时也可由 every time, each time，the moment, the day 等引导，这时这类词或词组就起到相当于一个从属连词的作用。

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

Each time I get a cold, I have a headache.
每次感冒我都头疼。
He phoned me the moment he reached Chicago.
他一到芝加哥就给我打了电话。
此外 immediately, instantly, directly 等词也可以引导时间状语从句。
He made for the door directly he heard the knock.
一听到敲门声他就跑去开门了。
I got in touch with him immediately I received the letter.
我一接到信就跟他联系了。
Page No.774
高手过招
单项填空
I toured Zhang Jiajie, I was deeply impressed with its beautiful scenery.
A. For the first time B. At first
C. It was the first time D. The first time
解析：选 D。分析句子结构可知，the first time 作连词，引导时间状语从句。
Page No.775
Unit 4 Global warming
Page No.776
核心单词
1. subscribe
vi. 同意；捐赠；订阅
vt. （签署）文件；捐助
常用结构：
subscribe to ... 同意，赞许；（在文件等下面）签名，署名
subscribe sth. to ... 捐助
subscribe to/for ... 订阅；订购(书籍等)
He did not subscribe to my proposal.
他不赞同我的建议。
He subscribed a large sum to the relief fund.
他向救济基金捐赠巨资。
He subscribed his name to a petition. 他在请愿书上签名。
Page No.777
高手过招
翻译句子
①只有疯子才会同意这样的观点。
②我订了一份《妇女周刊》。
答案：①No one but mad people would subscribe to such views.
②I subscribed to a Weekly Women’s magazine.
Page No.778
2. tend
vt. & vi. （常与 to 连用）有某种倾向；有……的趋势；走向；趋向；朝向；照管，照料；看护
People under stress tend to express their full range of potential.
处于压力下的人容易发挥自己全部的潜力。
He tends to pitch the ball too high.
他往往把球掷得过高。
Prices are tending upward. 物价在上涨。

The woman stayed at home to tend her child.

那个妇女呆在家里照料她的孩子。

Page No.779

高手过招

单项填空

I never forget the days when I was by the villagers when I was wounded.

Tended B. observed C. monitored D. Cared

解析：选 A。tend 用作及物动词，意为 “照顾；照料”;observe 观察；注意；monitor 监视；监控； care 为不及物动词，care for 才有 “照顾；照料”的意思。

Page No.780

3. oppose

vt. 反对； 反抗；对抗；（与 to 连用）使反对，使相对

Many members of the council opposed the building of the luxury houses in the centre of the city.

许多议会议员反对在市中心建造豪华型住宅。

My mother is opposed to the new plan.

我妈妈是反对这个新计划的。

Many residents are opposed to the plan of building the motorway.许多居民反对修建那条高速公路的计划。

常用结构：

as opposed to （表示对比）而，相对于

Page No.781

易混辨析

oppose/object/resist

oppose 为常用词，指“对某人、某事采取积极行动来反对”，强调动作,尤指“反对一种观念、思想、计划等”。

object 常指“用言论或论据等表示反对”, 强调“个人嫌厌”和“由于与个人有关，因此提出反对意见”。

resist 指“积极地反抗、对抗”；“用武力阻止……的前进”。

Page No.782

高手过招

单项填空

The professor, out the project, made a comment on the report.

A. was opposed to carry B. opposed to carry

C. opposed to carrying D. opposed carrying

解析：选 C。短语 be opposed to sth./doing sth.意为“反对/某事/做某事”，其中 to 是介词。此处用过去分词作后置定语，相当于定语从句 who was opposed to carrying。

Page No.783

4. consequence

n.［C］结果；后果；影响

I’m quite willing to accept the consequences.

我完全愿意承担后果。

You should know the consequence of not studying hard.

你应该知道不用功学习的后果。

This had the unexpected consequence that he got fired.

这件事有了意外的后果，那就是他被革职了。

常用结构：

as a consequence (of ...)

=in consequence (of ...)

联想拓展

=as a result (of ...) 结果;因此；由于……的原因

联想拓展

consequent adj.（+on/upon） 因……而起的；随之发生的
consequently adv. 结果；因此；必然地
Page No.784
高手过招
翻译句子
①降雨量很大，结果田地被淹了。
②他努力学习，因此通过了考试。
答案：①The rain was heavy and consequently the land was flooded.
②He studied hard, and in consequence he passed the exam.
Page No.785
5. average
adj. 平均的；普通的
n. 平均;平均数
The average age of the boys in this class is fifteen.
这个班男生的平均年龄为十五岁。
It was an average piece of work.那是一件普通的作品。
The average man is not interested in this subject.
普通人一般对这个题目不感兴趣。
常用结构：
on average 平均地；通常
above/below average 高于/低于平均数/水平
an average of..... 的平均数
up to average 达 到 平 均 数
The average of 4 and 8 is 6. 4 和 8 的平均数为 6。
Two students are absent each day on average.
平均每天有两个学生缺席。
Page No.786
高手过招
选词填空(ordinary/average/normal/common）
①Though she is CEO of a big company, she is a(n) woman in the eyes of her families.
②Relations between the two countries have been restored to .
③It’s a bag, and you can find it in every store.
④ Letterboxes are much more in the UK than in the US, where most people have a mailbox instead.
答案： ①average ②normal ③common
④ordinary
Page No.787
6. blame
v. 埋怨,责备
常用结构：
be to blame 应受谴责,应负责任
blame something on sb. 把……归咎于
blame sb. for sth./doing sth. 因……而责备某人
City residents also blame migrant workers for the sharp rise in the urban crime rate.
城市居民还责怪民工造成了城市犯罪率的大幅度上升。
They blamed the failure on George. 他们把失败归咎于乔治。
联想拓展

Blame me if I don’t. 我要是不这样做,随你怎么办好了。

联想拓展

blameful adj. 该受责备的，有过错的
blameless adj. 无可责难的,无过错的
blameworthy adj. 该受责备的
Page No.788
高手过招
单项填空
He deserved to his carelessness.
A. blamed for B. be blamed for
C. blame for D. be blame for
解析：选 C。be to blame 应受谴责,应负责任，不能用于被动语态。
Page No.789
重点短语
7. come about
发生；产生
How did this dangerous state of affairs come about?
这种危险的事态是怎么发生的?
联想拓展
关于 come 的其他短语:
come across 偶然发现；被理解；提供
come into being 发生；产生；出现；形成
come into power 开始执政；当权；当选
come into effect/force 开始生效；开始实行
come into existence 形成；产生；开始存在
come into fashion 开始流行
come off （头发、牙齿、纽扣）脱落；离开
come on 上场；开始；赶快；加油
come out 出来，发芽；出版；说出；洗掉
come to know/realize/understand 开始了解到/意识到/明白
come up with 找到（答案）；拿出（一笔钱等）
Page No.790
高手过招
单项填空
—How did it that you made such a silly mistake?
—I myself haven’t figured it out yet.
A. bring about B. come about
C. come across D. come on
解析：选 B。句意为：——怎么会发生这么愚蠢的错误？——我自己也搞不明白。come about 发生，指事情发生的原因，常与 how 连用。其他选项无此用法。
Page No.791
8. quantities of
意思是“大量的”，既可以修饰可数名词，又可以修饰不可数名词。
Quantities of apples were on the table.
桌子上有很多苹果。
Huge quantities of oil were shipped to Japan last year.
去年大量的石油被海运到日本。
联想拓展

in quantity/in large quantities 大量的

in small quantities 少量的

Page No.792

易混辨析

a quantity of/quantities of

a quantity of 与 quantities of，都可译为“大量的”，都既可修饰可数名词又可修饰不可数名词，但用法有区别。

a quantity of 的谓语动词根据其后的名词而定，跟可数名词复数时谓语动词用复数，跟不可数名词时谓语动词用单数。而 quantities of 后无论跟可数名词还是不可数名词，谓语动词一律用复数。

A large quantity of air conditioners have been sold since the summer came.入夏以来，已有大量的空调售出。

Page No.793

高手过招

单项填空

information stored in this computer.

A. Large quantities of; have been

B. A great many; has been

C. A large quantity of; were

D. Quite a lot; is

解析：选 A。information 为不可数名词，C 项的谓语动词应该用单数，故只有 A 项正确。

Page No.794

9. result in

导致;结果是（相当于 lead to）

Their dispute resulted in war. 他们的争端导致了战争。

The accident results in the death of two passengers.

事故导致两名乘客死亡。

His carelessness resulted in the accident.

他的粗心导致事故的发生。

联想拓展

result from 起因于；由……造成

as a result 结果；因此

as a result of 作为……的结果；因为……

Page No.795

高手过招

用 result in/result from 的适当形式填空

①The traffic accident a lot of death and the destruction of several vehicles.

②The illness exhaustion possibly.

③The injure a fall kept him in bed for months.

答案： ①resulted in ②resulted from

③resulting from

Page No.796

10. put up with

忍受；容忍

I don’t know how his parents put up with his antics.

我不知道他的父母是如何忍受他的怪异行为的。

She could hardly put up with that fellow any longer.

她再也不能忍受那家伙了。

联想拓展

put away 放好；收好；储存

put aside	忽视；不理睬

put across 交流，沟通
put down 记下；放下；镇压；平定
put forward 提出；建议；将……提前
put in 驶进
put out 熄灭；扑灭；出版；公布；生产
put off 推迟；延期
put on 穿上；戴上；上演；增加（体重）
put up 提出；举起；升起；提（价）；投宿；建造

Page No.797

高手过招

单项填空

—What do you think of Andrew?

—There are some things that are not easy to , and his coldness is one.

A. put aside B. put up with

C. think of D. get along with

解析：选 B。答句句意为:他有很多方面难以让人忍受，冷酷就是其中的一个。put aside 储存；保留；put up with 容忍；忍受；think of 想起；get along with 与……相处。由句意可知,选 B 项。

Page No.798

重点句型

11. Some byproducts of this process are called “greenhouse” gases, the most important one of which is carbon dioxide.

这个升温过程的一些副产品就叫做“温室”气体，其中最重要的就是二氧化碳。

定语从句中的介词或介词短语可以提到引导词 which, whom 的前面。

The old man has three daughters, two of whom are teachers.

这位老人有三个女儿，其中的两个是老师。

Soon they arrived at a farm house, in front of which sat a small boy.

不久他们来到了一所农舍，农舍前坐着一个小男孩。

Page No.799

高手过招

单项填空

I saw a woman running toward me in the dark. Before I could recognize who she was，she had run back in the direction she had come.

A. of which B. by which

C. in which D. from which

解析：选 D。介词的选择要依据搭配和句子意义。come from 表示“来自……”;of 与 in 不与 come 搭配;come by 意为“从旁边经过”。

Page No.800

Unit 5 The power of nature

Page No.801

核心单词

1. appoint

vt. 任命；委派

He appointed Williams as his deputy in the city of York.

他任命威廉姆斯作为他在约克郡的代理人。

He was appointed mayor of the city.

他被任命为这个城市的市长。

常用结构：

appoint sb. to a post	派某人担任某职

The teacher appointed him (to be) monitor.
老师任命他为班长。
Page No.802
联想拓展
appointment n. 约会；约定；委任
make/have an appointment with sb. 与某人约会
break one’s appointment 违约；失约
keep one’s appointment 守约
appointed adj. 约定的；指定的
Our visitors arrived at the appointed time.
我们的来宾在约定的时间到达了。
Page No.803
高手过招
翻译句子
①校长任命了一位新主任。
②如果你想和他见面，你得预约。
答案： ①The headmaster appointed a new director.
②If you want to meet him, you have to make an appointment.
Page No.804
2. evaluate
vt. 评估；评价；估计
The scientists have evaluated the data.
那些科学家已经评价了那些资料。
We need to evaluate how well the method is working.
我们需要对这一方法产生的效果作出评价。
联想拓展
evaluation n. 估价；评价；计算
accomplishment evaluation 学业成绩评定
self evaluation 自我评价
educational evaluation 教育评定
evaluation factor 评价因素
evaluation method 评价方法
Page No.805
易混辨析
evaluate/estimate/value
三个词都含有“评价，估计”的含义。
evaluate 一般不用来表示“估价”或“估计”某物的市场价值。
estimate 表示“估量，预算”，还可以表示“评价，看法等”。
value 表示“为……估价格”，还可以表示“珍视，重视”。
答案：①评估一个培训项目的花销通常是很困难的。
②把她当成一名歌手来评价很难。
Page No.806
3. vary
vt. 改变, 变更, 使多样化
vi. 变化, 不同, （彼此）相异
常用结构：
vary in/on 在……方面不同

vary from ...to ...	从……到……不等;

在……到……之间变动

vary with/according to 随……变化而变化

a variety of/varieties of=various 多种多样的

The temperature varied throughout the day.

气温一整天都在变化着。

Page No.807

高手过招

(1)单项填空

The charge from 5 yuan to 10 yuan.

A. Changes B. varies C. differ D. range

(2)翻译句子

①The weather varied from day to day.

②Prices vary with the seasons.

解析：(1) 选 B。按照句意此处是指收费的多样化，故使用 vary from ... to ...结构。

(2)①天气一天天地变化着。

②物价随季节而变动。

Page No.808

4. guarantee

vt. 保证；担保

n. 保证,保证书,担保,抵押品

常用结构：

guarantee to do sth. 保证做某事

guarantee that/sth. ... 保 证 ……

guarantee sb. sth. 保证某人某物

give sb. a guarantee that ... 向某人保证……

The rain guarantees a good crop this year.

这场雨保证了今年有个好收成。

My watch is guaranteed for one year.

我的表保修一年。

Page No.809

高手过招

单项填空

Working hard is not only a of great success, but is among the essential requirements.

Sign B. signal C. guarantee D. Supposition

解析：选 C。按照前句意思“努力工作不仅是巨大成功的保证”，可知答案。

Page No.810

重点短语

5. make one’s way to

前往……

Dickens made his way to the woods.

迪肯斯朝树林走去。

Some thirty percent of the world’s exports of tea makes its way to London.

世界上大约 30%的茶叶都出口到了伦敦。

Though it was raining hard, he made his way to school.

尽管雨下得很大，他还是朝学校赶去。

联想拓展

feel one’s way 摸索着前行

fight/push one’s way	推挤着前行

lose one’s way 迷路
force one’s way out 挤出去；冲出去
push one’s way in 挤进去
show sb. the way 为某人指路
get in the way 妨碍
wind one’s way 蜿蜒前进
Page No.811
高手过招
翻译句子
①由于在这方面没有经验，我们必须摸索着前进。
②很多学生正朝博物馆走去。
答案：①Without experience on it, we have to feel our way.
②Many students are making their way to the museum.
Page No.812
6. burn ...to the ground
(楼房等)被（全部）烧毁；全部焚毁
He has no place to live in because his house has been burnt to the ground.
他无处栖身,因为他的房子被烧掉了。
联想拓展
burn away 逐渐烧掉;消失
burn down (建筑物）烧毁，火力减弱
burn off 烧掉，蒸发
burn up 烧毁、烧得更旺/亮，消耗
burn out 烧坏，烧尽
burn oneself out 筋疲力尽
burn for 渴望
burn in 给……留下不可磨灭的印象
Page No.813
高手过招
单项填空
Be careful with fire, or it will the whole building.
A. burn down B. burn for
C. burn up D. burn in
解析：选 A。考查短语辨析。burn down (建筑物）烧毁，火力减弱；burn for 渴望； burn up 烧毁，烧得更旺/亮，消耗；burn in 给……留下不可磨灭的印象。此处应是“把……烧毁”的意思。
Page No.814
7. quite a few
好些；相当多
I have made quite a few friends here.
在这里我已经交了好多朋友。
易混辨析
very few/only a few/a few/not a few
very few, only a few 都可表示“少”，“几乎没有”的意思，但 very few 侧重于“几乎没有人”或“大多数都不”这一概念。
only a few 侧重于表达“在许多之中有几个”， 不强调 “大多数不”这一概念。
a few 意思是“少数几个，一些”，表达肯定概念。
Page No.815

高手过招

完成句子

—Are your friends here?

—Yes, (相当多) are here.

答案：quite a few

not a few 相当于 many，意思是“许多、大量”。

Very few people can bear the cold in Antarctica.

几乎没有人能忍受南极的寒冷。

Only a few people could see the scene.

只有几个人看到了这个景象。(看到这一景象的人不多。)

A few friends came to see me last week.

上星期有几个朋友来看我。

Not a few students are going there.

许多学生都要去那里。

Page No.816

重点句型

8. I was fast asleep when suddenly my bed began shaking and I heard a strange sound, like a railway train passing my window.

我睡得正酣，正在这时我的床开始晃动，我听到一种奇怪的声音，就像一列火车正从我窗外驶过。

when 引导了时间状语从句。在此状语从句中，and 连接两个并列的句子。like a railway train passing my window 为介词短语作定语，修饰 sound，而 a railway train passing my window 为 like 的复合宾语。

“be+形容词/表示状态的介词短语+when ...”表示“正在做某事，就在这时……”。

Page No.817

联想拓展

be about to do sth. when ... 正要做某事，就在这时……

be doing+when ... 正在做某事，就在这时……(分句中的动作往往是短暂性的)

had just done when ... 刚做过某事，就在这时……

温馨提示

此时的 when 不可以与 while 互换,也不可以将 when 引导的从句置于句首。

I was fast asleep when suddenly there was a loud noise outside my room.

我睡得正香，就在这时房外传来巨大的噪音。

He was on a journey to Europe when he received her call.

他正在去欧洲的旅行中，就在这时他接到了她的电话。

We were on a flight to Tokyo when suddenly I remembered I had left my passport home.

我们正在去东京的飞机上，这时我突然想起我把护照忘在了家里。

Page No.818

高手过招

单项填空

The boys were about to go out to play football suddenly it began to rain.

When B. as C. while D. Then

解析：选 A。考查“be about to do when ...”的句型。此结构的意思是 “正要做某事，就在这时……” 。其中 when 相当于 and just then，不可以用 while, as 等替换。

Page No.819

9. The other two climbed down into the crater to collect some lava for later study, but this being my first experience, I stayed at the top and watched them.

另外两人攀下火山口去收集供日后研究用的岩浆，我是第一次经历这样的事，所以留在山顶上观察他们。

句中的 this being my first experience 为独立主格结构。

独立主格结构（Absolute Structure）是由名词或代词加上分词等构成的一种独立结构，用于修饰整个句子。

独立主格结构中的名词或代词与其后的分词等构成逻辑上的主谓关系。这种结构与主句不发生句法上的联系，它的位置相当灵活，可置于主句前、主句末或主句中，常由逗号将其与主句分开。需要特别注意的是，　独立主格结构与主句之间不能使用任何连接词。

独立主格结构基本构成形式为：

名词(代词)+现在分词（过去分词/形容词/副词/不定式/名词/介词短语）

Page No.820

Night enshrouding the earth, nobody could make out what the dark mass was from a distance.

黑夜笼罩大地，谁也看不清远处黑压压的一片是什么东西。

There being no bus, we had to walk home.

由于没有公共汽车，我们只好走回家。

The workers worked still harder, their living conditions greatly improved.

由于工人们的生活条件大大提高，他们工作得更起劲了。

He was listening attentively in class, his eyes fixed on the blackboard.

他上课专心听讲，眼睛紧盯着黑板。

Page No.821

高手过招

单项填空

The robber was brought to the judge,　　.

A. with his hands were fast tied

B. his hands to be fast tied

C. his hands fast tied

D. his hand having been fast tied

解析：选 C。独立主格结构是短语的形式作定语或状语。“his hands fast tied”是一个由“名词+过去分词”构成的独立结构，这种结构的名词后还可以接介词短语等，在句中通常作状语。再如：The teacher came into the classroom, books in hand。

Page No.822

10. Having taken the wrong bus, Martin found himself in an unfamiliar district.

由于乘错了车，马丁发现自己到了一个不熟悉的地区。

find oneself 后跟 doing、v.　ed 形式、形容词、介词短语、副词等，表示“在无意识中出现了某种情况”。

When she came to herself, she found herself covered with a blanket.

当她苏醒过来的时候，她发现自己身上盖着一条毯子。

When food was served, we suddenly found ourselves very hungry.当食物端上来的时候，我们突然觉得饿了。

When dawn came, we found ourselves walking on a country road.黄昏时分，我们发现自己走在一条乡间的路上。

Suddenly I found myself making the same mistake as I made yesterday.突然间，我发现自己又犯了昨天的错误。

Page No.823

高手过招

单项填空

When the boy came to himself, he found himself　　by his teacher and classmates, which made him quite moved.

A. Surrounding　　B. surround

C. Surrounded　　D. surrounds

解析：选 C。考查 find 后动词的非谓语形式。himself 与 surround 之间为被动关系，因此用过去分词。

Page No.824

选修　7

Page No.825

Unit　1　Living　well

核心单词

1. ambition

n. 雄心

Her ambition is the presidency.

她的抱负是成为一名总统。

After several hours'work, she had no ambition to go dancing.

工作了数个小时之后，她没有精力去跳舞了。

Page No.827

联想拓展

ambitious adj. 志向远大的; 有雄心壮志的;有野心的

be ambitious for (power/social position, etc.) 极欲获得(权力，社会地位等)

be ambitious of success 渴望成功

be ambitious to 一心想……

The prince was attracted by the girl's beauty, and ambitious to marry her.

王子为女孩的美貌打动了，渴望能娶到她。

Page No.828

高手过招

翻译句子 (原创)

①他的理想就是环游世界。

②作为一个志向远大的领导者，他想带领当地人过上幸福的生活。

答案：①His ambition is to sail around the world.

②As an ambitious leader, he wants to guide the local people to lead a happy life.

Page No.829

2. beneficial

adj. 有益的；受益的

常用结构：

be beneficial to ... 对……有用/有好处/有益

A good diet is beneficial to one's health.

良好的饮食有益于人的身体健康。

联想拓展

benefit n.利益；实惠；未来的好处

vt. 有益于，有助于

vi.(常与 from，by 连用)获益；得益于

I have typed out some lecture notes for the benefit of those people who were absent last week.

我打印了一些讲座的笔记，上周缺席的人会因此获益。

It's said that yoga is of great benefit to human health.

据说瑜伽对人体健康有很大好处。

I did it for his benefit. 我做这个是为了帮助他。

The development of our country's economy has benefited from the opening and reform policy.

我们国家的经济发展得益于改革开放的政策。

Page No.830

高手过招

单项填空

①The fall in prices will be beneficial small business. （江西省抚州一中 2010 届高三英语第二次同步测试）

A. To B. From C. On D. for

②Who’s most likely to　the old lady’s death?　　（原创）

A. Benefit B. benefit from
be beneficial D. be beneficial to
解析： ①选 A。考查固定搭配。句意为：物价下跌将对小型企业有利。be beneficial to ...对……有好处/有益。
②选 B。句意为：谁最有可能从老妇人的死中得到好处？benefit from 从……中获益。
Page No.831
3. adapt
v. 使适应;改编
常用结构：
adapt (oneself) to sth. 适应某物
adapt ...to ... 使……适应……
adapt sth. from sth. 根据某事将……改编成……
be adapted from ... 由……改编
You should adapt yourself to the new environment.
你应该适应新环境。
The makers adapted the cartoons film for children from the Russian original.
影片制作人为了孩子们将这本俄文原著改编成了卡通电影。
易混辨析
adapt/adopt/adjust
adapt 指“修改或改变以适应新条件”。
adopt 指“采用，采取；收养；正式通过”。
adjust 指“调整，调节(使之适应)”。
Page No.832
高手过招
单项填空
① The new comers found it impossible to themselves to the climate sufficiently to make permanent homes in the new country. （2010・01・江苏南京检测）
A. Suit B. Adapt C. Regulate D. relate
②Compared with adults, children the new surroundings better. （2010・01・山东青州一中模块检测）
A. come to B. turn to
adapt to D. contribute to
解析： ①选 B。考查词义辨析。句意为：这些新来者发现，在这个国家要完全适应这儿的气候并永久定居下来是不可能的。adapt (oneself) to sth.适应某物；符合句意。suit 适合某人；regulate（用法律）管制；控制（机器，设备);调节；relate ... to ... 把……同……联系在一起。
②选 C。考查短语辨析。句意为：和成年人相比，孩子们能更好地适应新环境。come to 谈到，提到；turn to 转向，求助于；adapt to 适应；contribute to 有助于，促使。
Page No.833
4. conduct
n. 行为
v. 指挥
The chairperson conducted the hearing.
主席主持了这个听证会。
His conduct of the business was very successful.
他的事业进展得相当顺利。
The curator conducted the visitors around the museum.
馆长领着游客们在博物馆中参观。

常用结构：

a bad conduct 恶劣行为
under the conduct of 在……指导(管理)下
联想拓展
conductor n. 领导者, 经理
Page No.834
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①在农业专家的指导下,当地农民过了个丰收年。
②今天下午向导指挥着小学生参观了博物馆。
答案：①Under the conduct of the agricultural experts, local farmers had an abundant year.
②The guider conducted the students in primary school around the museum this afternoon.
Page No.835
5. absence
n. 缺席；不在
We did not receive any news during his long absence.
他长期缺席期间，我们没有得到他的一点消息。
常用结构：
absence of mind 心不在焉
in one’s absence (from) 当某人不在的时候
in the absence of 缺乏……
I don’t agree to this decision as it was made in my absence.
我不同意这个决定，因为它是我不在场的时候做出的。
Page No.836
联想拓展
absent adj. 不在的；缺席的
be absent from 缺席；不在；不存在；缺少
be present at 出席；到场
presence n. 出席；到场
He had to make up the lessons he had missed as he had been absent from class for three weeks.
他必须补上由于旷课 3 个星期所耽误的课程。
Absence from work leads to deduct of payment.
旷工的结果就是扣除工资。
Page No.837
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
① (汤姆没有参加) her birthday party made Sue very disappointed.
②There were so many people (缺席会议) that the meeting had to be put off.
答案： ①Tom’s absence from
②absent from the meeting
Page No.838
6. resign
v. 辞职；委托；把……交托给(to, into)
常用结构：
resign one’s position (as secretary) 辞去(秘书)职务
resign office 辞职

resign oneself to	听任(某种影响);

只好(做某事)

resign oneself to one’s fate 听天由命

resign ... to... 把……托付给

In order to look after her sick mother, Mary decided to resign her position as a manager in the company.
为了照顾生病的母亲，玛丽决定辞去公司经理的职务。

I resign my children to your care.我把孩子们委托你来照顾。

Page No.839

高手过招

翻译句子（原创）

①在任何情况下，我们都不能听天由命。

②我只好在长队中等候。

答案：① In no situation, shall we resign ourselves to our fate.

②I resigned myself to a long wait in line.

Page No.840

重点短语

7. in other words

换句话说

联想拓展

in word 意为“在口头上”，置于句末或句中。

in words 意为“用语言（来表达）”，通常置于句末。

in a/one word 意为“简言之，总之”，通常置于句首，有时也放在句中。

big words 大话

break one’s word 失信；食言

eat one’s word 收回前言

get in a word 插话

have a word with 与……谈一谈

keep one’s word 遵守诺言

leave word 留言

say a few words （即席）说几句话

upon one’s word 一定

word by word 按词序排列；逐字逐句地

In a word, we must try our best to do the task.
总之，我们必须尽最大努力来做这项工作。

Page No.841

高手过招

（1） 单项填空

—Would you like to help us?

— , no. （2010・01・山东青州二中模块检测）

A. In a word B. In words

C. In word D. In other words

(2)完成句子 （原创）

① She has a good handwriting, and is good at writing articles. (总而言之), she is a qualified secretary.

②The beauty of sunset can not be described (用语言).

③The person who (同……讲话) my father is one of my relatives.

④The couple (争吵) each other in the street ignoring the eyes of

passers-by.

Page No.842

解析：(1) 选 A。in word 意为“在口头上”，置于句末或句中。in words 意为“用语言（来表达）”，通常置于句末。in a/one word 意为“简言之，总之”，通常置于句首，有时也放在句中，符合语境。 (2)①In a word ②in words

③has a word with ④have words with

8. all in all

极其重要的；重于一切的；最关心；最爱的；从各方面考虑；从各方面来说；总的来说

All in all, her condition is greatly improved.

总的说来，她的健康状况大大好转。

Page No.843

联想拓展

above all	首先；首要；最重要的
all through	一直，在整个……期间
after all	终究，毕竟
all told	总共，合计
all alone	独自，独立地
all up	无望；结束；彻底完了
all along	始终，一直，一向
and all	连同其他一切
all around	（在……）周围，各处
at all	根本不，一点也不
all at once	突然，忽然，同时，一下子
for all	尽管

Page No.844

高手过招

单项填空

, he cried aloud. （原创）

A. All at once B. Once in a while

C. Generally D. All in all

解析：选 A。all at once= suddenly 突然,符合句意。

Page No.845

9. cut out

切掉,删掉

I cut this article out of the newspaper.

我从报纸上剪下了这篇文章。

联想拓展

cut down	砍倒; 削减,压缩
cut up	切/破碎
cut off	切断, 停掉;隔绝, 挡住

Deserts are also created because people cut down trees and dig up grass.

由于人们砍树挖草导致了沙漠的产生。

The flood cut off their supplies.洪水切断了他们的供给。

Page No.846

高手过招

用适当的介词填空 （原创）

①I must cut going to bed late.

②The car industry cut production.

③The woodchopper cut the tree and cut it .

答案： ①out ②down ③down; up

10. in addition

（常与 to 连用）此外

是介词短语，作副词用，相当于词组 as well，其后不能跟名词或其他任何成分，一般位于两个句子中间或置于句末。位于两个句子中间时，常用逗号与句子隔开。

Page No.847

There are many shops around the railway station. In addition, there are some newly built hotels there.

火车站附近有很多商店，此外，那里还有一些新建的旅馆。

Aunt Mary gave us sandwiches for our picnic and a bag of cookies in addition.

玛丽舅母为我们去郊游准备了三明治，另外还准备了一袋甜饼。 温

馨提示

in addition to 是介词短语，其后接名词或代词等作其宾语，意义大体相当于 as well as 和 besides。

Page No.848

高手过招

单项填空

the fact that he gained a great many achievements, he remained modest. （2010・01・浙江萧山质量检测）

A. In addition to B. Besides

C. Despite D. Though

解析：选 C。despite 意为“尽管，虽然”，是介词。though 意为“尽管，虽然”是连词。in addition to, besides 均意为“除……之外还”。

Page No.849

重点句型

11. Does this disability make it difficult for them to do some things?

残疾使得他们做一些事情很困难吗？

本句采用的是“主语+make+it+adj./n.+动词不定式”的结构。在本结构中，it 只是形式宾语。而后面的 for sb. to do sth.才是真正的宾语。在这个不定式短语中，for sb.又成了 to do 的逻辑主语。用在这种结构中的其他动词还有：think, feel, find, consider 等。

It makes it possible for the earth to support so many people.

这样就使得地球养活这么多的人成为可能。

Some students may think it difficult to learn English well. In fact, it isn’t.

有的学生也许认为很难把英语学好，其实不然。

Page No.850

温馨提示

因为是不定式作宾语，易错将不定式直接放到动词 make, feel, think 等词的后面。只要这些动词后跟形容词或名词作宾补，就要用 it 作形式宾语，而将真正的宾语不定式放在后面。

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

I found impossible for to work out the maths problem. （2010・01・山东胜利一中检测）

A. it; he B. that; he C. that; him D. it; him

(2）根据句子结构填词 (原创)

I felt a great honour to be invited to the party.

解析：(1) 选 D。it 在这里用作形式宾语。在英语中能作形式主语或宾语的只能是 it，that/ this 都不可以。

(2) it

Page No.851

Unit 2 Robots

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

核心单词

1. desire

n. 渴望

vt. 想 要常

用结构：

desire sth. 渴望得到某物

desire to do sth. 希望/渴望做某事

desire that sb. (should) do 要求……

have a desire for sth./to do sth. 渴望得到某物/希望做某事

at one’s desire 照某人的希望

Page No.853

We all desire happiness and health.我们都希望幸福健康。

Everyone has a desire for success, but not everyone desires to get rich.每个人都渴望成功，但并非人人都渴望金钱。

He desires you to go to see him at once.

=He desires that you should go to see him at once.

他要求你马上去见他。

Page No.854

(2)翻译句子 （原创）

①他想接受大学教育。

②他们要我快点回来。

③我请他立即回信。

④她要你立即见她。

⑤她应邀演奏了一曲。

解析：(1) 选 B。wish 表示不能实现的愿望，句型搭配 wish for sth.；C、D 两项不符合题意。desire 渴望，想要；符合句意。

(2)①He desired a college education.

②They desire me to return soon.

③I desire an immediate answer of his.

④She desires that you (should) see her at once.

⑤She played a piece at others’ desire/by desire.

Page No.855

2. alarm

n.警报

vt.使……惊恐

We were much alarmed by the fire in the forest.

森林失火使我们大为惊慌。

常用结构：

give /raise the alarm 发警报

ring the alarm 敲警钟

sound the alarm 发警报；吹警报号

take (the) alarm at 对……感到吃惊；因……而惊恐

be alarmed at ... 被……吓一跳

As soon as he saw the smoke, he sounded the alarm.

一看见烟雾，他就鸣响了警报。

Page No.856

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①看到孩子们在返校时遭遇车祸的消息，家长们很害怕。
②看到大火，社区的居民发出警报。
答案：①The parents took (the) alarm at the news that their children caught a traffic accident when returning the school.
②The residents in the community raised the alarm when seeing the great fire.
Page No.857
3. accompany
vt.陪伴
常用结构：
accompany sb. to a place　　陪伴某人去某地
accompany sth. with/by sth.　　与……同时存在
He accompanied his old father to the hospital to see what's wrong with his stomach.
他陪他的老父亲去医院查看胃部出了什么问题。
Thunders accompanied by heavy rain in this season are very common.
这个季节，雷鸣常常伴有大雨。
Page No.858
高手过招
翻译句子　　（原创）
①总统出现了,被六个健壮的保镖护随着。
②回到家乡，他的老同学们陪着他参观了这个城市。
答案：①The president appeared and was accompanied by six strong bodyguards.
②When returning hometown, he was shown around the city accompanied by his old classmates.
Page No.859
4. envy
n.&vt. 妒忌；羡慕
常用结构：
envy sb. doing/for sth.　　忌妒或羡慕某人做某事
with envy　　羡慕地；忌妒地
be the envy of　　是令人羡慕/忌妒的事物
out of envy　　出于妒忌
I envy you having such a good friend!
我羡慕你有这么一位好朋友！
They looked at her new car with envy.
他们羡慕地看着她的新车。
He was filled with envy of me at my success.
他十分羡慕我的成功。
They only say such unkind things about you out of envy.
他们纯粹出于忌妒才说你这些坏话。
联想拓展
envious adj.　　羡慕的； 妒忌的
be envious of　　妒忌……；羡慕……
Page No.860
高手过招
翻译句子　　（原创）
①她出于忌妒说了关于你的这些话。
②汤姆妒忌他哥哥事业上的成功。
答案：①She said these words about you out of envy.

②Tom was envious of his brother’s success in business.

Page No.861

重点短语

5. reach for

伸手碰到/去拿/够到……

He reached for his gun when he heard the enemy's sound.

当他听到敌人的声音时就伸手去拿自己的枪。

He reached into his pocket for his keys.

他把手伸到口袋里找钥匙。

联想拓展

reach to　　达到；触到

within/out of/beyond one's reach　　在某人伸手可及/够不到的距离

Page No.862

高手过招

单项填空

I keep medicines on the top shelf, out of the children's ＿＿＿＿. （2010·01·江苏徐州检测）

A. Reach　　B. Hand　　C. Hold　　D. Place

解析：选A。考查固定搭配。out of one's reach 意为"在某人伸手够不到的距离"；符合句意"孩子够不着"。

Page No.863

6. test out

考验；试验

This model had been tested out before it was put into production.这个型号经过试验后才进行大批量生产。

Before the lecture, the professor is used to testing out the whole experiment.

上课前，这个教授习惯先将整个实验试验一番。

联想拓展

test on sb./sth.　　在……(身上)做实验/试验

have/take a test in　　参加……考试

Page No.864

高手过招

翻译句子　　（原创）

①成千上万的人们将参加这周日的公务员考试。

②那个咨询顾问总是先将新的政策在他自己的公司里进行实验。

答案： ①Tens of thousands of people will take an entrance test for government officers this Sunday.

②The consultant always testing the new policy on his own company first.

Page No.865

7. ring up

打电话给……

On arriving at the airport, he rang up his mother to say everything was OK.

一到达机场，他就打电话给母亲报平安。

联想拓展

ring back　　回电话

ring off　　挂断电话;停止讲话

ring a bell　　唤醒(经常是模糊的记忆)

ring up the curtain　开始(一场演出，一个事件或一次行动)

I have to ring off now because my friend is waiting for me.

我朋友在等我，我得挂电话了。

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①今早他刚起床就有人给他打电话了。

②见到老板进来，他赶紧挂断电话假装在工作。

答案：①The moment he got up this morning, someone rang him up.

②Seeing his boss coming, he hurried to ring off and pretended to be working.

Page No.867

8. leave ...alone

不打扰

Leave him alone and he will produce.

别打扰他，他会写出来的。

You shouldn’t have left Andy alone in the mountains, it was very dangerous.

你不该将安迪一个人留在山上，因为那样非常危险。

联想拓展

leave behind 留下,遗留

leave aside (把某事)搁置一边

leave for 出发前往

leave out 省去;遗漏;不考虑

He was asked to leave for another city in 24 hours.

他被要求 24 小时内离开到另一个城市去。

The teacher required us to leave out some unnecessary words in our essays.

老师让我们将论文中一些不必要的词语省去。

Page No.868

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①老板携款潜逃了，只留下一间空厂房。

②听到警报，警察丢下家人冲出去看发生了什么事。

答案：①The boss escaped with all his fortune and left an empty factory behind.

②Hearing the alarm, the policeman left his family behind and rushed out to see what happened.

Page No.869

9. set aside

将……放到一边；节省或保留（钱或时间）；暂时不考虑

He set all offers aside. 所有的提议他都置之不理。

联想拓展

set down 记下，写下

set off 动身;爆炸

set out 出发；开始做……

set up 创立，建立；竖起

He set off for work. 他动身去上班。

Page No.870

高手过招

单项填空

Try to at least an hour each day for learning new vocabulary.（2010·01·山东烟台检测）

set off B. set out C. set aside D.set down

解析：选 C。句意为：争取每天至少抽出 1 小时时间学习新词汇。set aside 为某种目的留出、拨出（金钱、时间）等，符合句意。

10. turn around

转向

He heard a voice but when he turned around, he saw nobody.

他听到一个声音，但转身却没发现有人。

As he walked towards the hotel, he suddenly turned around and found an old lady following him.

当他朝旅馆走去时，突然转身发现一个老妇人跟着他。

联想拓展

turn away	把(脸)转过去
turn against	背叛；反抗
turn on/off	打开/关掉
turn up	出现;调大(音量)
turn down	拒绝;调小(音量)
turn out	结果是;证明是

Page No.872

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①那个年轻的女士无法想像要是她的丈夫背叛她的话会是怎么样。

②虽然贫穷，但是女孩毅然地拒绝了别人的帮助。

答案：①The young lady can’t imagine what if her husband turns against her.

②Though poor, the girl turned down others’ help firmly.

Page No.873

重点句型

11. Claire didn’t want the robot in her house, especially as her husband would be absent for three weeks, but Larry persuaded her that the robot wouldn’t harm her or allow her to be harmed.

克莱尔并不想把机器人留在家里，特别是在她丈夫离别三周的这个期间。但是，克莱尔被拉里说服了。他说，机器人不会伤害她，也不会让别人来伤害她。

to be harmed 为动词不定式的被动语态。

All these gifts must be mailed immediately so as to be received in time for Christmas.

所有的这些礼物必须马上邮寄，以便在圣诞节时及时收到。

It remains to be seen whether Jim’ll be fit enough to play in the finals.

吉姆最后是否适合演出仍将拭目以待。

Page No.874

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①小汤姆假装被射中了哭喊着要糖吃。

②此药得一日三次，饭后服用。

答案：①Little Tom pretended to be shot and cried for a candy.

②The medicine is required to be taken three times a day after meals.

Page No.875

12. As she turned around, there stood Gladys Claffern.

当她转过身时，（她发现）Gladys 站在那儿。

there stood Gladys Claffern 为倒装句。在谓语为动词 go, come, run, stand, live 等表示位置转移的动词及 be 动词的句子中,为了强调句子中一些副词 there, here, up, down, in, out, away 等，可将副词置于句首，若这时主语是名词，句子用全倒装；若是代词，则不用倒装。

There comes the teacher and her students.

老师和她的学生们来了。

Out rushed the boys.男孩们冲了出去。

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①年轻的母亲抱着怀里两个月大的婴儿跑开了。(用倒装结构)

②生气的老板和他的秘书走了进来。

答案：①Away ran the young mother with a two month old baby in her arms.

②In came the angry boss and his secretary.

Page No.877

Unit 3 Under the sea

Page No.878

核心单词

1. witness

vt. 当场见到；目击

vi. 作证

n. 目击者；证人；证据

We all came to witness history and watch the historic flight of teacher Christa McAuliffe.

我们聚集在一起见证历史，观看教师克里斯塔·麦考利夫历史性的飞行。

He witnessed to having seen the man enter the building.

他作证看到那个男人进入这栋建筑物。

Life without a friend is death without a witness.

在世无朋友,死后无证人。

Page No.879

常用结构：

give witness on behalf of sb. 替某人作证

be a witness to ... 是……的目击者

witness to sth./doing sth. 为某事作证

bear/give witness to sth. 作证;证明某事

高手过招

单项填空

Many people the car accident, so it was not difficult to investigate. （2010·01·陕西宝鸡检测）

Witnessed B. Harnessed C. Swallowed D. Drugged

解析：选 A。考查动词词义辨析。句意为：许多人目击了那场车祸，因此不难调查。witness 目击；harness 控制；利用； swallow 吞掉；drug 下药；使服药。

Page No.880

2. drag

vt. 拖；拉；扯

n. 令人厌烦的人/事；累赘

常用结构：

drag behind 落在后面

drag in 扯进来

drag sb. down 使某人沮丧

drag on 拖延

Her skirt dragged on the floor. 她的裙子拖在地上。

易混辨析

drag/draw/pull

drag 表示费力，缓慢而艰难地“拉、拖”较重的物体。

draw 表示从容地“拉、拖”。

pull 表示突然、急速地“拉”，方式不限。

We dragged the fallen tree from the road.
我们把倒在路上的树拖到一边。
Draw your chair up to the table.
把你的椅子拉到桌子旁边来。
Five monkeys pull the elephant.
五只猴子在拉大象。
Page No.881
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①那个国家卷入了战争之中。
②她把她的孩子强拉到牙科诊所。
答案： ①The country was dragged into the war.
②She dragged her child to the dentist’s.
Page No.882
3. urge
vt. 催促；极力主张；驱策
常用结构：
urge sb. on sth.=urge on sb. sth.
力劝某人某事；催促某人某事
urge sb. to do sth. 激励某人做某事；怂恿某人做某事
urge that ... 主张……（用虚拟语气）
He waved his hand as if urge us on.
他挥挥手似乎在鼓励我们前进。
They urged me to eat the strange food.
他们怂恿我吃那种奇怪的食物。
She urged that I (should) apologize to him.
她主张我应该向他道歉。
联想拓展
urgency n.紧急，迫切，急迫
urgent adj.紧急的，急迫的;执拗的
In case of urgency, call the police.
一旦发生紧急情况，打电话给警察。
They were urgent in their demands.
他们坚持他们所提出的要求。
Page No.883
高手过招
单项填空
The captain urged his team make greater effort. （ 2010·01·陕西师大附中检测）
With B. on C. of D. To
解析：选 D。句意为： 船长鼓励他的团队要加把劲。urge sb. to do sth. 激励某人做某事。
Page No.884
4. abandon
vt. 遗弃；抛弃；放弃
常用结构：
abandon oneself to sth. 陷入某事
联想拓展

abandonment n.	\[U\]遗弃；离弃；抛弃；放弃

abandoner n. 放弃者；遗弃者；投保者
abandonee n. 承保人；被遗弃者
abandoned adj. 被遗弃的；无拘束的
Page No.885
易混辨析
abandon/desert/give up
abandon 强调永远或完全放弃人或事物等；可能是被迫的，也可能是自愿的。
desert 着重指违背法律责任和义务或自己的信仰与誓言的行为，多含非难的意味。
give up 普通用语，侧重指没有希望，或因为外界压力而放弃。
The match was abandoned because of bad weather.
比赛因恶劣的天气而取消。
Never desert your friends.永不遗弃朋友。
He persuaded me to give up my plan.
在他的劝说下，我放弃了那个计划。
Page No.886
高手过招
单项填空
As time goes on, fewer and fewer old men are in the countryside.（2010·01·山东青岛模块检测）
A. Abandon B. to abandon
C. Abandoning D. being abandoned
解析：选 D。此处老人和遗弃为被动关系，故选 D。
Page No.887
5. aware
adj. 意识到的；知道的
常用结构：
be／become aware of sth. 意识到某事
be aware that-clause 知道……；意识到……
make sb.aware that-clause 提醒某人注意……
make sb.aware of ... 让某人注意到……
He wasn’t aware of the danger.他没有意识到危险。
Is she aware that I’m coming? 她知道我要来吗?
联想拓展
unaware adj.不察觉的；不知道的
awareness n. 知道；意识
温馨提示
aware 后跟名词性从句时，一般在从句前不能用 of，但在 what 从句前必须用 of。
Page No.888
高手过招
用适当的介词或 aware 的适当形式填空 （原创）
①When you write your goals in a particular way, you are able to make yourself continuously aware situations that will bring you nearer to your goal.
②The principal didn’t seem to be aware there should have been so much dispute about the decision.
③Health officials throughout the world have tried to make people raise about AIDS.
④Mike seems of the trouble he’s causing, otherwise he would stop it.
答案：① of ② that ③awareness ④unaware
Page No.889

6. hang

v.悬挂;吊;施以绞刑;垂下

The boy hung his head in shame. 那个男孩羞愧地低下了头。

联想拓展

hang back 踌躇不前；退缩

hang down 下垂；低下头

hang on to 紧紧握住；坚持下去

hang on 抓紧；取决于；不挂断电话

hang about=hang around 徘徊；荡来荡去

hang by/on/upon a thread/hair 千钧一发

hang it doubt 疑惑不决

hang up 悬挂；吊；终止；挂断电话

Page No.890

高手过招

单项填空

I was so angry that I on him. （原创）

A. hung down B. hung up

C. hanged on D. hang back

解析：选 B。句意为：我太生气了，以至于我挂掉了他的电话。hang down 下垂；低下头 ; hang on 紧紧握住；坚持下去；（打电话不挂断）; hang back 犹豫；畏缩; hang up 悬挂；吊；终止；挂断电话。

Page No.891

重点短语

7. sort out

整理；挑出; 处理(问题 / 困难)

I've sorted out the papers that can be thrown away.

我已经把那些可以扔掉的报纸整理出来了。

We've got a few problems to sort out.

我们有几个问题要解决。

联想拓展

sort through 翻查;归整

put away 把……存放好

He was sorting through a pile of papers on his desk。

他在整理桌上的一堆文件。

Put away your books, please.

请将书本收起来。

Page No.892

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①他从相片中挑出自己的，并把它们放到相册中。

②放学了，把书本收好。

答案： ①He sorted his own photos out from others and kept them in an album.

②After school, put away your books.

Page No.893

8. help(...) out

帮助（某人）摆脱困难或危难

Can you help me out with the maths problem?

你能帮我解出这道数学题吗?

联想拓展

help sb. with sth.	帮助某人某事

with the help of 在……的帮助下；借助
help oneself to 请随便自己动手(夹菜吃、用……等)
can’t help doing sth. 禁不住，忍不住
can’t help but do sth. 只能；不得不
Please help yourself to some fish. 请随便吃点鱼。
She can’t help laughing. 她忍不住大笑起来。
I can’t help but wait. 我只能等。
Page No.894
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①在老师和同学们的帮助下，小明终于摆脱了爱玩电子游戏的习惯。
②地震中，许多家长不得不眼睁睁地看着他们的孩子埋在废墟中。
答案：①With the help of the teacher and his classmates, Xiaoming managed to help himself out of his problem with computer games.
②In the earthquake, many parents couldn’t help but leave their children in the ruins.
Page No.895
9. throw oneself out of
跃出
The man suddenly threw himself out of the water and said:“I’m here”.
那个人突然跃出水面说:“我在这儿”。
联想拓展
throw oneself at 冲向
throw oneself into 投身于；积极从事
throw away 扔掉
throw up 呕吐
throw sb. into prison 把某人投入监狱
throw at 对准向……扔去(希望击中)
throw to 向……(方向)扔去
Page No.896
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①休息了一会后，他重新投入了救援工作。
②你可以帮他把书递给他，但向别人投掷书本是不对的。
答案：①After a short rest, he threw himself into rescuing again.
②You can help him to give this book to him but it’s wrong to throw books at others.
Page No.897
10. upside down
上下翻转
The naughty child is always turning everything in the room upside down.
这淘气的孩子总是把房间的东西搞得乱七八糟。
联想拓展
inside out 里面朝外，翻面的
He wore the sweatshirt inside out.
他把运动衫反过来穿。
Page No.898
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）

①你把那幅画挂颠倒了！

②春节期间，中国人喜欢将“福”字倒过来挂。

答案：①You’ve hung that picture upside down!

②In the Spring Festival, Chinese people would like to hang the character “fu” upside down.

Page No.899

11. bring in

带来; 获利，赚；求援；求助；引进

Bring those suspects in. 把嫌疑犯们带进来。

These boys bring in ￡60 a week.

这些男孩子每周赚六十英镑。

How much did the sideline bring the farmer family in last year?

去年副业使这家农户增加了多少收入?

The sale brought us in over $1000.

这笔买卖使我们赚了一千多美元。

They began to use English, but they also brought in some words from their own languages.

他们开始使用英语，但他们同时也从自己的语言中吸收一些词汇。

Page No.900

联想拓展

bring about changes 引起变化

bring along 把……带来

bring back 归还

bring down 使倒下;降低;减少

bring on 使前进

bring out 使显现;出版

bring up 教育;抚养;呕吐

Page No.901

高手过招

单项填空

Summertime out neat, belted cotton dresses and a hat pulled low over her sunglasses.

（2010·01·浙江嘉兴一中检测）

Took B. brought C. carried D. turned

解析：选 B。bring out 意为“拿出，穿出”。句意为：夏天她穿着干净、扎腰带的棉布裙，低戴着帽子遮着太阳镜。根据句意，选 B。

Page No.902

重点句型

12. It was a time when the killer whales, or “killers” as they were then called, helped the whalers catch the baleen whales that were on their annual migration.

那个时期，虎鲸（当时被称为“杀手”）帮助捕鲸人在每年须鲸迁徙时捕捉须鲸。

It was/is a time when ... 曾经一度（那时）

It was a time when motorcars were rare.

那时汽车是很罕见的。

It was a time when she could not bear the pain and wanted to kill herself.

她曾经一度无法忍受病痛，想结束自己的生命。

Page No.903

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①曾经没人能理解我的计划和雄心。

②现在这一社区的人们相互帮助，和谐相处。

答案： ①It was a time when no one could understand my plan and ambition.

②It is a time when people in the community would like to help each other and liveharmoniously.

Page No.904

Unit 4 Sharing

Page No.905

核心单词

1. relevant

adj. 有关的；切题的

常用结构：

be relevant to= have sth. to do with 与……有关

The meeting is relevant to the matter in hand.

这次会议与正在进行的事情有密切关系。

In the exams, make sure that everything you write is relevant to the questions you have been asked.

在考试时一定要注意，你写的所有内容都要切合题意。

Page No.906

联想拓展

relevance n. 关联；相关性

have relevance to 与……有关

have no relevance to=have nothing to do with 与……无关

What you say has no relevance to the subject.

你所说的与主题无关。

高手过招

单项填空

Topics for compositions should be to the experiences and interests of the students. （2010・01・浙江宁波检测）

A. Concerned B. dependent

C. concerning D. Relevant

解析：选 D。句意为：作文的题目应与学生的经历和兴趣有关。be relevant to 与……有关；而 concerning 是介词，相当于 about,后面不加 to。

Page No.907

2. adjust

vt.&vi.调整；使适合

I usually adjust my watch before I go to work in the morning.

我通常早上上班前校准我的表。

常用结构：

adjust(sth. / oneself)(to sth.)使适应；适应

It seems that the newcomers have adjusted themselves in the schoo1.

新来的同学看来适应了学校生活。

He adjusted himself very quickly to the heat of the country.

他使自己很快适应了这个国家炎热的气候。

These desks and chairs can be adjusted to the height of any child.这些桌子和凳子能被调整到适合任何孩子的高度。

联想拓展

adjustment n. 调整；修正

adjustable adj. 可调节的；可调整的注意：该词作不及物动词时，意为“适应于”，后常跟介词 to。

Page No.908

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

①You can’t see things clearly through a telescope unless it is correctly to your sight.
（2010・01・江西九江检测）

A. Adjusted B. Examined C. Checked D. tested

② You can this desk the height of any child.
（2010・01・江西吉安检测）

A. adjust; to B. make; to

C. suit; to D. remain; for

(2) 翻译句子 （原创）

①他很快就适应了这种生活方式，从此幸福地生活着。

②许多新兵没能很快的适应军中生活，结果病倒了。

Page No.909

解析：(1)①选 A。句意为：通过望远镜你看不清东西，除非你把它调好。adjust ...to 调整……以适应。

②选 A。句意为: 你可以调节这张桌子以适应孩子的身高。 adjust sth. to sth.调整某物以适应某物。

(2)①He soon adjusted himself to the way of life and has lived happily ever since.

②Quite a few new soldiers could not adjust themselves to army life and fell ill.

3. participate

vi. 参加,参与；有关系

常用结构：

participate in 参加,参与

Everyone in class is expected to participate in these discussions.

希望全班同学都能参与这些讨论。

Page No.910

联想拓展

participant n. 参加者,参与的人

participation n. 参与；分享

易混辨析

participate in/attend/join/take part in/join in

participate in 正式用语，表示参加，参与。强调与他人共同参加某一活动，暗示以一种积极的态度参加。

attend 正式用语，一般用于指参加会议，出席典礼或招待会等，也可以指上学，听课，听演讲或讲座等。

join 常用词， 作及物动词； 通常指参加某组织或团体， 并成为其中的一员， 其宾语往往是 the army/party/team/club 等。

take part in 指参加群众性的活动，侧重说明主语参加该项活动并在其中发挥一定的作用。part 前若有修饰语，要用不定冠词。如 take (an active) part in school/activities。

join in 参加正在进行的活动，其宾语一般是竞赛、娱乐、谈话、讨论、聚会、游戏等名词，可以用于 join in (doing) sth./join sb. in (doing) sth. 结构中。

Page No.911

高手过招

(1)单项填空

The teacher is easy going, and she often in the pupils’ games.
（2010・01・安徽淮北检测）

A. Participates B. acts

C. Joined D. took part

(2)用方框内所给单词或短语的适当形式填空 （原创）

join/join in/take part in/attend/participate in

①They all the plot.

②At the age of eighteen, he the party.

③The children　　the English Evening and had a good time.

④He didn’t school yesterday because of his illness.

⑤Zhou Enlai the student movements actively when he was at school.

Page No.912

(1)解析：选 A。由时态可排除 C，D 两项；根据句意表示的是“参加一个活动”可知，答案选 A。

(2)①participated in ②joined ③joined in ④attend ⑤took part in

4. privilege

n. 特权；特别待遇

vt. 给予……特权常

用结构：

enjoy privileges 享受特权

the privilege of doing sth./to do sth.有幸做某事

privilege sb. from ... 给某人特权使某人免于……

I hope to have the privilege of working with them again.

但愿有幸和他们再度合作。

Page No.913

联想拓展

privileged adj. 有特权的

be privileged to do sth. 荣幸地去做某事

We are privileged to welcome you as our speaker this evening.

我们荣幸地欢迎你今晚来给我们做演讲。

解析：选 B。句意为：女士们，先生们，我非常荣幸地介绍今晚的演讲嘉宾。privilege of doing sth./to do sth. 有幸做某事。

Page No.914

5. donate

v. 捐赠，赠送

常用结构：

donate sth. to sb. 向某人捐赠某物

She donated a large sum of money to the charity.

她捐了一大笔钱给那个慈善机构。

The van was donated to us by a local firm.

这辆货车是当地一家公司捐赠给我们的。联

想拓展

donation n. 捐赠；捐赠物；捐款

make/give/present a donation to sb. 捐赠给某人

send a donation to 把捐款寄至……

promise a donation 应允捐赠

Page No.915

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①He (捐赠)a million to the school.

②The rest of the money we get is (来自捐赠).

答案：①donated ②from donations

Page No.916

6. purchase

vt.& n.买；购买; (以某种代价)换得；(经过努力)取得，赢得(常与 with 连用)

The new couple spent some money on the purchase of the furniture necessary for their new house.

这对新婚夫妇花费了一些钱购买新房子里必备的家具。

The farm was sold at ten years　　purchase.

这农场以相当于十年土地收入的价钱售出。

常用结构：

made a purchase 买件东西

leave sb.to his purchase 让某人自谋生路

live on one s purchase 自谋生计，自找活路

purchase freedom with blood 以血的代价赢得自由

purchase and sale 买卖

Page No.917

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①这是我前几天买来的一件东西。

②你不努力什么也不能得到。

③他给他的儿子一些钱买课本。

答案： ①It is a recent purchase of mine/what I purchased the other day.

②You can’t get any purchase without efforts/purchase anything if you don’t make any effort.

③He gave his son some money for the purchase of / to purchase school books.

Page No.918

7. distribution

n.分配；分发 分布状态

At present, the distribution of profits cannot satisfy most of the people.

目前利润的分配未能满足大多数人。

联想拓展

distribute vt. 分配; 散布

distribute sth. To 把某物分配/分发给……

distribute sth. Among 在……分发某物

Before the opening ceremony of the super-market, some workers are sent to distribute handbills on the street.

超市开业前，一些工作人员被派去街上散发传单。

Page No.919

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①幼儿园的老师正在给小朋友们派发礼物。

②救援物资的发放依然在讨论中。

答案：①The teacher in the kindergarten is distributing the gifts to the children.

②The distribution of the rescuing goods is under discussion.

Page No.920

重点短语

8. make any (a) difference to

对……有任何关系或影响；对……起作用

It makes a difference which you choose.

你选择哪一个，事关重大。

Your support will certainly make a difference in our cause.

你的支持当然会在我们的事业中发挥重要作用。

联想拓展

make no/a little/much/some difference

没有/有一点/有很大的/有一些差别

tell the difference between 说出……的差别

make a difference between 区分……

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

高手过招

单项填空

Does it any difference whether we leave at 9:00 or at 10:00? （2010・01・陕西西安检测）

Tell B. be C. give D. Make

解析：选 D。句意为：我们是 9 点还是 10 点离开会有什么影响吗？make any difference 有……影响。

Page No.922

9. stick out (of sth.)

=stick sth. out of

伸出；突出

Don’t stick your arm out of the car window.

不要把胳膊伸出车窗外。

联想拓展

stick out for 坚持索取；坚决要求

stick at 坚持不懈

stick together 团结在一起；站在一起

stick to 坚持；忠于

stick up 向上突起；竖起

stick up for 支持；维护

Page No.923

高手过招

单项填空

Once you made a decision, you should it.

（2010・01・山东济南模块检测）

stick out B. stick to C. persist in D. insist on

解析：选 B。考查动词短语辨析。句意为：一旦你作出决定，你就应该坚持下去。stick to+ n./pron. 坚持；stick out 突出；坚持；persist in 固执己见； insist on doing sth. 坚持做某事。根据句意，选 B。Page No.924

重点句型

10. I know you’re dying to hear all about my life here, so I’ve included some photos which will help you picture the places I talk about.

我知道你急于了解我在这里的生活情况。我在信中附有几张照片，能够帮助你想像出我所谈到的地方。

be dying to do sth 意为“极想做某事”。

All of them are dying to see the movie.

他们所有人都极想看那部电影。

Page No.925

联想拓展

be dying for sth. 极想得到某物

表示“渴望”的相关短语:

be thirsty for sth.

be eager to do sth.

desire to do sth.

have a strong desire for sth.

long to do sth./ for sth.

starve for sth.

have an urge to do sth.

be keen to do sth./ be keen on doing sth.

由动词 die 组成的短语：

die away 逐渐消失

Page No.926

高手过招

单项填空

Smallpox, a kind of disease, has now died .

（2010・01・河北石家庄检测）

A. out B. away C. off D. Down

解析：选 A。考查短语辨析。 die out 灭绝，消失;die away 渐息；die down 平息；die off (花、草)枯死。根据句意，选 A。

Page No.927

Unit 5 Travelling abroad

Page No.928

核心单词

1. board

n.&vt. 上（船，车，飞机等）；付费；木板；布告牌

常用结构：

above board 光明正大地

across the board 全面的；全盘的

sweep the board 全胜，大获全胜

go by the board 被丢弃;(计划、安排)全部失败

boarding card 登船证/登机证

boarding house 旅馆；寄宿房屋

Page No.929

易混辨析

board/aboard/abroad

board 有两个词性。作为动词时，意为“上（船，车，飞机等）”；作为名词时，意为“木板；布告牌;膳食费用”。

aboard 有两个词性。作为介词时，意为“在（船，车，飞机等）”;作为副词时，意为“上（船，车，飞机等）”。

abroad 只能作副词，意为“在国外，到国外”。

He pays $90 a week board and lodging.

他每周的食宿花费为 90 美元。

We must not take combustible goods aboard.

我们且不可带易燃品上车。

It was introduced from abroad.这是从国外引进的。

Page No.930

高手过招

单项填空

With all the two hundred passengers , the plane took off.

A. on board B. on the board

C. on boards D. going on board

解析：选 A。on board 在(船，车，飞机等)上，符合句意。

Page No.931

2. recommend

vt. 推荐，介绍;劝告，建议

常用结构：

recommend sb.= recommend ...to sb. 向某人推荐，介绍

recommend sb. for	推荐某人做……

recommend sb. as 推荐某人为……
recommend sth. for 推荐某物做某种用途
recommend doing 建议做……
recommend sb. to do sth. 建议某人做某事
recommend that ... 建议……
The teacher recommended that we (should) read the novel.
老师建议我们读一下这本小说。
Page No.932
易混辨析
introduce/recommend
两者都有介绍的意思。introduce 介绍与某人相识，常用句型 introduce sb. to sb.；recommend 向某人介绍或推荐，侧重于个人倾向。
温馨提示
recommend 后可接不定式的复合结构；也可接 doing 形式。 类似用法的词还有：allow, advise, forbid, permit，etc。
另外，recommend 表示主观判断时，后面通常为虚拟语气的宾语从句，从句中谓语动词用 should+动词原形，should 可以省略。类似用法的词还有：
advise, command, demand, desire, insist, order, propose, require, suggest, urge, etc。
Page No.933
高手过招
单项填空
①I recommened an English Chinese dictionary, which I thought would be of great help to his studies. （2010・01・辽宁大连检测）
A. Buying B. bought C. to buy D. be bought
②It has been that I try these pills for seasickness. （2010・01・陕西师大附中检测）
A. warned B. said
recommended D. Argued
解析： ①选 A。由句意可知，recommend 此处表示建议,后面直接跟动名词。
②选 C。考查动词词义辨析。句意为：别人推荐我试试这些治晕船的药片。It has been recommended that ... 意为“据推荐，据建议……”。
Page No.934
3. substitute
n.代替者；代用品
vt.用……代替……
The regular teacher is ill, so a substitute is teaching.
正式老师生病了，所以由一名代课老师上课。
常用结构：
a substitute for sth. 某物的代替者（代用品）
substitute A for B=substitute B with/by A 用 A 代替 B
substitute for 代替
We use honey as a substitute for sugar.
我们用蜂蜜作糖的替代品。
We must substitute a new chair for the broken one.
我们的这把破椅子得换新的了。
Mr Smith substituted for the teacher who was sick.
史密斯先生代替了那位生病的老师。

联想拓展

substitution n. 代替；替换

Page No.935

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①我把名单上我的名字换成了你的。

I your name mine on the list.

②我们推荐的商标完全可以替代原来的。

We recommend this brand as a good.

答案：①substituted; for ②substitute

Page No.936

4. acknowledge

vt.承认；确认；答谢

常用结构：

acknowledge sth. 承认某事

acknowledge doing sth. 承认做了某事

acknowledge that ... 承 认 ……

acknowledge sth./sb. to be/as 承认某事/某人是……

acknowledge help 对帮助表示感谢

It is universally (generally) acknowledged that ...

……是大家公认的

Page No.937

They acknowledged having been defeated at last.

最终他们承认被打败了。

He was acknowledged to be the best player.

他被认为是最好的队员。

She is acknowledged as an expert on the subject.

她被认为是这方面的专家。

She acknowledged his help in her letter.

她在信中对他的帮助表示感谢。

It is universally acknowledged that Taiwan is a part of China.

台湾是中国的一部分，这是大家公认的。

联想拓展

acknowledgement n. 承认；感谢

in acknowledgement of 以感谢……

Page No.938

高手过招

(1) 同义句转换 （原创）

①They acknowledged having been defeated.

They acknowledged that .

②Most people acknowledged that he was innocent.

that he was innocent.

(2) 完成句子

①Do you (承认是你的过失)?

②She (被公认为) the best tennis player in the world.

③Stephen Henry (接受……为) his heir.

答案： (1)①they had been defeated

②It was generally acknowledged

(2)①acknowledge your fault
②is acknowledged as
③acknowledged; as
Page No.939
5. comfort
n.舒适；安慰
vt.安慰
You are a great comfort to your parents.
你是你父母最大的安慰。
常用结构：
comfort ...with 以……安慰；以……使舒适
comfort sb.for sth. 因某事安慰某人
give comfort to(sb.) 安慰(某人)
take／have／find comfort(in ...) 感到安慰/安心/宽心；(从……中)得到安慰
She always finds comfort in her children when thinking of the loss of her husband.
想到死去的丈夫，她只能从孩子们身上得到安慰。
联想拓展
comfortable adj. 安乐的;合适的;令人感到安慰的;充裕的;惬意的
be comfortable about/with sth. 对某事感到轻松/惬意
Page No.940
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①任何人都能享受我心爱的椅子所给予的背部舒服。
Anyone can enjoy my favorite chair.
②亲人们前来安慰失去父母的那位小孩。
The folks came to / the loss of his parents.
答案：①comforting their backs with
②comfort the child for／give a comfort to the child for
Page No.941
6. occupy
vt.占有；占领；占据
常用结构：
keep sb.occupied 使某人忙碌
occupy oneself with／in(doing) sth. 忙于(做)某事
be occupied in(doing)／with sth. 忙于(做)某事；正在做某事
The workers are occupied in building new houses.
建筑工人们正忙于建造新房子。
联想拓展
occupation n.职业
Please fill in the form stating your occupation.
请在表格中填入你的职业。
Page No.942
高手过招

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

①这个座位有人占吗?
Is / ?
②这种游戏会让孩子们玩上一阵子的。
This game will .
③他在教育部担任要职。
He in the Ministry of Education.
④教师不仅要专心于教书还要育人。
A teacher should teaching.
答案：①anyone occupying the seat／this seat occupied
②keep the children occupied
③occupies an important position
④be occupied(occupy himself／herself)with education as well as with
Page No.943
7. contradict
vt. 反驳； 反对； 否认; 与……矛盾
Your actions contradict your declared moral principles.
你的行为违背了你宣称的道德准则。
The boy was very angry and contradicted his teacher in public.
男孩非常生气,当众反驳了他的老师。
The reports contradict each other. 这些报告相互矛盾。
常用结构：
contradict oneself 自相矛盾
联想拓展
contradiction n. 矛盾；反驳
contradictory adj. 相 矛 盾 的
Page No.944
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①他所说的话与事实相矛盾。
②那些事实与他的理论相悖。
答案：①His statement contradicts with the facts.
②The facts contradict his theory.
Page No.945
重点短语
8. keep it up
保持优秀成绩；继续干下去
Well done，and keep it up，Tom! 干得好，汤姆，再接再厉!
联想拓展
keep one’s head/temper 保持冷静/强压怒火
keep a school/family/diary 开办学校/养家糊口/写日记
keep one’s word/keep one’s promise
履行诺言
keep the law 守法
keep in touch with 与……保持联系
keep an eye on ... 照看;密切注视
keep up with 跟上；保持同步水平不落后
keep away from (常与 from 连用)远离；不接触

keep to sth.	信守；坚持；坚守；不违背(诺言、

计划等)

keep ...from(doing)sth. 避开；禁止；克制

Page No.946

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①We appeal to the government to (降低) prices.

②The police asked the people to / (远离) the scene of the accident.

③Though things changed，they (坚持；信守) the original purpose.

④We asked her to stop talking，but she (继续干下去).

⑤He stopped at a shop for something，so he failed (跟上) his associates and was left behind.

⑥把你的狗从我这儿拿开!

Keep !

⑦他总是说话算数的。

He always keeps / .

⑧他对他的结论守口如瓶。

He kept .

Page No.947

答案：①keep down ②keep away from/keep off

③kept to ④kept up ⑤to keep up with

⑥your dog off me ⑦his word／his promise

⑧his conclusion to himself

9. as far as one is concerned

就……而言

As far as I am concerned，I can’t object to your marriage.

就我(个人)而言，我不反对你们的婚事。

As far as English is concerned，he is the best in our class.

就英语学习方面来说，他是我们班最优秀的。

联想拓展

as／so long as 只要；像……一样长

as soon as ... 一……就……

as much as 尽量多地

as far as 远到；就……

Page No.948

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①就我而言, 我完全支持你的想法。

②就这项规则来说，没人能找到它出自何处。

答案： ①As far as I am concerned, I completely support your idea.

②As far as the rule is concerned, no one can find out where it comes.

Page No.949

10. settle in

（迁入新居、更换工作后）安顿下来

The Dutch settled in South Africa.荷兰人在南非定居。

She didn t settle in London until graduation from Cambridge University.

直到从剑桥大学毕业后她才在伦敦定居。联想拓展

settle (oneself) down to sth. 安下心来做某事

settle down (活动一段时间后)平静 下来；舒舒服服地坐下； 躺下；定居；成家

Page No.950

高手过招

用 settle 的相关短语填空 （原创）

①It was two o’clock before I could finally writing the next chapter.

②When things abroad，I’ll give you a call.

答案：①settle down to ②settle down

重点句型

11. “It’s not just study that’s difficult. You have to get used to a whole new way of life, which can take up all your concentration in the beginning,” explained Xie Lei, who had lived all her life in the same city in China.

“困难不仅仅是在学习方面，你得适应一种全新的生活方式，在一开始的时候这就会占去你的全部精力，”谢蕾解释说。她在中国时一直居住在同一座城市。

Page No.951

It’s not just study that’s difficult.是一个强调句型。It was in the playground that our school meeting was held.

学校运动会是在操场上举行的。

It was not just the place of party that was hard to find. We also had to find a professional DJ.

不仅只是晚会的场地难找，而且我们还得找到一个专业的主持人。

答案：①It’s not just what he said that hurt me so much. What he did also gave me bad impression on me.

②It’s yesterday that he sent me the message.

Page No.952

选修 8

Page No.953

Unit 1 A land of diversity

Page No.954

核心单词

1. distinction

n. 差别；区分；卓著

常用结构：

make a distinction between 对……加以区分

win a distinction for 因……而获功勋

without distinction 无差别地；一视同仁地

联想拓展

distinct adj. 清晰的；明显的；明确的

be distinct in ...from ... 在某方面与……不同

（as）distinct from ... 与……不同（的）

He has a distinct gift for drawing.他有很明显的绘画天赋。

You should make your writing distinct.

你应该把字写清楚。

Page No.955

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①There is a distinct possibility that she’ll be your teacher next term.

②Those two ideas are quite distinct from each other.

答案： ①她下学期当你们老师的可能性非常大。

②那两种观点截然不同。

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

2. means

n. 手段；方法（单数和复数形式相同）

常用结构：

by means of　　用……办法；借助……

by all means　　一定，务必；好的，当然可以

by no means　　决不，一点也不（位于句首时，句子用部分倒装）

by every means 用尽一切可能的办法

易混辨析

means/way/method

means 指“方法、方式、工具”，着重于具体的手段（单复数形式相同）。

way 指“一般的方法、方式或个人的特殊方法、方式”，与技巧或效果的好坏无关。

method 指“有系统的、有效率的精心拟定的方法”，也可以指抽象概念“条理”。

a way to do sth. / a way of doing sth./a method of doing sth. 做……的方法

in this way/with the method/by this means 用这种 / 些方法

by the way 顺便问一下

on one’ s way to ... 在去……的路上

in the way 挡住路

Page No.957

温馨提示

means 作主语且有 every, each 等词修饰时，谓语动词用单数；有 some, several, many, few 等词修饰时，谓语动词用复数。Radio and television are important means of communication.

无线电和电视是重要的通信手段。

Please find an alternative means of transport.

请另外找一种运输方式。

Every means has been tried. 每种方法都试过了。

All means have been tried. 所有方法都试过了。

She could not speak, but made her wishes known by means of signs.她不会说话，但她用手势表达了她的愿望。

Page No.958

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

—May I have a look at your book?

— .　　（2010・01・江苏南京检测）

A. By this means　　B. By all means

C. By this way　　D. By any means

（2） 翻译句子　　（原创）

①这绝非解决问题的良计。

②他借助一根绳子慢慢地下来了。

解析： (1) 选 B。by all means 意为“一定；当然可以”，符合句意。

(2) ①This is by no means a good way to solve the problem.

②He let himself down slowly by means of a rope.

Page No.959

3. majority

n. 大多数；大半

A/The majority of doctors agree that smoking is extremely harmful to health.

大多数医生认为吸烟对健康极为有害。

The majority was/were in favour of the proposal.

多数人赞成这个建议。

常用结构：

be in the/a majority 构成大部分/大多数
a majority over sb. 超过对方的票数
联想拓展
major adj.&n. 较大的；主要的；主修，专攻
minority adj.&n. 少数；少数民族；未成年
Page No.960
高手过招
(1)单项填空
Every means been tried and all well now.
A. have; go B. has; go
C. has; goes D. have; goes
（2）完成句子 （原创）
English speakers form the (大多数) of the population.
(3)用适当的介词填空
①Among the members of the committee those who favour the changes are the majority.
②They had a large majority the other party at the last election.
(4)用括号内所给词的适当形式填空
①The majority of people (prefer) peace to war.
②The majority of the damage (be) easy to repair.
Page No.961
解析：(1) 选 B。 考查 means 作主语时谓语动词的形式。means 意为“方式，方法”，单复数形式相同，被 every 修饰时谓语动词用单数形式；被 all 修饰时谓语动词用复数形式。
(2)Majority (3) ①in ②over
(4) ①prefer/prefers ②is
4. occur
vi. 发生；存在；出现
常用结构：
occur to (主意或想法突然)浮现于脑中;被想起，被想到 it
occurs to sb. to do sth. 使某人想到做某事
it occurs to sb. that ... 某人想到……
Just then an idea occurred to me. 就在那时我想起了一个主意。
It suddenly occurred to me that I had left my umbrella upstairs.我突然想到我把伞忘在楼上了。
Page No.962
易混辨析
happen/occur/take place
happen 是一般用语，尤其指偶然发生，表示“碰巧、恰好”的意思。
occur 文言意味较浓,常指某特定事物的发生，也可以表示某种想法出现在人的头脑中。
take place 指事先计划或预料到的“发生”，此外还有“举行”的意思。
New things are happening all around us.
新事物在我们周围不断发生。
The explosion occurred at 5:30 a.m.
爆炸发生在早上 5 点 30 分。
When will the basketball game take place?
篮球赛何时举行？
Page No.963
高手过招
单项填空

It suddenly to the detective that the millionaire was probably murdered by his own daughter.

（2010・01・安徽合肥检测）

Happened　B. occurred　C. thought　D. took place

解析：选 B。由空格后的 to 可知，选 B。occur to 一个想法突然呈现……。

Page No.964

5. indicate

vt. 指出；标示；表明；暗示

I asked him where my sister was and he indicated the shop opposite.我问他我姐姐在哪，他指了指对面的商店。

Research indicates that men find it easier to give up smoking than women.研究显示男人比女人更容易戒烟。

常用结构：

indicate sth. (to sb.)

向（某人）表示某事；把……指给（某人）看

indicate that ...表示……；示意……

联想拓展

indication n. 指出；表明

indicative adj.指示的；暗示的

Page No.965

高手过招

完成句子　（原创）

①The government has (表明) that it intends to cut taxes.

②A flashing red light (标示) that a stretch of road was undergoing repairs.

③There is every (表明) of a change in the weather.

答案：①indicated　② indicated　③indication

Page No.966

重点短语

6. live on

继续存在；继续生存

She lived on for many years after her husband died.

丈夫死后她继续活了许多年。

联想拓展

live on sth. 以某物为食；靠某种经济来源生活

live by doing sth. 靠做某事为生live

for sth. 以某事物为生活目标live

through sth. 经历某事物而幸存live

up to sth.

依照某事物行事；表现出符合某事物的标准

live with sth. 接受或容忍某现象

live to be... = live to the age of... 活到……岁

live a... life 过着……的生活

Page No.967

高手过招

用 live 的相关短语填空　（原创）

①The lonely old man charity.

②Mozart was dead but his music .

③My grandfather both world wars.

④We should work hard and try to our parents' expectations.

⑤The brave girl is learning to her disability.

答案：① lives on ② lives on ③ lived through

④ live up to ⑤ live with

Page No.968

7. team up with

（与某人）一起工作（尤指为共同目标）；与……合作

The two companies have teamed up to develop a new racing car.那两个公司已合作研制新型赛车。

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

He (与某人一起合作) his brother in the doubles.

答案： teamed/teams up with

Page No.969

8. mark out

划线；标出……的界线

They marked out the tennis court with white paint.

他们用白漆标出了网球场的界线。

Some of the best pupils have been marked out for special training.已经选出几名出色的学生进行专门训练。

联想拓展

mark sb. out for sth. 选出/选定某人做某事

mark down 写下，记下；降低……的价格

mark up 标出；提高……的价格

mark in 加画；绘入

mark out for 看中；选定

Just a moment. Let me mark down your name and address.等一下，让我把你的姓名和地址记下来。

Some shops marked up the goods unfairly.

有几家商店的货价提高得不合理。

He marked the book down to 49 cents.

他把书的标价降为 49 分。

Page No.970

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①他被选定担当更高的职位。

②我把那一点记在我的笔记本上。

答案：①He was marked out for a higher position.

②I marked that down in my notebook.

Page No.971

9. take in

包括；吸收；接纳；欺骗

The students find it easy to take in what you teach.

学生们发现你讲课很容易理解。

He had nowhere to sleep so we offered to take him in.

他没地方可以睡觉，于是我们就提出让他留宿。

联想拓展

take apart 拆开；剖析，抨击(论点等)

take down 拿下，取下；拆卸；记下

take back 取回，带回；收回说过的话；使……回忆 起昔日

take care of 照料；保管

take up 开始从事；占用(时间或空间)；着手处理

take medicine 服药

take it easy 别紧张，慢慢来

take over	继承；接收，接管

take off 脱下(衣服等)；起飞
take on 承担，从事；呈现
take one s place 入座；代替某人的位置
take one s time 不急，慢慢干
Page No.972
高手过招
用 take 的相关短语填空 （原创）
①Don’ t be by his promises.
②Who do you think will now that the governor has been dismissed?
③These boxes of yours are too much space.
④I was really when seeing old photos.
⑤Dear ladies and gentlemen，please now .The opera is soon to begin.
⑥Tom carefully what the teacher said.
答案： ①taken in ②take over ③taking up
④taken back ⑤take your place
⑥took down
Page No.973
重点句型
10. Exactly when the first people arrived in what we now know as California, no one really knows.
最早一批人具体是在什么时候来到我们现在了解的加利福尼亚地区的，谁也说不清楚。
what we now know as California 是一个由 what 引导的名词性从句，作 arrive in 的宾语, what 是复合关系代词，相当于 the thing(s) that。因此，在名词性从句中可以用 the thing(s) that 取代的，只能用 what。
Page No.974
联想拓展
①名词性从句中 what 与 that 的区别：that 在名词性从句中不作句子成分，what 必须作句子成分。
②名词性从句中 what 与 which 的区别：指代前文已经提到过的对象或范围时，用 which，否则用 what。
What he said sounds reasonable.
他说的听起来有道理。(what 作 said 的宾语)
That our team has won the game has been proved.
已经证实我们队赢得了比赛。
(that 在主语从句中不作句子成分)
There are many books available. I don t know which to read.有许多书可供阅读，但我不知道读哪一本。
(which 指的是前文提到的 books 中的一本)
What book do you want to buy?
你想买哪种书？(没有提及买什么书或哪一类书)
Page No.975
高手过招
选词填空（that/what） （原创）
①This is he wanted.
②This is the thing he wanted.
③She is no longer she used to be.
④She is no longer the person she used to be.
答案： ①what ②that ③what ④that
Page No.976
Unit 2 Cloning
核心单词
1. differ

v. 不同；相异；使……相异

常用结构：

A differs from B in ...A 与 B 在……方面不同

A differs with B about/on/over... A 与 B 就……意见相左

Their house differs from mine in having no garage.

他们的房子与我的不同，区别在于他们的没有车库。

The two sides still differ with each other over the question of pay.双方在报酬的问题上仍各持己见。

Page No.977

联想拓展

difference n.	不同之处
different adj.	不同的
make a difference to	对……产生变化；对什么有影响
different from	与……不同，不同于高手过招

Page No.978

高手过招

用适当的介词填空 （原创）

①The two squares differ colour but not size.

②The husband differs the wife who is to take charge of the money.

③It doesn t make a difference me whether you are going to stay.

④This is a different car the one I drove yesterday.

答案：1. ①in; in ②with; on/about/over

③to ④from

Page No.979

2. undertake

vt.（undertook;undertaken）着手;从事;承担；保证，答应

常用结构：

undertake sth. 着手/从事/承担某事

undertake to do sth. 保证/答应做某事

undertake that ...保证……

The scientist undertakes the experiment.

这位科学家从事这项实验。

I can undertake the responsibility for the changes.

我愿意承担这些变革的责任。

The lawyer undertook a new case.

那个律师接了一个新的案子。

He undertook to finish the job by Friday.

他答应星期五之前完成这项工作。

Page No.980

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①他下个月要去西部旅行。

He will undertake a journey to the west next month.

②我不能保证按时做完它。

I can t undertake that I ll finish it on time.

3. objection

n. 不赞成；反对；异议

常用结构：

have an objection to ... 反对……
raise/voice an objection 提出异议
Page No.981
联想拓展
object v. 反对，不赞成
n. 物体;目标
object to sb./sth. 不赞成某人/某事
object to doing sth. 反对做某事
object that ... 反对……
No one objected to the plan.没有人反对这项计划。
We object to being treated like this.
我们反对受到这样的待遇。
Why do some people object to human cloning?
为什么一些人反对克隆人类呢？
Mother objected that Jimmy was too weak to take up the job.
母亲反对说，吉米身体太虚弱，不能承担那份工作。
The building is the main object of his interest.
他最感兴趣的是这栋建筑物。
Page No.982
高手过招
单项填空
We to punishing a whole group for one person s fault. （2010·01·江西南昌检测）
Complain B. object C. oppose D. resist
解析：选 B。句意为：我们反对因为一个人的错误而惩罚整体。object to doing sth.反对做某事。
4. obtain
vt. 获得；赢得
Page No.983
易混辨析
obtain/acquire/gain/earn/achieve
obtain 意为“获得，买到”。指通过努力或请求而得到，含有满足要求或得达到目的的意味，用于正式语体中。
acquire 意为“经过努力逐步获得才能、知识、习惯等，也可用于表示对财物等的获得”，强调“一经获得就会长期持有”的含义。
gain 意为“通过较大努力获得某种利益或好处；亦可指军事上的武力夺取等”。
earn 意为“挣得，赢得”，指因工作等而得到报酬或待遇。
achieve 意为“得到；获得”，多指成就、目标、幸福的取得。
Page No.984
He failed to obtain a scholarship.
他没有获得奖学金。
I finally managed to obtain a copy of the report.
我终于设法弄到了这个报告的副本。
We should try to acquire good habits.
我们应该努力养成好习惯。
He found it easy to earn extra money.
他发现赚点额外收入很容易。
But we can only achieve it together.
然而，只有共同奋斗才能实现它。
Page No.985

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①The journalist immediately set out to obtain these important facts.

那位新闻记者立即着手获取这些重要的事实。

②Knowledge can be obtained through study.

知识可通过学习获得。

Page No.986

5. forbid

vt. (forbade/forbad; forbidden) 禁止；不准；阻止；妨碍

常用结构：

forbid sth./doing sth. 禁止，不许（做某事）

forbid sb. to do sth. 禁止某人做某事

The law forbids the use of chemical fertilizers.

法律禁止使用化学肥料。

I forbid you to tell anyone.

我不准你告诉任何人。

Page No.987

高手过招

翻译句子 （原创）

①飞机上禁止吸烟。

Smoking is forbidden on the plane.

②他爸爸不准他和她交谈。

His father forbade him to talk to her.

③要禁止小孩不玩电脑游戏很难。

It is hard to forbid children to play computer games.

Page No.988

6. owe

vt. 欠(账、钱、人情等)；应该把……归功于……；感激，感恩

常用结构：

owe sb. sth. = owe sth. to sb. 欠(某人)债

owe sth. to sb./sth.将某事物归因或归功于某人/事

He owes his father ￡50. = He owes ￡50 to his father.

他欠他父亲 50 英镑。

We owe this discovery to Newton.

我们把这一发现归功于牛顿。

Page No.989

高手过招

用适当的介词填空 （原创）

①How much do I owe you the groceries?

②He owes his success more luck than ability.

③I owe a lot my wife and children.

答案：①for②to; to③ to

Page No.990

7. resist

vt.抵抗；对抗

常用结构：

resist sth. 抵制；阻挡某事
resist doing sth. 反对做某事
can t resist doing sth. 忍不住做某事
The nation was unable to resist the invasion.
该国无力抵抗侵略。
A healthy body resists disease.
健康的身体能抵御疾病。
I could hardly resist laughing.
我忍不住笑了。
Page No.991
resistance n. 抵抗，反抗；抵抗力
resistant adj. 抵抗的；有抵抗力的
be resistant to sb./sth.对某人/某事有抵抗力
resister n. 抵制者；抗拒者；电阻器
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①He resisted being carried off.
他阻挡别人把他带走。
②She can not resist the temptation of chocolate.
她无法抗拒巧克力的诱惑 。
Page No.992
重点短语
8. pay off
得到好结果，取得成功(常用主动语态)；偿清债款；付清工资解雇；(对……进行)报复；收买(某人)
At last, his hard work paid off.
最后，他的努力得到了回报。
Did your plan pay off? 你的计划成功了吗?
联想拓展
pay for 付……的钱；为……而付出代价
pay back sth./pay sb. back sth. 偿还某物/偿还某人某物
pay sb.....for sth. 因某事而付给某人……
pay sb. ...to do sth. 付给某人……去做某事
pay sb. back for sth. 向……报复
Page No.993
高手过招
（1） 单项填空
If you go for a long ride in a friend s car, it s the custom to offer to some of the expenses.
（2010・01・江苏启东检测）
A. pay B. pay off C. pay for D. pay back
（2） 用 pay 的相关短语填空（原创）
①After ten years of hard working she finally
her debt.
②Our efforts are sure to .
③Have you the milkman this week?
④Have you the money the bank yet?
⑤I will you next week.
答案：(1)解析：选 C。根据句意可知，这里表示“为……偿付一部分费用”，故选 C。pay for 为……而付

钱；为……付出代价。

(2)① paid off②pay off③paid④paid; to⑤pay; back

Page No.994

9. in favour of

赞成;支持；有利于；主张

I am in favour of stopping work now. 我赞成现在停止工作。

in sb. s favour 对某人有利

do sb. a favour /do a favour for sb. 帮某人忙

do sb. the favour to do sth./do sb. a favour by doing sth.帮助某人做某事

favour vt. 赞同；支持

The child favours his father with his brown eyes.

这个孩子棕色的眼睛像他的父亲。

温馨提示

表示“支持，赞同某人/某事”除了用 in favour of 之外；还可以用：be for sb./sth.; stand on one s side 等。be against sb./sth.表示“不支持，不赞同某人/某事”。

PageNo.995

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

I don t like to ask people for help as a rule but I wonder if you could me a favour. （2010・01・江苏启东检测）

A. make B. do C. find D. get

(2) 用方框内所给短语的适当形式填空 （原创）

in case of/in consequence of/in favour of/in possession of

①All his family are his decision to work in western area after graduation.

②While reading, coming across new words, you’d better guess their meanings rather than refer to the dictionary.

③Mary told me that she was some lovely jewels.

④They had to move to another city the typhoon.

答案：(1)解析：选 B。句意为：通常我不喜欢向别人寻求帮助，但我希望你能帮我的忙。do sb. a favour 帮某人忙。

(2)①in favour of ②in case of

Page No.996

10. (be) bound to do ...

一定或注定(做)……

The weather is bound to get better tomorrow.

明天天气一定会变好的。

You ve done so much work that you re bound to pass the exam.你下了这么大功夫, 一定能通过考试。

联想拓展

bound v. 跳跃;限制;形成……的界限

n. 跳跃;界限;范围

adj.必然的,一定的

be bound to sth. 受……限制；被……所束缚

be bound for 准备到……去；开往；去……地方

be bound up with 与……有密切关系

Page No.997

高手过招

用括号内所给词语的适当形式填空 （原创）

①These problems were almost bound (arise).

②When you are dealing with so many patients, mistakes (bound) happen.

答案： ① to arise ②are bound to

11. be in good/poor condition

状况很好（坏）;情况很好（坏）

联想拓展

out of condition 状况欠佳

working/living/studying conditions 工作/生活/学习环境

on condition (that)... 在……条件下；

倘若……

on no condition 一点也不; 决不

in excellent condition 处于极佳的状况

Page No.998

The ship is not in a condition/is in no condition to make a long voyage. 此船的现状不适宜远航。

The car is still in excellent condition. 这辆汽车状况极佳。

高手过招

用适当的介词填空 （原创）

①The car has been well maintained and is excellent condition.

②He’s excellent condition a man of his age.

③I had no exercise for ages; I m really of condition.

④You can go out condition that you wear an overcoat.

答案：① in ②in; for ③out ④on

Page No.999

重点句型

12. Then came the disturbing news that Dolly had become seriously ill.

接着传来了多莉病重的坏消息。

当时间副词 now, then 位于句首，谓语是 come, appear 等表示“出现”一类的动词时，主句用全倒装语序。

Now comes your turn. 现在轮到你了。

高手过招

单项填空

In the dark forests , some large enough to hold several English towns. （2010·01·河南镇平检测）

A. stand many lakes B. lie many lakes

C. many lakes lie D. many lakes stand

解析：选 B。考查词语辨析及倒装语序。当地点状语位于句首时，主句用全部倒装，表示某物存在于某处， 应用动词 lie。

Page No.1000

Unit 3 Inventors and inventions

核心单词

1. distinguish

vi.&vt. 显示……的差别；使……有所不同；辨别（常与 from, between 连用）；区别；区分

I can distinguish them at a distance.

从远处我就能认出他们。

The man distinguishes himself by his wisdom.

这个人因他的才智而扬名。

Page No.1001

常用结构：

distinguish A from B 辨别 A 与 B

be distinguished from 不同于……

be distinguished by 以……为特征

be distinguished for	因……而著称

distinguish oneself 使出众；使著名

高手过招

(1)单项填空

It is not easy to cultured pearls from genuine pearls. （2010・01・河南郑州检测）

A. distinguish B. separate

C. identify D. recognize

(1) 解析：选 A。考查词语辨析。distinguish ...from 辨别，把……和……区别开；separate ...from 把……隔开；identify 辨别；recognize 认出，这两个词后面都不跟 from。

Page No.1002

(2) 完成句子 （原创）

①Can you distinguish (中间) those two objects?

②Children should be taught to (分辨是非).

③Speech human beings (不同于……) the animals.

④The Chinese nation is (因……而著称) its diligence and courage.

答案：①between

② distinguish right from wrong

③distinguishes; from

④distinguished for

Page No.1003

2. convenient

adj.便利的，方便的;就近的

常用结构：

be convenient to/for sb. 对(某人)方便

It is convenient to do sth. 做某事方便

Our house is very convenient for the shops.

我们的房子离商店很近。

联想拓展

convenience n. 方便

at your convenience 在你方便的时候

if it suits a person s convenience 如果对某人方便

for the convenience of sb. 为了某人方便起见

Page No.1004

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

Our new house is very for me as I can get to the office in five minutes. （2010・01・河南洛阳检测）

A. Adaptable B. comfortable

C. convenient D. available

(2) 完成句子 （原创）

Come and see me (无论你何时方便).

(3) 选词填空(convenient/convenience)

①We must arrange a time and place for the meeting.

②I keep my reference books near by desk for .

Page No.1005

(1) 解析：选 C。由 in five minutes 可知，此处应表示“便利的，方便的”。A 项意为“能适应的”；B 项意为“舒适的”；D 项意为“可以利用”，均不符合句意。

(2) whenever it s convenient to you

(3)①convenient ②convenience

3. bear

vt. 忍受；具有，带有；显示 （标记或特性）；忍耐；负担

The letter bears no signature.这封信上没有署名。

Page No.1006

易混辨析

bear/endure/stand/tolerate

bear 强调忍受者对痛苦、忧虑、烦恼以及责任的承受力，常用于否定句中。

endure 意为“经受长期的艰难、困苦或折磨而不屈服”，强调持久力和意志坚强，常用于否定句中。

stand 强调不屈不挠或经受得起，常用于否定句中。

温馨提示

tolerate 意为“忍受某人或某种行为而不反抗”，语气最弱，可用于肯定句和否定句中。bear 表示“忍受”时其后可跟 doing sth.表示习惯性动作，也可跟 to do sth.表示某一次具体动作，且多与 can, could，be able to 连用；作“生产，生育”讲时，有两种过去分词形式：borne 指“生产，生育”，而 born 指“出生”。 Page No.1007

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

I don t think our relationship could the strain of her mother visiting for a month.

（2010·01·浙江嘉兴检测）

A. bear B. tell C. put up D. hold

(2) 选词填空(bear/endure/stand/tolerate) （原创）

①Our tent won’t another storm like the last one.

②I can’t to wait any longer.

③She s already had to three painful operations on her leg.

④I will not that sort of behaviour in my class.

(1) 解析：选 A。bear 承受，符合句意；tell 区别，告诉；put up 举起，张贴；hold 持有。

(2) ①stand ②bear ③endure ④tolerate

Page No.1008

4. seize

vt. 抓住；捉住；占据；（指强烈的感情、愿望等）突然影响或控制（某人）；夺

She seized me by the wrist. 她抓住了我的手腕。

Panic seized us. 我们惊恐万状。

常用结构：

seize/hold of sth. 抓住某物

seize a chance/an opportunity 抓住时机

seize on/upon sth. 意识到某事物而立即加以利用

Page No.1009

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①His father asked him (抓住时机赚一些钱).

②We (身不由己) by a sudden impulse to run.

③The critics (抓住) my mistake and said I was ignorant.

答案： ①to seize the chance to make some money

②were seized ③seized on

Page No.1010

5. expectation

n. 预料；期待；期望

He has little expectation of passing the exam.

他对考试及格不抱希望。

I usually enjoy his films, but the last one didn’ t come to my expectations.

我向来喜欢看他的电影，但最近的一部并不像我期望的那样好。 常
用结构：
beyond expectation 出乎意料
in expectation of 预料，期望，指望
against all expectation(s) 与预期相反，出乎意料
come up to one s expectations 不负(某人)所望
Page No.1011
温馨提示
expectation 为不可数名词，当其意为“期望的事物，前景”时，常用复数形式。
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
我们在车站等着，期待她的到来。
We waited at the station her arrival.
答案：in expectation of
Page No.1012
重点短语
6. go through
经历(困难、痛苦等)；通过,成功,成交；审阅,检查；翻找,查看,搜寻；穿过,通过
The plan didn t go through. 计划没通过。
A terrible noise went through the house.
一阵可怕的声音响彻整幢房子。
联想拓展
look through 浏览；看破；温习
read through 通读;连续
flow through 流过;流经；通过……流动
get through 通过;接通;使……成功
search through 搜寻,查找
carry sth. through 成功地完成
put sth. through 完成或达成（计划、方案）
Page No.1013
高手过招
单项填空
I have never this kind of thing, so I’m afraid. （2010·01·浙江绍兴检测）
A. look through B. looked through
C. got through D. gone through
解析：选 D。根据句意可知，此处应意为“经历，经手”。故选 D。
7. call up
征召；召集服兵役；唤起；使人回忆；带入心中；给……打电话
He called me up to tell me the good news.
他打电话给我并告诉我这个好消息。
I was called up three months after war broke out.
战争爆发后的第三个月，我被应征入伍。
Page No.1014
联想拓展
call back 召回；回电话；收回处理
call on/at 拜访(on 后跟人；at 后跟地点名词)
call for 要求;提倡;为……叫喊

call forth　　使产生；引起

call in 召集;召来;来访
call off 取消；延期
call out 出动;唤起;大声叫唤
call on ...to do 号召……做
Page No.1015
高手过招
用适当的介词或副词填空 （原创）
①This is the work that calls patience.
②Human Rights groups are calling the release of political prisoners.
③He had to call the meeting because of the bad weather.
④I’ll call him tomorrow, do you want to visit him with me?
⑤The company has called all such models as built in 1990.
⑥The government then called troops to deal with the disturbances.
⑦The old photo calls memories of my childhood.

答案：①for ②for ③off ④on ⑤back ⑥ in ⑦up
Page No.1016
8. get through
设法联系上（尤指打通电话）；(设法)做完；通过考试；用光；用完；使成功;使理解;明白
We were all delighted when we heard you had got through the exam.
听到你通过考试时，我们都很高兴。
联想拓展
get across 通过；使……理解
get over 越过，克服（困难）；从（疾病）……恢复过来
get through with 结束；完成；花光（钱财等）
高手过招
单项填空
I couldn’t .The line was busy. （2010·01·浙江台州检测）
go by B. go around C. get in D. get through
解析：选 D。由“The line was busy”可知，这里指“电话没有接通”。go by 从旁边经过；go around 走来走去；get in 收获；get through 接通电话，符合句意。
Page No.1017
9. set about sth./doing sth./(to do)
(不用于被动语态) 开始（某工作）； 着手做某事
I must set about my packing. 我得开始收拾行李了。
The new government must set about finding solutions to the country s economic problems.
新政府必须立即找出解决国家经济问题的办法。
联想拓展
set sth. aside 将某事物放在一边；节省或保留（钱或时间）
set sth. down 将某事物记在纸上； 写下来
set out 出发；启程；（怀着目标）开始工作
set off 开始（旅行、赛跑等）
set sth. off 使（炸弹、地雷等）爆炸
set to 精力充沛地开始做某事
set sth. up 摆放或竖起某物；创（体育）纪录
Page No.1018
高手过招

用适当的介词填空（原创）

①I don’t know how to set this job.
②She set a new world record time the 100 metre race.
③They set on the last stage their journey.
④How do senior managers set making these decisions?
答案：① about ②up; in ③out; of ④about
Page No.1019
10. in case
如果；以防万一；万一
It may rain-you d better take an umbrella (just) in case (it does).
可能下雨——你最好带把伞，以防万一（下起来）。
联想拓展
in case of sth. 若发生某事；假如
in any case 无论如何；总之
in no case 在任何情形下决不；无论如何都不
in that case 既然那样；假若是那样的话
Page No.1020
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
① (遇火灾时), ring the alarm bell.
②You don’t like your job? (既然那样), why don’t you leave?
③Bring some money with you (以防万一) you want to buy something.
答案：①In case of fire
② In that case
③in case
Page No.1021
重点句型
11. The first thing I did was to see if there were any products that might help me, but there only seemed to be powders designed to kill snakes.
我所做的第一件事就是看看有没有现成的产品能帮助我。但是，看来只有一种毒杀蛇的药粉。
在 there be 结构中，be 的人称与数应遵循就近原则。
There was a bucket of water and two chairs in the corner of the house.
在房子的角落里有一桶水和两把椅子。
There are two chairs and a bucket of water in the corner of the house.
在房子的角落里有两把椅子和一桶水。
Page No.1022
联想拓展
there be 的常见形式有：there seems to be... / there happens to be... / there used to be ...etc.
高手过招
根据句意在横线上填入适当的单词（原创）
①The child seems (be) healthy, but the doctor is concerned.
②It seems to me there’s something funny about the case.
③There doesn’t seem (be) much hope that he’ll come.
答案： ①to be ②that ③to be
Page No.1023
12.....but it was not until five days later that Bell sent his first telephone message to his assistant Watson.
……但是贝尔是在五天以后才跟他的助手华生通了第一次电话。 该
句是“It is/was not until+被强调部分+that+其他”结构。

句中用了“not ...until....”的强调句结构，此句型只用 until，不用 till。但如果不是用在强调句型中，till 与

until 可通用；另外主句中的否定词 not 要提出来，放在 until 之前一起强调，因此 that 后面的从句要用肯定句，不能再用否定句。

He didn t go to bed until/till his wife came back.

=It was not until his wife came back that he went to bed.

直到他的妻子回来他才睡觉。

Page No.1024

温馨提示

not until 置于句首时，要用部分倒装句型，这时要注意从句不倒装，只倒装主句。

Not until last week did they find the lost bike.

直到上个星期他们才找到丢失的自行车。

Not until my son had entered the university did he realize the importance of time.

我的儿子直到上了大学之后才意识到时间的重要性。

Page No.1025

高手过招

单项填空

①It was midnight back home after the experiment. （2010·福建厦门双十中学检测）

A. until; that he went

B. until; that he didn t go

C. not until; that he didn t

D. not until; that he went

②Not until I began to work realize how much time I had wasted. （2010·福建厦门双十中学检测）

didn't I B. did I C. I didn't D. I

①解析：选 D。从题干和选项很容易看出这是一个含有 not until 的强调句。基本句型为“It is/was not until+被强调部分+that+其他成分”，故排除 A、B 两项。否定词 not 已提前，故主句中为肯定句，故选 D。句意为：直到半夜做完实验后他才回来。

②解析：选 B。not until 的倒装句型，用部分倒装，助动词提到主语之前，而且 not 已经移到句首，因此句中不能再出现，故选 B。

Page No.1026

Unit 4 Pygmalion

核心单词

1. adaptation

n.[C] 改编本；适应性

The play is an adaptation of a short novel.

这部戏剧是一部短篇小说的改编本。

The adaptation of animals to the environment is rather slow.

动物对环境的适应是相当慢的。

常用结构：

adaptation to 对……的适应

Page No.1027

联想拓展

adapt vt.使适应(合)；修改,改编

vi. (to)适应

adapt oneself to 使适应；使适合

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①He tried hard to himself (使自己适应) the new conditions.

②He made a quick (适应) the new environment.

③When they moved to Canada, the children (适应) the change very well.

答案：①adapt; to　②adaptation to　③adapted to

Page No.1028

2. betray

vt. 背叛(某人)；出卖(国家,朋友)给……；泄露秘密

常用结构：

betray ...to ...　出卖(国家,朋友)给……

betray oneself　无意中露出本性

He shouldn t betray his country to the enemy.

他不该出卖国家给敌人。

The officer betrayed the secret to his friends.

那军官把秘密向朋友泄露了。

Page No.1029

联想拓展

betrayer n.　背叛者,告密者

betrayal n.　背叛,卖国

an act of betrayal　背叛行为

高手过招

单项填空

When I asked the news, he　his happiness.

（2010・平顶山一中 1 月月考）

expressed　B. betrayed　C. showed　D. said

解析：选 B。句意为：当我问他这个消息时，他显露出高兴的样子。express 表达；show 表明;均不合句意；betray 显示，显露;符合句意。

Page No.1030

3. condemn

vt. 责难；责备；谴责某人；判处……有罪

We condemn his foolish behavior.我们谴责他的愚蠢行为。

常用结构：

condemn sb./sth. as　谴责/指责某人/某事为……

condemn sb. to sth.　判处某人某种刑罚

condemn sb. to do sth.　把……逼入某状态，使某人注定……

be condemned/sentenced to death 被判处死刑

The criminal was condemned to death.

那个罪犯被判处死刑。

联想拓展

condemnation n.　责难；判罪

Page No.1031

高手过招

(1) 单项填空

The September 11 Attack has been　by the entire international community. （2010・河南焦作一中 1 月月考）

A. Condemned　B. scolded　C. criticized　D. blamed

(2) 完成句子　（原创）

①She knew that society would　(指责) her for leaving her children.

②There was widespread international　(国际谴责) of the bombing.

③He was found guilty and condemned　death. （判处死刑）

答案： (1)解析：选 A。condemn 谴责;符合句意。scold 斥责；criticize 批评；blame 责怪。

(2)①condemn ② condemnation ③to

Page No.1032

4. acquaintance

n.[U]相识；熟悉；熟知

n.[C]相识的人，熟人

I have some acquaintance with the Russian.

我懂一点俄语。

She was a casual acquaintance in Vienna.

她是我在越南的一个熟人。

常用结构：

make one s acquaintance=make the acquaintance with sb. 结识某人

联想拓展：

acquaint vt. 使熟知，告知

acquaint sb. with ... 使某人认识/了解……

Page No.1033

高手过招

根据句子的意思在横线上填入适当的词 （原创）

①The musician had little acquaintance modern science.

②I am delighted to your acquaintance.

③She has many in the business community.

④I have some acquaintance Spanish.

⑤I need to myself with the new regulations.

答案： ①with ②make ③ acquaintances

④with ⑤acquaint

Page No.1034

5. fortune

n. [U]命运；运气；机会;

[C]财产；财富

She had the good fortune to be free from illness.

她运气好，没得病。

It is believed that it will bring good fortune in the coming year.

据说它能为人们在新的一年里带来好运气。

常用结构：

make a fortune 发财

seek one s fortune 外出找出路

try one s fortune 碰运气

联想拓展：

fortunate adj.幸运的；幸福的

be fortunate to do sth. / in doing sth. 幸运做某事

Page No.1035

高手过招

完成句子 （原创）

①He (发了财) by selling houses.

②She (寻求她的财富) in another country.

(不幸的是), the fire spread quickly after it had started.

答案： ①made a fortune

②sought her fortune

③Unfortunately

6. compromise

vi. 作出妥协,让步

vt. 损害名誉;危急;连累

n. [U][C]妥协；和解；让步

Such conduct will compromise your reputation.

如此举动将会损害你的名誉。

The dispute between the two countries was solved by compromise.

两国之间的纷争由于互相让步而解决了。常

用结构：

reach/arrive at/work out a compromise 达成妥协

make a compromise with 与……妥协

温馨提示：

compromise 用作动词或名词时，常与介词 on, between 搭配。

Page No.1037

高手过招

单项填空

If we all agree to make with each other— when we are in disputes, wars are forever gone and we are surely live in peace.（2010·山东济南一中 1 月月考）

A. adjustment B. compromise

C. promise D. acquaintance

解析：选 B。按照句意：前句意思“如果我们彼此之间做出妥协和让步……”；make compromise with 与……妥协;符合句意。

Page No.1038

7. overlook

vt. 忽略；没注意；俯瞰，俯视

You have overlooked several of the mistakes in this work.

你忽略了这个工作中的几个错误。

The secretary is very careful and never overlooks any little points.

秘书是个很细心的人，她从不忽视细节。

The house on the hill overlooks the village.

从山上的房子可以俯视村庄。

Page No.1039

易混辨析

overlook/neglect/ignore

overlook 意为“忽略”，多指由于草率、放任或没有注意到而忽视某事。 neglect 指没有给予或很少给予，后面接 sb./sth.,还可以接 to do sth./doing sth.。ignore 指有意识的拒绝，不给予理睬，后面可接 sb./sth.，不跟不定式。

高手过招

单项填空

American women were the right to vote until 1920 after years of hard struggle. （2010·潍坊一轮验收）

A. Ignored B. denied

C. overlooked D. neglected

解析：选 B。deny sb. sth.拒绝给予。

Page No.1040

重点短语

8. pass sb. off as...

把某人改变或冒充成……

He escaped by passing himself off as a guard.

他冒充警卫逃走了。
She passed him off as her husband.
她把他假充作自己的丈夫。
联想拓展：
pass sth. to sb. 将某物递给某人
pass away 去世
pass down/on... 把……传给后世
pass...on to 把……传递给……
pass by 走过；经过
pass through 通过；穿过
Page No.1041
高手过招
用适当的介词或副词填空 （原创）
①Pass the book me when you ve finished it.
②I was sorry to learn that his mother had passed .
③She passed a difficult period after her marriage failed.
④They bought up pieces of old furniture and passed them valuable antiques.
答案：①on to ②away ③through ④off as
Page No.1042
9. in terms of...
以……的观点；就……而说
In terms of money, he s quite rich, but not in terms of happiness. 就钱来说他很富有，但就幸福来说就不然了。
It is difficult to express it in terms of science.
要用科学的字眼来表达它是很困难的。
联想拓展：
in need of 需要
in charge of 负责
in search of 搜寻
in hope of 希望
in honor of 纪念；尊重
in favor of 有利于
in spite of 尽管
in case of 以防；万一
in place of 代替
Page No.1043
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①Think of it (从……角度) an investment.
②It was a bad year for films, (无论从数量上还是质量上).
③This project is (迫切地需要) funding.
④He is homeless and (非常需要帮助).
答案：① in terms of
②in terms of both quantity and quality
③ in great/urgent need of
④in great need of help
Page No.1044

10. show sb. in

领某人进来

Show him in as soon as he arrives.

他一到就立刻带他进来。

联想拓展：

show sb. out 领某人出去

show sb. around 领某人参观某地

show off　炫耀; 卖弄

show up　出现；来到某处; 揭露;显得好看

show oneself　出现；显现（本性等）

show a person the door 请（某人）出去；把（某人）赶出去

Page No.1045

高手过招

(1)单项填空

①It is unwise to　　your greater knowledge in front of the manager.（2010・山西太原一中 1 月月考）

A. show in　　B. show out

C. show up　　D. show off

②He didn　t show　　in the party last night.

（江西新余一中 1 月质量检测）

up　　B. off　　C. over　　D. in

(1)①解析：选 D。 考查短语辨析。句意为：你在经理面前炫耀你的知识是不明智的。show off 炫耀；卖弄；符合句意。

②解析：选 A。 句意为：昨天的聚会上他没有露面。show up 露面；出现。

Page No.1046

(2)用适当的介词或副词填空　　（原创）

①I will show you　　when you are in the city.

②She likes to show　　her nice figure by wearing tight dresses.

③Uncle George didn　t show　　for our wedding because he forgot it.

④He showed　　me　a sitting　room.

答案：①around　②off　③up　④into

Page No.1047

重点句型

11. Henry Higgins and Colonel Pickering are sitting deep in conversation.

亨利・希金斯正与皮克林上校促膝长谈。

形容词短语 deep in sth.意为“专心；全神贯注；深陷”，可用在句中作表语、状语。同样用法的词还有：lost, determined, absorbed, dressed 等。

He was deep in thought. 他陷入了沉思。

He was so deep in his work that he was not aware of the fire. 他如此专心工作以至于不知道发生了火灾。

Deep in work, he didn　t notice a man come in.

忙于工作，他没有注意到有人走了进来。

Page No.1048

高手过招

完成句子　　（原创）

①　　(determine) not to come back, she went out of the house.

　　(dress) as a princess, she went onto the stage.

答案：①Determined　②Dressed

Page No.1049

Unit 5　Meeting your ancestors

核心单词

1. alternative
n.可供选择的事物；（两者或以上）可能的选择
adj. 供选择的, 二选一的
常用结构：
have no alternative but to do sth.
只能做某事；除……外别无选择
We have no alternative but to go on.
除了继续下去,我们别无选择。
There was no other alternative but to fight till the victory.
除了战斗到胜利,别无选择。
Page No.1050
联想拓展：
alternatively adv. 或者，二者择一地
alternate vt. 使交替；vi.交替；adj. 交替的；轮流的
高手过招：
(1) 单项填空
In this school, the students have three courses, and seven courses.（2010・01・陕西师大附中月考）
A. required; alternative B. requiring; alternative
C. required; alternate D. requiring; alternate
解析：选 A。require(尤指根据法规) 规定、需要，此处用过去分词 required 修饰 courses，因为两者之间为被动关系。后空意思为“选择，选其一”，alternative 符合句意。
Page No.1051
(2) 单句改错 （原创）
①I had no alternative but report him to the police.
②You have the alternative to speaking or keeping quiet.
③Tom and Harry do the work on alternative days.
答案：①report 前加 to ②to→of
③alternative→ alternate
Page No.1052
2. arrest
vt. 逮捕，拘留，吸引(注意)
n.[C]逮捕
常用结构：
be arrested for sth. 因某事而被捕
arrest one s attention 吸引某人的注意
under arrest 被捕；被拘留
The criminal was arrested yesterday.那名罪犯昨天被捕了。
What she did arrested my attention. 她所做的吸引了我的注意力。
Page No.1053
高手过招
用适当的介词或 arrest 的适当形式填空 （原创）
①I got arrested careless driving.
②Her uncle was arrest, but nobody knew the reason.
③Five youths in connection with the attack.
④The public applauded the of the criminal suspect.
答案：①for ②under ③were arrested ④arrest
Page No.1054

3. preserve

v.保护,维持,保存
常用结构：
preserve sth. from　使……免遭……
You can preserve meat or fish in salt.你可以用盐保存肉或鱼。
It is one of the duties of the police to preserve public order.
警察的职责之一是维持公共秩序。
联想拓展：
preservable adj.　可保存的
preservation n.　保存
preserver n. 保护者，保存者
Page No.1055
易 混 辨 析 ：
preserve/conserve/reserve/protect
preserve v.　保护，维持，保存；
conserve v.保存，保护，强调珍惜；
reserve v. 指意见、看法的保留或座位的预定；
protect v. 保护，强调使其免受破坏或损害。高
手过招
(1) 单项填空
①In spite of failing to save every endangered species, we may preserve the majority　　extinction.
（2010・山东枣庄一轮验收）
A. Against　B. with　C. beyond　D. from
②It is the duty of the police to　　social order.
（原创）
A. Save　B.reserve　C.preserve　D. rescue
①解析：选 D。preserve sth. from　使……免遭……，符合句意。
②解析：选 C。A、D 两项都意为“拯救”；B 项意为“保留，保存”；C 项意为“保护，维持”。根据句意可知，选 C。
Page No.1056
(2) 完成句子　（原创）
①夏天收获的大量水果可冷藏或装瓶加以保存。
In the summer, large crops of fruit may　　by freezing or bottling.
②我认为这些有趣的旧习俗应该保存下去。
I think these interesting old customs　　.
答案：①be preserved②should be preserved
Page No.1057
4.　relief
n.减轻，解除
常用结构：
bring /seek/find/give/feel relief
带来/寻求/找到/予以/感到解脱
much to one　s relief=to one　s great relief
使某人宽慰的是……
relief road 备用车道
relief map 地形图
I felt great relief when I heard I had passed the examination.
当听到已经通过考试时，我感到轻松了许多。

联想拓展：
relieve one s feelings 发泄感情
relieve sb. of 使某人解除
The minister was relieved of his post.
部长被解除了职务。
高手过招：
单项填空
Hearing the news that her son was found, she breathed a sigh of .（2010·山西太原五中检测）
excitement B. joy C. relief D. belief
解析：选 C。按照句意此处为“减轻忧虑，松了一口气”，C 项符合句意。
Page No.1059
5. assume
vt. 设想，假定；主观认为；装出……的样子
常用结构：
assume sb./sth. to be 假定/认为某人/事是……
We assumed that you understood the situation.
我们认为你了解形势。
He assumed a well informed manner but in fact he knows very little. 他装出一副见多识广的样子，而实际上他知之甚少。
Page No.1060
联想拓展：
assumed adj.假装的，假的；假定的，设想的
an assumed result 假定的结果
assuming adj.自负的，傲慢的，过分自信的；
conj. 假如 (后跟从句)
assumption n. 假定，设想
His look of astonishment was assumed.
他那惊讶的样子是装出来的。
He is too assuming in this attitude about the energy supply.他在对待能源问题的态度上显得过于自信。
Assuming that the weather is favourable, farmers will have a bumper harvest.
假如风调雨顺，今年农民将获丰收。
Page No.1061
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①假如今天下午下雨我们该怎么办呢？
this afternoon, what shall we do?
②在证实他有罪之前我们必须要假定他是清白的。
We innocent until he is proved guilty.
答案：①Assuming it rains②must assume him to be
Page No.1062
6. somehow
adv. 不知怎么地；以……方式
常用结构：
somehow or other
不知是什么原因；由于某种原因；以某种方式
Somehow or other we became friends, I never knew just why it was.不知何故我们成了朋友，我绝不知道为什么会这样。

易混辨析：

anyhow/somehow/somewhat

anyhow 意为“无论如何”，相当于 anyway；at any rate；

somehow 意为“以某种方式(in some way or other)”或“由于某种原因”；

somewhat 意为“从某种意义上讲；有几分”，相当于 in a way, rather。

I always know I d get the job, somehow.

也不知为什么，我总觉得能得到那份工作。

Somehow we must get to Glasgow.

我们得设法到格拉斯哥去。

He could have finished it on schedule, but somehow he fell behind.他原本能按预定进度做完这件事的，但不知怎么却落后了。

I am somewhat tired of this book. 我对这本书有点厌烦。

Page No.1064

高手过招

选词填空(somehow/anyhow/somewhat） （原创）

①We must get the work finished or other by tomorrow morning.

②It may rain, but I shall go out， I don t mind the rain.

③The price was higher than I’d expected.

答案：①somehow②anyhow③somewhat

Page No.1065

重点短语

7. regardless of

adj. 不管, 不顾

People should be hired regardless of race and sex.

雇用人员应没有种族、性别的差异。

He continued speaking, regardless of my feelings on the matter. 他不顾及我在此事上的感受而继续往下说。

联想拓展：

regardless adv. 无论如何；不管；不顾

disregarding /in spite of /despite 三者意义和用法相同，区别不大。

regardlessness n. 不注意

Page No.1066

温馨提示：

in spite of the fact that 句式表示“虽然；即使,不管事实上如何”。

although/though conj. 尽管，虽然；其后接句子。

高手过招：

单项填空

① the difficulties in talking, they can understand each other by body language.（2010·安徽合肥八中检测）

A. Regardless of B. Although C. Though D. In spite

②Some people act regardless what will happen afterwards. （2010·江苏盐城质量检测）

with B. as C. of D. for

①解析：选 A。although 与 though 是连词，后需跟句子，而 the difficulties in talking 是名词短语，故排除。D 项表达有误。故选 A。

②解析：选 C。regardless of 不顾，不管。符合句意。

Page No.1067

8. fed up with

受够了;厌烦;饱受

I’m fed up with waiting for her.我等她都等得不耐烦了。

What's the matter? You look pretty fed up.
怎么啦？你显得那么不耐烦。
联想拓展：
feed sb./sth. on sth. 给（人或动物）食物；喂；饲养
feed on（动物）以……为主食
feed sth. to sb./sth. 给（人或动物）某物作为食物
Page No.1068
高手过招：
用适当的介词填空 （原创）
①Several children were feeding bread the ducks.
②What do you feed your dog ?
③Cows feed grass.
④I m fed up the same breakfast every morning.
答案： ①to ②on ③on ④with
Page No.1069
9. cut up
切碎；使伤心，严厉批评
Peter, why don t you cut up vegetables?
彼得，为何不把蔬菜切碎了呢？
联想拓展：
cut off 切断；剪掉
cut down 砍伐；削减
cut in 打断
cut out 剪去，删去;略去
cut into pieces 切成碎片
Don t cut in while I m talking!我说话时别插嘴!
Page No.1070
高手过招
单项填空
Half the forest was to make room for the new road. （2010 •江苏盐城质量检测）
cut off B. cut down
C. cut up D. cut away
解析：选 B。考查短语辨析。cut off 切除；cut down 砍倒；cut up 将（木头等）分解开。
Page No.1071
10. look ahead
向前看；为将来打算
联想拓展：
look back 向后看； 回顾
look out 留神；注意look
into 调查
look up 查找；形势好转；看望
look up to sb. 钦佩/尊敬某人
look through 仔细查阅
look forward to sth./doing sth. 盼望着
look on 旁观；看作
look over 快速浏览;复习
look down (on/upon sth.) 向下看； 轻视

Look out! There is danger ahead!当心!前面危险!

I m looking forward to seeing you this summer vacation.
我盼望今年暑假能见到你。
Page No.1072
高手过招：
完成句子 （原创）
①You should (翻阅字典查查这个生词).
②I am (盼望) hearing from you as soon as possible.
③ (当心) or you will catch cold.
④I have to (复习笔记) for the exam.
答案：①look up the word in a dictionary
②looking forward to
③Look out
④look over my notes
Page No.1073
重点句型
11. If only it could be just like last year!
要是能像去年那样该有多好啊！
if only 但愿；要是……就好了。其后一般用虚拟语气。
If only I were a doctor. 这句话用的是一般过去时，意思是：我现在要是个医生就好了。与现在相对应的句子用一般过去时。
If only I had said nothing. 而这句用的是过去完成时，意思是：我当时什么都不说就好了。是与过去时态相对应的，故用过去完成时。
If only my son didn t spend so much time before TV.
这句可以理解为一般现在时的虚拟语气，所以句子中使用了一般过去时态。原意为：要是我儿子不在电视 前面待那么长时间就好了。
Page No.1074
温馨提示：
only if 表示“只有，只要”， 后接让步状语从句，主句采用倒装句式。
I wake up only if the alarm clock rings.
只有闹钟响了，我才会醒。
Only if a teacher has given permission is a student allowed to enter this room.
只有得到老师的允许，学生才能进入这个房间。
高手过招：
单项填空
Look at the trouble I m in! If only I your advice. （2010·江苏徐州质量检测）
A. Followed B. would follow
C. had followed D. should follow
解析：选 C。由句意可知此处为 if only 引导的条件状语从句，且用与过去事实相反的虚拟语气。
Page No.1075
12. Abruptly she sat down, only to be scooped up by her laughing, shouting sister, Luna.
她突然坐了下来，结果被爱吵闹的妹妹露娜一把抱了起来。
only to do 是不定式作结果状语，意为“不料，结果却”,表示出乎意料或令人失望的结果。
I hurried to the post office only to find it closed.
我匆忙地去邮局，却发现它已经关门了。
He hurried home only to find the guests had left.
他匆匆忙忙赶回家, 结果发现客人们已经走了。
Page No.1076

温馨提示：

现在分词也可以作状语表示结果，但表示的是意料之中的结果。
He dropped the glasses on the ground, bursting it into pieces.他把眼镜掉在了地上，摔成了碎片。
高手过招：
单项填空
He got to the airport to find that the plane had left two minutes before. （2010·浙江温州一模）
just B. only C. in order D. almost
解析：选 B。“only+不定式”结构表示令人失望的结果。句意为：他到达机场，结果却发现飞机在两分钟之前就飞走了。
Page No.1077
Unit 1 Breaking records &
Unit 2 Sailing the oceans
选修 9
1. fit
adj.健康的；精力充沛的;合适的
n. 适合
vt. 适合；安装；使合身
vi. 适合,符合
Exercise keeps you fit.运动能使你保持健康。
Page No.1078
常用结构：
be fit for sth.适合某事
be fit to do sth.适合做某事
易混辨析：
fit/suit
fit 与 suit 都可作动词，意为“适合”。
fit 多指尺寸，大小的“合适”; suit 多指款式、颜色、条件、身份、口味等的“合适”。
This coat fits him.这件外套他穿正合身。(指大小)
The style of the clothes suits him well.
这件衣服的款式很适合他。（指款式、颜色）
Page No.1079
高手过招
选词填空（fit/suit）
①We all think that he is for the position.
②Does the new post your brother?
③The climate here me very well.
答案：①fit ②fit ③suits
Page No.1080
2. doom
vt. 注定；判决
n. 厄运；毁灭
常用结构：
be doomed to 注定(后接名词或不定式)
go to one’s doom 走向死亡
fall to one’s doom 坠入死亡/灭亡
meet one’s doom 死亡；灭亡one’
s doom is sealed 某人在劫难逃send
sb. to his doom 将某人处死

The species was doomed to extinction.这一物种注定要灭绝。

The project was doomed to failure from the start.
这项工程从一开始就注定要失败。
All mortals are doomed to die.
所有人都注定要死。
Page No.1081
高手过招
翻译句子
①The voyage was doomed from the start.
这次航行从一开始就注定要失败。
②Any attempts to bring under the mass movement for civil rights are doomed to failure.
任何镇压民权群众运动的企图都是注定要失败的。
③I am doomed to make way for Fanny Glover.
我注定要给范妮·格洛弗让路。
Page No.1082
3. mercy
n. 宽容；怜悯；仁慈；幸运之事;侥幸
We do pray you to show mercy. 我们恳求你发发慈悲。
It's a mercy the accident happened so close to the hospital.
幸亏车祸发生在离医院很近的地方。
常用结构：
at the mercy of 任凭……的摆布，完全受……支配
be thankful/grateful for small mercies 庆幸不利情况已略有改善
have mercy on/upon 宽恕；对……有怜悯之心
leave someone/something to the mercy of 听任……（可能有危险或危害的形势）摆布
throw oneself on someone's mercy 特意恳求（某人）宽恕
Page No.1083
高手过招
完成句子 （原创）
①他们对敌人毫不怜悯。
They little mercy to the enemies.
②我们对天气无能为力。
We're the mercy of the weather.
③恐怖分子毫无人性。
The terrorists are completely mercy.
答案：①showed ②at ③without
Page No.1084
4. expedition
n.远征；探险；考察；迅速，动作敏捷
They carried out the captain s orders with all possible expedition.
他们毫不迟疑地迅速执行船长的命令。
常用结构：
on an/the expedition 在……之行
expedition against 反对……的远征
expedition into 进入……的旅程
expedition to 去……的旅程
They plan to launch an expedition into the mountains.
他们计划发起一次登山探险。

He had made two expeditions to Spain to study wild plants.

他两次远去西班牙考察野生植物。

Page No.1085

高手过招

完成句子

①她在外购物。

She was out a shopping expedition.

②他带军征伐叛乱者。

He led a military expedition the rebels.

③这些科学家们将要去南极考察。

The scientists will an expedition to the South Pole.

答案：①on ②against ③go on

Page No.1086

重点短语

5. keep doing sth.

不停地做某事

When the teacher raised that question, I kept hoping that he would not ask me to answer it.

当老师提出那个问题时，我一直希望他不要让我来回答。

联想拓展：

keep+ adj. 保持……

keep+ n.+ adj./adv./n. 使(某人/某物)保持某种状态

keep+ sth. 保存某物

keep on doing 反复做……

keep sb. from doing 阻止某人做……

In spite of the noise outdoors, she kept on reading.

她无视外面的嘈杂声，继续读书。

His advice kept me from making a serious mistake.

他的忠告使我免于犯下一个严重的错误。

Page No.1087

高手过招

完成句子

①Will you please (保管这些钥匙) while I am away?

②This coat will (让你暖和).

③She (让我等) for half an hour.

④ (不要乱动) while I photograph you.

⑤He (反复问) asking silly questions.

⑥His girlfriend didn’t answer the phone, so Tom (一直在想) why.

答案：①keep these keys ②keep you warm

③kept me waiting ④Keep still

⑤kept on ⑥kept thinking

Page No.1088

6. connect with ...

与……连接；联系起来

The room connects with the dining hall by means of hallway.

这个房间通过一条过道与餐厅相连。

联想拓展：

connect ...with ... 把……和……联系起来

be connected with 和……联系；与……有关系

connect ...to ... 把……和……联系起来

Many people connect Germany with beer.
很多人把德国与啤酒联想在一起。
What he does can't be connected with what he says.
他所做的事跟他所说的没有任何联系。
One moment please,I'll connect you with Mr.Chen.
请稍候，我帮你将电话转给陈先生。
Page No.1089
高手过招
完成句子
①他把两个喇叭接上了扩音器。
He the two speakers the amplifier.
②这条走廊与客厅相连接。
This corridor the living room.
③请把电话转接到纽约。
Please me New York.
答案：①connected; to ②connects with
③connect; with
Page No.1090
7. as long as
只要，如果；既然，由于
I'll stay in Mexico as long as my money holds on.
只要我的钱还能维持一天，我就在墨西哥待一天。
I'll never forget that as long as I am living.
这件事我至死也不会忘记。
You will do all right so long as you follow my advice.
只要你听我的建议，你一定会做好的。
You may stay here as long as you like.
你高兴在这儿待多久就待多久。
联想拓展：
as far as 直到……为止；只要；据……，就……
as much as 差不多
as many as 和……一样多
as soon as 一……就……
as well as 也；又
Page No.1091
高手过招
完成句子
①只要你先整理好你的房间，就可以出去玩。
you tidy your room first, you can go out to play.
②工作一结束你就到这里来。
Come here you finish the work.
③玉米地延伸到一眼望不到边的地方。
Fields of corn spread out the eye could see.
④这次空难中多达一百人丧生。
100 people were killed in the air crash.
答案：①As long as ②as soon as
③as far as ④As many as

重点句型

8. Nobody knew that the earth moved westwards 15 degrees every hour, but sailors did know an approximate method of calculating longitude using speed and time.

以前没有人知道地球每小时向西移 15 度，然而海员们确实知道用速度和时间来计算经度的近似标准的方法。

①助动词 did 用于肯定句中，起强调作用，意为“确实，一定”，其后的动词用原形。如果其后跟形容词，则应在形容词前加 be。

I did finish the composition, but I forgot to bring it here.

我确实写完作文了，但我忘记带了。

Do be careful when crossing the road! 过马路时一定要小心！

②using speed and time 是 v. ing 短语作状语，表示方式。意为“借助于速度和时间”。

Hibernating in that way, the animal can sleep all through the winter.用那种方式冬眠，动物就可以睡过整个冬天。

Page No.1093

高手过招

完成句子

①他刚才确实读过这封信。

He this letter just now.

②千万要小心!

careful!

③那个正在讨论的问题对我们来说很重要。

The question is important to us.

答案： ①did read

②Do be

③being discussed

Page No.1094

9. It proved to be the most accurate and reliable of these early navigational instruments.

在这些早期的航海仪器中，它被证明是最精确和最为可靠的一种。

句中 prove 为系动词，意为“证实是，后来事实表明是”。其后可以接名词、形容词、to be 结构或 of 短语作表语。

联想拓展：

prove vt. 证明；证实；被发现是

prove sth. 证实某事

prove that clause 证明……

prove+n.+to be 结果是；证明为

How did you prove that he was the robber?

你如何证明他就是那个强盗？

The play proved (to be) very good.

这场话剧最终被证明不错。

Page No.1095

高手过招

完成句子

①你能向我们证明你的理论吗？

Can you ?

②那次天气预报次日被证明是准确的。

The weather forecast on the next day.

③她的表现表明她靠不住。

She has .

答案： ①prove your theory to us
②proved to be accurate
③proved herself unreliable

Page No.1096

Unit 3 Australia &

Unit 4 Exploring plants &

Unit 5 Inside advertising

核心单词

1. adequate

adj. 充分的，足够的；适当的；胜任的

There was adequate rain and snow last winter.

去年冬天雨雪充足。

Though a bit too old, he is still adequate to the work.

虽然他年纪大了点，却仍能胜任这项工作。

Page No.1097

易混辨析：

adequate/enough

adequate 表示符合一个客观标准，兼有适当的意思。

enough 侧重表示数量的足够，有充分的、足够的意思。

高手过招

完成句子

①给我们的钱基本上够用。

The amount of money we have been given is adequate.

②供不应求。

The supply is not adequate the demand.

③当时的那些火车被认为不适用于现代铁路。

The trains were not considered adequate use on the modern railways.

答案： ①more or less ②to ③for

Page No.1098

2. tolerance

n. 宽容,容忍

In ordinary living there can be some tolerance of unpunctuality.

在日常生活中，对不准时的行为可以给予一些宽容。

联想拓展：

tolerant adj. 宽容的；容忍的；有耐性的

be tolerant of/towards 对……能容忍/宽容

put up with 忍受；忍耐

He is tolerant of the ideas and behaviour of others.

他对别人的思想和行为很宽容。

A true friend is the one who overlooks your failures and tolerates your success.

真正的朋友能够忽略你的失败而容忍你的成功。

Page No.1099

高手过招

完成句子

①她对那些无礼的同事采取容忍的态度。

She’s tolerant those rude colleagues.

②他们学着宽容别人。

They learn to be tolerant other people.

③他具有幽默感又能宽容和忍耐。

He has a sense of humour plus and patience.

答案：①of/towards ②of/towards

③tolerance

Page No.1100

3. bother

vt. 打扰

vi. 操心

n. 烦扰

I am busy; don’ t bother me now. 我很忙，现在别打扰我。

I am sorry to bother you, but can you tell me the time?

对不起，打扰了，请问现在几点?

常用结构：

bother with/about 为……而烦恼；因……而操心

bother to do/doing 费神做……

Page No.1101

高手过招

（1） 用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空 （原创）

①The problem has been (bother) me for weeks.

②—Shall I help you with the cases?

—Don’t （bother）. I can manage.

（2） 完成句子

Don’t bother （为……而烦恼）us; we will soon join you.

答案：（1）①bothering ②bother （2）about

Page No.1102

4. hesitate

vi. 犹豫，踌躇，不愿

He hesitated before he answered because he didn’t know what to say.

他在回答之前犹豫了一下，因为他不知道说什么。

常用结构：

hesitate to do sth. 做某事犹豫不决hesitate

about (doing)sth. 对某事犹豫不决Don’t

hesitate about that. Do it at once.

对于那件事不要再犹豫了。马上去做吧。

联想拓展：

hesitation n. [U,C]踌躇；犹豫不决

Page No.1103

高手过招

用括号内所给动词的适当形式填空（原创）

①He was still （hesitate） over whether to join the expedition.

②He did not hesitate (ask) her to sit beside him.

③Without any (hesitate), he jumped into the river to save the drowning child.

④There’ s no room for (hesitate).

答案：①hesitating ②to ask/about asking

③hesitation ④hesitation

Page No.1104

5. be made up of...

由……组成

The medical team was made up of twelve doctors.
这支医疗队由 12 名医生组成。
联想拓展：
make up 化妆；捏造，虚构(故事、诗等)；弥补
be made of/from... 由……制成
be made into... 被 制 成 ……
Page No.1105
高手过招
完成句子
①（欧洲）共同市场由多少国家组成？
How many countries the Common Market?
②观众由小孩子们组成。
The audience very young children.
③这是由 3 个不同的部分组成的。
This is three different parts.
答案：①make up ②was made up of
③made up of
Page No.1106
6. far from
完全不；远非；远离
His work is far from satisfactory. 他的工作远不能令人满意。
He is far from well. 他并不健康。
The project is far from perfect. 这项企划很不完美。
高手过招
翻译句子
①They travelled far from home.
他们离家远游。
②Far from relieving my cough, the medicine aggravated it.
这种药非但不镇咳，反而使我咳嗽得更厉害了。
③His work is far from perfect.
他的工作远非十全十美。
Page No.1107
7. appeal to
（对某人）有吸引力；向……呼吁（请求）
Bright colours appeal to small children.
小孩们喜欢鲜艳的颜色。
We are appealing to anyone who saw the suspect to contact us.
我们恳请任何人看到嫌疑犯后与我们联系。
联想拓展：
appeal to sb. for 为……向某人呼吁（请求）
appeal for aid 请求援助
appeal for mercy （sympathy） 请求宽恕（同情）
appeal to arms （force） 诉诸武力
Page No.1108
高手过招
翻译句子 （原创）
①政府呼吁市民节约用水。

The government appealed to citizens for saving water.

②意识到自己的错误，这个犯人请求宽恕。

Realizing his mistakes, the criminal appealed for mercy.

Page No.1109

重点句型

8....., so it is just as well that snakes are very shy and usually attack only if they are disturbed and feel threatened.

……因此幸好蛇类很胆小畏缩，通常只是在被搅扰和感到威胁时才会主动出击。

just as well 幸好；无妨

It is just as well that you took another road.

幸好你们走了另一条路。

It is just as well that we did not follow him.

幸好我们没有跟着他。

Page No.1110

高手过招

翻译句子

①幸好你们到了学校。

It is just as well that you got to school.

②我们下雨天没出去倒也是好事。

It is just as well that we didn’t go out in the rain.

Page No.1111

9. However, although they look dangerous because of their wide mouths and sharp teeth, all but two or three kinds are harmless to humans.

然而，尽管它们有宽大的嘴巴和锋利的牙齿，看上去很危险，然而除了两三种之外，其余的对人类并没有危害。

all but 除了；几乎

All but the morning star other stars have disappeared.

除了启明星以外，其它的星星全部消失了。

He is the chairman of the committee all but the name.

除了没挂名以外，实际上他就是委员会的主席。

联想拓展：

nothing but... 只有……

Page No.1112

高手过招

翻译句子

①It was all but impossible to climb back into the boat.

再回到小船上已经几乎不可能了。

②The party was all but over when we arrived.

我们到的时候，晚会几乎要结束了。

③He was all but killed by the traffic accident.

他差点死于那场车祸。

Page No.1113

10. With so many messages from advertisers filling our daily lives， it is important to understand how advertisements work.

我们的日常生活中充满了众多的广告信息，可见了解广告如何发挥作用是很重要的事情。

句中 with....是独立主格结构，在句子中作状语。so many messages from advertisers 是该结构的逻辑主语，filling our daily lives 是该结构的宾语补足语，前后是逻辑上的主谓关系。作宾语补足语的还可以是介词短语、过去分词、形容词、副词等。

He sat there thinking, with his chin on his hand.

他手托下巴，坐在那儿沉思。

He stared at his friend with his mouth wide open.
他张大嘴巴凝视着他的朋友。
With production up by 60%, the company has had another excellent year. 产量上升了 60%, 公司又有一个好年景。
She used to sit reading in the evening with her pet dog her only companion.
她从前总爱在晚上坐着看书，她的宠物狗便是她唯一的伙伴。
Page No.1114
高手过招
完成句子（原创）
①她站在那儿跟朋友闲聊，孩子在旁边玩耍。
She stood there chatting with her friend, with her child .
②“我认为我们可以高昂着头离开，”艾里克松说。
“I think we can leave with our heads ,” Eriksson said.
③还有十分钟，你最好快一点。
With 10 minutes , you’d better hurry up.
答案：①playing beside her/them
②held high
③to go
Page No.1115
Unit 1 Nothing ventured,nothing gained &
Unit 2 King Lear
选修 10
核心单词
1. strengthen
vt.加强；巩固
The front army troops were strengthened by a large contingent of students from the military academy.
前线部队得到了一大批军事学院学员的增援。
The fence was strengthened with wire.
这围栏用金属丝加固了。
Page No.1116
常用结构：
strengthen unity 加强团结
strengthen one’s determination 坚定决心
strengthen national defence 巩固国防
联想拓展：
strength n. 力量；力气；长处
Page No.1117
高手过招
完成句子
①他建议使用氟化物来坚固牙齿。
He advises an application of fluoride to the teeth.
②我试图攒足力气再多干一些活。
I’m trying to summon up the to do some more work.
③风在天黑后才会变强。
The wind won’t until after dark.
答案：①strengthen ②strength
③strengthen

2. stick
vt.刺，插；粘，贴
vi.刺入
A thorn stuck me in the hand. 一根刺扎在了我的手上。
Stick the broken pieces together with glue. 用胶水把碎片粘到一起。
I found a nail sticking in the tyre. 我发现一根钉子扎进了车胎。
常用结构：
stick in one’s throat （骨头等）鲠在喉中；（话等）难以启齿
stick it out 拼到底，坚持到底
stick on 贴在……上
stick out 伸出
stick to 坚持；遵循
Page No.1119
易混辨析：
stick to/insist on/persist in
stick to 坚持（原则/计划/诺言/决定/意见等）。
insist on 坚持(意见/主张)。
persist in 坚持(行动)，有时表示固执己见或坚持不改。
Page No.1120
高手过招
翻译句子
①If we let him look after the money, I’m afraid much of it will stick to his fingers.
如果我们把钱交给他保管，恐怕大部分都要被他侵吞掉。
②She stuck the stamp on the envelope.
她把邮票贴在信封上。
③He drove into a bog, where his wheels stuck fast.
他把车开进了一片沼泽地，轮子牢牢地陷在了里面。
Page No.1121
3. rank
n.等级；军阶；地位；身份；社会阶层；军衔
v.把……分等；把……评级；排列，把……排成列
They served everyone regardless of social rank.
他们为所有的人服务而不计较其社会地位。
He was promoted to the rank of Captain. 他被提升为上尉。
常用结构：
rank ...among/with... 把……列在……当中
rank ...as...把……当作……
break the rank 打乱队形
in the front rank 在第一排；在前列
keep rank 保持队形
the rank and file 普通士兵们；老百姓们
Page No.1122
He can be ranked among the best students of this year.
他可能被评为本年度最优秀的学生之一。
Many people rank him as the greatest writer of the time.
很多人把他视为当代最伟大的作家。
易混辨析：

rank/class/order/grade

rank 意为“阶级”，指陆军将校的阶级，也指一般的社会阶级，特指世袭的贵族阶级。
class 意为“级”，以同一目的而聚合的、暂时的、经常变化的级，如学校的各班级、社会阶级等。
order 意为“阶级”，指一般的社会阶级，并特指僧职的阶级。
grade 意为“等级”，根据优劣而分，可指人也可指物，也指学校的评级。
Page No.1123
高手过招
翻译句子
①The captain was promoted to the rank of major.
那位上尉被提升为少校。
②He is a physicist of the first rank.
他是位一流的物理学家。
③The soldiers stood in two ranks.
士兵站成了两排。
Page No.1124
4. responsibility
n.责任；职责；负责
That means a lot of work and responsibility.
那意味着大量的工作和责任。
Taking care of a family is a big responsibility.
照顾全家是一项重大的责任。
常用结构：
take/have the responsibility for sth.对……负责
联想拓展：
responsible adj.负责任的，对（某人）负责的
responsibly adv.负责任地；可靠地
respond vt.回答，反应；应答
response n.回答，应答
be responsible for 对……负责make/give
a response to 对……作出答复Page
No.1125
高手过招
完成句子
①妇女生育孩子，还要负责照顾孩子。
Women bear children and childcare.
②我们期待机构内的下层人士能承担更多的责任。
We would expect individuals lower down the organization to more responsibilities.
③他对那个事故没有责任。
He has no responsibility that accident.
④一家之父应该有更多的责任感。
The father of a family should have more .
⑤你知道政府工作人员的职责吗？
Do you know the responsibilities the government workers?
答案： ①take responsibility for②take on③for
④sense of responsibility⑤of
Page No.1126
5. devotion
n.献身；忠心；专心；热爱

联想拓展：

devote vt.奉献；贡献
devoted adj.献身的；忠实的；挚爱的
devote oneself to+n.奉献给……；致力于……；献身于……
devote + n.（人生、时间、劳力等）+to
奉献于……；致力于……
be devoted to 献身于……；忠心于……
温馨提示：
devotion 常与介词 to 搭配，构成短语：devotion to 热爱……；专心于……；热心于……。
The devotion of parents to their children is selfless.
父母对孩子的爱是无私的。
Page No.1127
高手过招
完成句子
①法官赞扬消防人员的勇气和敬业精神。
The judge praised the firefighters for their bravery and .
②人们会记住她对扶贫事业的无私奉献。
She will be remembered for her selfless of the poor.
③他悉心照料母亲。
He cared for his mother .
答案： ①devotion to duty
②devotion to the cause
③ with great devotion
Page No.1128
6. adore
v. 崇拜；爱慕；喜爱（相当于 worship, admire）
He adored his wife and children.
他深爱着他的妻儿。
常用结构:
adore sth./doing sth.喜欢某物/做某事
She adores going to the theatre. 她非常喜欢看戏剧。
adoration n.热爱；崇拜；爱慕
adorer n.崇拜者；赞美者
adorable adj.迷人的，可爱的
adoring adj.崇拜的；爱慕的
Page No.1129
高手过招
用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空
①They (adore) her as a living goddess.
②She adores (visit) museums.
③I would adore (settle) back homeland.
答案： ①adored ②visiting ③to settle
Page No.1130
重点短语
7. hold on=hang up
别挂电话；坚持；继续
联想拓展：
hold out 维持；坚持；抵抗；幸存

hold to 坚持（原则，方向等）；紧握

hold on to 紧紧抓住
hold up 延误；耽搁；阻挡;承受
hold back 退缩；犹豫不定hold
off 抵住；挡住；拖延hold on
等一等；坚持
hold together 团结一致
Page No.1131
高手过招
完成句子
①他犹豫了，记起了自己以前犯下的错。
He , remembering the mistake he had made before.
②他挡住了沃斯不久前的一次挑战，赢了他 13 秒。
He a late challenge by Vose to win by thirteen seconds.
③等一会儿，我马上回来!
a minute, I'll be right back!
④该行业正设法留住有经验的工作人员。
The industry is trying to experienced staff.
⑤英国军队抵挡住了不断的攻击。
British troops against constant attacks.
答案：①held back ②held off ③Hold on
④hold on to ⑤held out
Page No.1132
8. set out
陈述；着手；陈列
The reasons for my decision are set out in my report.
我在报告里逐项陈述了作出决定的原因。
When we set out on this project, we know it would be successful.
我们着手做这个项目时，就知道它一定会成功。
联想拓展：
set about sth./doing sth.着手某事/做某事
set back 妨碍；阻碍
set down 把……放下来；写下；记下
set in(气候，季节等)开始
set off 动身，出发；发射
set up 竖起；创立
Page No.1133
高手过招
完成句子
①这一事件无疑阻碍了研究。
This incident undoubtedly the research.
②长途旅行出发前要检查一下燃油。
Check your oil before on a long journey.
③这份文件阐明了我们对这项提案的反对意见。
This document our objections to the proposal.
答案： ①set back ②setting off ③sets out
Page No.1134
9. hand over to sb.

移交责任或权力给某人；把……正式移交给某人

After handing over to his colleague, Mr Smith resigned from the firm.
史密斯先生把权力移交给他的同事后，向公司辞了职。
联想拓展：
hand sth. down to sb.把……传给某人
hand sth. on to sb.把……传给某人使用
hand sth. back to sb.归还某人某物hand
sth. in （to sb.）上交；呈交Page
No.1135
高手过招
完成句子
①这些技术一直世代相传。
These skills have been from generation to generation.
②把这本杂志传给你的朋友。
the magazine to your friends.
③她把课本发给新生。
She textbooks to the new students.
④你一定要按时交家庭作业。
Make sure you your homework on time.
答案：①handed down②Hand on③handed; out④hand in
Page No.1136
10. bring into...
把……带到某处
Please bring all the clothes into your room before you go on a trip.去旅游前，请把所有的衣服收拾到你自己的房间里去。
After bringing the thief into the office, he went out alone.
把小偷带进办公室后他独自一人出去了。联
想拓展：
bring about 使……发生
bring down 降低；使倒下
bring forth 生产；分娩
bring forward 把……提前；提出……
bring in 获利；赚得；引进
bring on 引起；导致；使发展；改善
bring up 教育；养育；提出；引出；呕吐
bring out 推销;推出
Page No.1137
高手过招
完成句子
①劝捐带来很多捐款。
The charity appeal many donations.
②很不幸，婴儿把吃的东西吐了出来。
Unfortunately, the baby his dinner.
③他神经崩溃是压力所致。
His nervous breakdown was by stress.
答案：①brought in
②brought up
③brought about

重点句型

11. I believe Shackleton must have mourned this unexpected end to his expedition, but he did not waste time on regrets.

我相信沙克尔顿肯定会对这次探险意想不到的结局而痛心，但他并没有浪费时间在遗憾和悔恨中。

must have done 表示对过去事情的推测，而且是很有把握的推测。

He looked great. He must have enjoyed his holiday.

他看上去气色很好，一定是度过了一个开心的假期。

My coat isn’t there, someone must have taken it by mistake. 我的外套不在那儿，一定是有人拿错了。

Page No.1139

联想拓展：

许多情态动词之后跟 have done 时，都可能有两三种不同的含义，因此要注意根据状语、句子结构以及语境等因素对之进行分析、理解。

can’t/couldn’t have done 不可能（对过去的事实作出判断，用于否定句）

could have done 可能（已经）……；本来可以……(但没有做。表示：一是把握性不大的推测；二是与事实相反的建议。)

may/might have done 可能（已经）……（表示把握性不大的推测）

ought to/should have done 本应该……（而未做，与事实相反）

needn’t have done 本不需要做……(却做了)

Page No.1140

高手过招

完成句子

①地面是湿的，昨天晚上一定下雨了。

The road is wet. It (rain) last night.

②你妈妈一定一直在找你。

Your mother (look) for you.

③迈克一定还没有找到他的车，因为早上他是乘公共汽车来上班的。

Mike (find) his car, for he came to work by bus this morning.

④我不知道她在哪儿，她有可能在武汉。

I don’t know where she is, she (be) in Wuhan.

答案： ①must have rained

②must have been looking

③can’t have found ④may be

Page No.1141

12. For whichever of you has for me the most devotion I will give to her the best part of everything I own.

你们之中谁最爱我，我就把我拥有的最好的东西赠送给谁。

whichever 无论哪个，任何一个

Take whichever hat suits you best. 挑一顶最适合你戴的帽子。

Whichever of you comes first will receive a prize.

你们谁先来，谁就会获得一份奖励。

Page No.1142

高手过招

翻译句子（用 whichever）

①无论你哪一天来，我们都很高兴。

Whichever day you come, we will be pleased to see you.

②从它们当中选一个你最喜欢的吧。

Choose whichever of them you like best.

③你究竟会帮助他们当中的哪一个？

Whichever of them are you going to help?

Page No.1143

Unit 3Fairness for all &

Unit 4Learning efficiently &

Unit 5Enjoying novels

核心单词

1. prohibit

vt.禁止；阻止

Smoking is prohibited in this railway carriage.

本节车厢禁止吸烟。

常用结构：

prohibit sth./sb.(from) doing sth.禁止……做某事

The guard came over and prohibited us from entering the theatre. 警卫走过来阻止我们进入剧院。

Page No.1144

联想拓展：

prohibition n.禁止；禁令

prohibitive adj.（以法令）禁止的

prevent sth./sb.(from) doing sth.阻止……做某事

stop sb./sth.(from) doing sth.阻止……做某事

keep sb./sth. from doing sth.阻止……做某事

forbid sb./sth. to do sth.禁止……做某事

forbid doing sth. 禁止做某事

Page No.1145

高手过招

完成句子

①他被禁止担任主任的职务。

He is prohibited a director.

②宪法禁止总统任期超过两届。

The president is constitutionally prohibited more than two terms in office.

③这项法案明确禁止任何委员会将钱用于政治活动中。

The Act specifically prohibits any council money for political purposes.

答案：①from being ②from serving

③from spending

Page No.1146

2. submit

vt.使服从；呈递；主张

vi.提交；服从

He was losing the fight but he wouldn’t submit.

他被打败了，但不屈服。

常用结构：

submit to sb./sth.顺从／服从／屈从某人/某事

submit sth. to sb.把……递交／提交／呈递给某人

submit+that clause （正式）建议／认为

We must submit a report to the committee at the end of this month.

我们必须在这个月月底向委员会提交一份报告。

We submitted that the case couldn’t be proved.

我们认为这个案件无法证实。

Page No.1147

联想拓展：

submission n.服从；提交（物）；投降；谦恭
force/frighten sb. into submission 强迫／恐吓某人屈服
in submission to 屈从；屈服；顺从
in my submission 我认为
高手过招：
单句改错
①I submitted out my resignation yesterday.
②The developers submitted building plans to the council as approval.
③She submitted her report for the committee.
答案：①去掉 out　②as→for　③for→to
Page No.1148
3. seize
vt. 抓住；捉住；夺；夺取；攻占；控制；逮捕；俘获
He seized her by the arm. 他抓住她的胳膊。
They seized the airport in a surprise attack.
他们突袭攻占了机场。
The man was seized as he left the building.
那个男人在离开那栋房子时被抓获。
常用结构：
seize on chance 抓住机会
seize hold of sth.(突然)抓住某物
seize up （机器）失灵；停止运转
Page No.1149
高手过招
完成句子
①新闻界立即对这件丑闻抓住不放。
The scandal was immediately by the press.
②暴风雪期间全市陷于瘫痪。
The whole city during the blizzard.
③他从她手里夺过了书。
He seized the book her hand.
答案：①seized upon　②seized up　③from
Page No.1150
4. competent
adj. 有能力的；能胜任的
常用结构：
be competent as 作为……胜任，有能力胜任……
be competent at/in sth.在……方面有能力
be competent to do sth.有能力/胜任/有权力做某事
She is competent to do the task. 她能胜任这项工作。
联想拓展：
competence n.能力；胜任；本领
Page No.1151
高手过招
完成句子
①确保该公司有能力进行这项工作。
Make sure the firm is competent the work.

②如果要学习英文，你首先必须找一位称职的教师。

If you want to learn English, you must first find

.

答案： ①to carry out ②a competent teacher

Page No.1152

5. consult

vt.查阅（参考书，字典）；参考；请教（某人）；向（医师）求诊

vi.（与人）商量；协议（指以对等关系互相发表意见）

I consulted a dictionary for the meaning of the word.

我查词典找这个词的词义。

She consulted a lawyer about her divorce.

她向律师请教有关她离婚的事。

He consulted with his business partners about the matter.

他与商业合伙人商议这件事。

联想拓展：

consultant n. 顾问，提供咨询的专家

consultation n. 请教；咨询；讨论

be in consultation with 与（人）协议中

Page No.1153

高手过招

用适当的介词填空

①The president had consulted European leaders taking action.

②A number of students are consulting their teacher the result the exam.

答案：①with； before ②about；of

Page No.1154

重点短语

6. by coincidence

巧合，碰巧

By coincidence, we arrived here at the same time.

碰巧我们一同到达这儿。

联想拓展：

by a strange coincidence 巧得出奇

by chance/accident 偶然地；无意地

What a coincidence! 真巧!

Page No.1155

高手过招

完成句子

①碰巧我们两个都上同一所学校。

, we both went to the same school.

②不幸的是，在他丢了工作的那天，他们家又偏巧遭人偷窃。

By an coincidence, their house was burgled on the day he lost his job.

③他们两个同一天在巴黎纯粹是个巧合。

It was coincidence that they were both in Paris on the same day.

答案：①By coincidence ②unfortunate ③pure

Page No.1156

7. offer sb. a lift

（主动）让某人搭顺路车

联想拓展：

give sb. a lift 让某人搭顺路车

ask sb. for a lift 搭某人的便车
take a/the lift 坐／乘电梯
Can you give me a lift to the station? 你能顺便送我去车站吗？
高手过招
完成句子
我让司机带我一程，但是他拒绝了。
I the driver for a lift but he refused.
答案：asked
Page No.1157
8. live out
活过；实践
Will the old man live out the month?这位老人能活过这个月吗？
联想拓展：
live out one’s dreams 实现某人的梦想
live for sth.为……而活
live on 继续活着；继续存在
live on sth.以……为食
live through sth.经历（灾难或其他困难）而幸存
live up to sth.达到，符合；不辜负（他人的期望）
Page No.1158
高手过招
翻译句子
①Students can live out if they wish.
如果学生们愿意,他们可以在外面寄宿。
②Don’t bother me, OK? Just let me live out my life in peace and in private.
别打扰我了,好不好?就让我一个人安安静静地度过后半辈子吧。
Page No.1159
9. under the name of
化名为，用……的名字
He writes under the name of Lu Xun. 他用鲁迅这个名字写作。
联想拓展：
by name 用名字，名叫
by the name of 名叫……的
name after 以……命名
in name 名义上，有名无实的
in the name of 以……的名义
with the name 名叫；用……的名字
Page No.1160
高手过招
完成句子
①他用尼姆罗德的名字做了那件事。
He did it Nimrod.
②我以总统的名义前来迎接您。
I greet you the President.
答案：①under the name of
②in the name of
Page No.1161

重点句型

10.....it is up to you to practise, practise and practise.
……这全靠你自己去练习、练习、再练习。
be up to 是（某人的）责任；由（某人）决定
联想拓展：
up to 直到，到……为止（用于地点、数量、程度、时间等）；(口语)计划什么（坏事）；忍住……；胜任（通常用于疑问句或否定句）。
It’s up to him to decide. 这由他来决定。
I see what you are up to. 我知道你在动什么脑筋。
She’s up to that job. 她能胜任那份工作。
Page No.1162
高手过招
翻译句子
①I could reach just up to his waist.
我只能够到他的腰。
②The process is expected to take up to two years.
这一过程预计最多需要两年。
③I was not up to her standards.
我还未达到她的标准。
Page No.1163
11. ..., so the dilemma of her heroines was also to marry but for love.
……, 所以她作品中女主人公也为了无爱情的婚姻而困扰。
but for 除了；除了……以外；相当于 except for。But for his habit of smoking, he would be a perfect man. 除了吸烟的习惯外，他是个完美的人。
温馨提示：
but for 常见的意思是“要不是；多亏……；否则”，多用虚拟语气。
But for your help, I would not have finished the work.
多亏你的帮助，否则我不可能完成这项工作。
Page No.1164
高手过招
完成句子
①我沿着百老汇走，街上除了偶尔经过的出租车以外几乎空无一人。
I walked along Broadway, deserted the occasional cab.
②要不是你，游戏可能已经结束了。
The game could be over you.
答案：①but for ②but for
Page No.1165
记叙文
【典题在线】
假设 2008 年 2 月 12 日是你父亲的生日，下面三幅图描绘的是你给父亲买完礼物后乘坐地铁回家时经历的一件事。请根据图示，用英语写一篇日记记叙这件事，并谈谈自己的感受。(2008·天津)
Page No.1166
注意：1. 词数不少于 100；
2. 可适当加入细节，以使行文连贯。
参考词汇：地铁（列车）subway train
Page No.1167

【模板展示】

(日期)

Today was (某个节日，某人生日等). In the morning (做了什么事情). And when (又做了什么事情).

（接下来的一个时间）, (叙述人们各自的活动). (事情的情况). After a minute, I (做了什么事情). (取得的结果). She said .

Today was (总结). I felt (感受).

【佳篇品读】

February 12th, 2008

Today was my father's birthday. I got on the subway train after I had bought the present. And when I was on the subway train, I imagined the situation where I gave the present to my father, and my father would be very happy.

Page No.1168

On the next station, there was a lady who had no seat in front of me. She also had two heavy bags. After a minute, I stood up and offered the seat to her. She was very happy and appreciated. She said “Thank you!” to me, which made me feel proud.

Today was best. I felt the fun to help other people.

【模仿 show】

假设你是李华，2008 年奥运会期间你和你的同学们参加了志愿者工作。请根据下图提示，写一篇日记，介绍你们当志愿者的经历并简单谈谈你的感受。日期为 2009 年 8 月 28 日。

Page No.1169

One possible version:

August 28th, 2009

In August 2008, Olympic Games were held in Beijing. During the Games I was a volunteer.

Before the Games, all of us received special training. Under the guidance of the trainer, we got to know what jobs we could do and what we should pay attention to.

During the Games, some of us stood outside the stadium, guiding the audience to go into the Bird's Nest with loudspeakers. Some worked at the information center and offered all kinds of help. Others acted as tour guides and took foreigners to some places of interest, such as the Great Wall and the Summer Palace, which helped them to get a better understanding of Chinese culture.

Page No.1170

Today I felt being a volunteer was a valuable experience for me. Not only did I help others, but also I made many friends. Besides, I felt I could do something for our country.

Page No.1171

议论文

【典题在线】 （2009・12・山东潍坊模块检测）

人们对于学生网上交友持不同意见。请你用英语写一篇关于学生网上交友的短文，介绍人们的不同观点， 并表达自己的看法。

赞成的理由 反对的理由 你的看法

1. 广交朋友;
2. 可自由表达思想;
3. 利于外语学习。 1. 浪费时间;
2. 影响学习;
3. 可能上当受骗。 ……

注意：1. 文章必须包括表格中的全部内容。

2. 参考词汇： 网络朋友 on line friend(s)；

上当受骗 to be cheated

Page No.1172

【模板展示】

Recently our class had a heated discussion over whether (探讨的问题)or not. Different people have different opinions. Some people say yes. They think that (支持的理由一). And (支持的理由二). Besides (支持的理由三，此点略低于前两个).

Others, however, think students should not. They say (反对的理由一). And (反对的理由二). In addition(以别于前面的 Besides), (反对的理由三).

It is my opinion that (自己的观点)students should place their study, health and safety before other things. (理由一至二).

Page No.1173

【佳篇品读】

Recently our class had a heated discussion over whether middle school students should make friends online. Different people have different opinions. Some people say yes. They think that the internet helps make more friends. And chatting on line, students can more freely express their feelings and opinions. Besides they may even get help with their foreign language studies.

Others, however, think students should not. They say making friends on line is a waste of time. And they should spend time more meaningfully on study. Besides, some students get cheated on line.

It is my opinion that students should place their study, health and safety before other things. As for friendship, we can easily find it in our classmates and other people around us.

Page No.1174

【模仿 show】

最近，你们学校组织高三学生进行了一场讨论。主题是“要不要集中进行晚自习”。根据下图提供的信息， 写一篇英语短文，客观地介绍一下讨论的情况，要涵盖所有要点。

Page No.1175

One possible version:

Recently our class had a heated discussion over whether they were willing to have the evening self study at school or not. Different people have different opinions.

60 percent of the students think it s a good idea to have the evening self study at school. They think they can do better in their study with the help of the teachers. Also, they can concentrate on their lessons better in the classroom and with company of their fellow classmates.

25 percent of the students, however, think students should not. They suppose that they may get disturbed by others and there are possible dangers on their way home alone.

At the same time, still 15 percent of the students don t have a clear answer to the question. They say they will go to school to have evening self study if they are asked to, but they promise they can also do well at home.

Page No.1176

应用文(书信) Ⅰ

【典题在线】

（2008·全国Ⅱ）

假定你是李华, 你的英国朋友 Peter 来信向你咨询如何才能学好中文。请你根据下列要点写回信。

要点:1. 参加中文学习班;

2. 看中文书刊、电视节目；

3. 学唱中文歌曲；

4. 交中国朋友。

……

注意:1. 可适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；

2. 开头语已为你写好；

3. 词数 100 左右。

最新最全资料分享 qq877197252

June 8, 2008
Dear Peter,
I m glad to receive your letter asking for my advice on how to learn Chinese well.

Best wishes,
Li Hua
Page No.1178
【模板展示】
日期
称呼,
I m glad to receive your letter asking for my advice on how to .
Here are a few suggestions. First, it is important to (第一件应该做的事情), as you ll be able to (手段). Then, it also helps to (第二件应该做的事情).
Besides, it should be a good idea to (第三件应该做的事情). You can also (第四件要做的事情). (这样做的好处).
(表达祝愿).
落款
Page No.1179
【佳篇品读】
June 8, 2008
Dear Peter,
I'm glad to receive your letter asking for my advice on how to learn Chinese well.
Here are a few suggestions. First, it is important to take a Chinese course, as you ll be able to learn from the teacher and practice with your fellow students. Then, it also helps to watch TV programmes and read books, newspapers and magazines in Chinese whenever possible.
Besides, it should be a good idea to learn and sing Chinese songs, because by doing so you ll learn and remember Chinese words more easily. You can also make more Chinese friends. They will tell you a lot about China and help you learn Chinese.
Try and write me in Chinese next time.
Best wishes,
Li Hua
Page No.1180
【模仿 show】
假定你是李华，你从电视上看到甲型 H1N1 流感（H1N1 flu）仍在美国流行,你正在美国上学的笔友 Jack 向你询问防护建议。
建议：1. 尽量待在家里, 少去人多的地方；
2. 勤洗手, 讲卫生；
3. 多开窗, 保持空气新鲜；
4. 多吃水果蔬菜。
注意: 1. 词数 100 左右；
2. 开头和结尾已给出, 不计入总词数。
Dear Jack,
I'm glad to receive your letter asking for my advice on how to protect yourself from H1N1 flu.
Page No.1181
One possible version:
Dear Jack,
I'm glad to receive your letter asking for my advice on how to protect yourself from H1N1 flu.
Here are a few suggestions. First, to stay away from this disease, you had better stay at home as much as

possible and not go to places where there are many people. Then, wash your hands more often to keep them clean.

Besides, it is necessary to open the window to have more fresh air in the room. And you should eat more fruits and vegetables to keep yourself fit and strong.

So far the disease is not so deadly as it seems to be. Do be at ease! Take care and you ll be OK.

Yours truly,

Li Hua

Page No.1182

应用文(书信) Ⅱ

【典题在线】 （2009·全国Ⅱ）

假如你是李华，你的美国朋友 Sarah 打算暑期来北京旅游，来信询问改建后前门大街的情况。请你写封回信，简单介绍以下内容：

1. 简况：前门大街长 800 余米，有 600 多年的历史、300 余家商铺；

2. 位置：天安门广场南面；

3. 交通：公共汽车 17、69、59 等路，地铁 2 号线；

4. 特色：步行街、无轨电车、茶馆、剧院等。

Page No.1183

参考词汇：步行街 pedestrian street

无轨电车 trolley car

地铁 subway

注意： 1. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯；

2. 开头语已为你写好，但不计入总词数。

Dear Sarah,

Thank you for your letter for asking about the rebuilt Qianmen street. Here is something about it.

Your sincerely,

Li Hua

Page No.1184

【模板展示】

Dear Sarah,

Thank you for your letter for asking about (某 地). Here is something about it.

(某地) is a famous street/museum/city/university of over (年). （按顺序介绍）Along (某地), there are more than (地方，商店，大楼等). As the street/museum/city/university is (某位置), just to/in/on the south/east/west/north of , it’s very convenient to (做某事，如乘车去，步行去等). You may (去的方式). （此地的特色） . I’m sure you ll like it.

Page No.1185

【佳篇品读】

Dear Sarah,

Thank you for your letter for asking about the rebuilt Qianmen Street. Here is something about it.

Qianmen Street is a famous street of over 600 years old. Along this 800 meter street, there are more than 300 shops. As the street is in the center of Beijing, just to the south of Tian anmen Square, it’s very convenient to get there by bus. You may take Buses No. 17, 69 or 59. Subway Line 2 has a stop there too. Qianmen Street is a pedestrian street, but there are trolley cars to take you not only to the shops, but also to chatters and teahouses where you can experience a truly Chinese way of life. I m sure you ll like it.

Your sincerely,

Li Hua

Page No.1186

【模仿 show】

下面是光明中学的示意图。假如你是王伟，请根据示意图和图后的说明写一篇 120 词左右的短文向你的美

国朋友 Peter 介绍这所学校。

示意图说明：

1.①—④篮球场（basketball court）；⑤餐厅；⑥学生宿舍；⑦老师宿舍；⑧花坛；⑨花坛（flower bed）；

2.所有大楼四周都种有灌木和花草；

3.学校占地 130 亩，有 100 多年的历史；

4.学生大约有 3000 人；教师有 150 人。学校在市中心以西 10 公里处，周围安静，校园优美，给学生提供了很好的学习环境。

Page No.1187

One possible version:

Dear Peter,

Thank you for your letter for asking about the Guangming School. Here is something about it.

Guangming High School is a famous school of over 100 years. It is in the west of the city, with the Chengxi River running nearby. It covers an area of 130 mu. When you enter the school, you can see a big flower bed in front of you, and two large buildings on both sides—the library on your right and the teaching building on your left. Walking on further, you will find the gymnasium, which is the most beautiful building on the campus, with another round flower bed in front. Behind it, there lie four basketball courts. Next to the courts is the sports ground. Along its east side stand three buildings—the dining hall, and two dormitories for the students and teachers. All the buildings are surrounded by bushes and flowers.

Wang Wei

Page No.1188

应用文(书信) III

【典题在线】（2009・陕西）

假定你是李华。在一个英文网络论坛上, 你看到一个名叫 Grown up 的中学生发帖（post）寻求帮助, 请根据帖子的内容、写作要点和要求回贴。

Page No.1189

写作要点：

1. 告诉 Grown up 要理解母亲；

2. 给 Grown up 提出解决问题的具体建议。

要求：

1. 内容充实, 结构完整, 语意连贯;

2. 书写须清晰、工整。

【模板展示】

Dear Grown up,

As a , I understand your situation. The problem you are facing is common among our teenagers. However, . Here are a few suggestions.

First, . (这样做的理由) .

Second, . (这样做的理由) .

Page No.1190

【佳篇品读】

Dear Grown up,

As a student of your age, I understand your situation. The problem you are facing is common among our teenagers. However, it should be wise not to do anything that may hurt her feelings. Here are a few suggestions.

First, it s advisable to talk more with your mom. Heart to to talks help you understand each other better. They are also opportunities to let her know your ideas and attitudes toward many things.

Second, you should learn to do your own things well, proving to your mom that you are already a “Grown up”. It s even better if you could share more of the housework, such as cleaning, washing and cooking.

Page No.1191

【模仿 show】

假如你叫李华，你在网上看到有人以 Depressed 为名，寻求帮助。事情是这样的：高考临近，他非常着急，可总是静不下心来复习。你回帖告诉他解决的办法：一、多出去参加体育锻炼，这样可以分散一会注意力； 二、把复习的内容做好计划，这样可以按时间复习，避免慌乱。

要求:

1. 可适当增加一些情节;

2. 词数:100 左右。

Page No.1192

One possible version:

Dear Depressed,

As a student of your age, I understand your situation. The problem you are facing is common among our teenagers. However, it should be wise to do something that stops the situation. Here are a few suggestions.

First, it s advisable to take some exercises after class. In doing so you may forget the hard work for a while and you may refresh yourself when you begin your study again.

Second, you should arrange your study properly. It’s better to do the right thing at the right time. You don t need to feel depressed then.

Hope you get better soon and make great progress.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

Page No.1193

应用文(书信)Ⅳ

【写作说明】

通过书信反映现实存在的一些事情是高考常见的形式。这一类作文中，首先我们要注意书信的格式，然后 直接反映情况，接下来提出自己的看法或者解决办法，最后是与对方的探讨。

【典题在线】 （2009·湖南）

假设你是某中学新老师李红，请给你的朋友张华写一封信，告诉他你第一天上课的情况，主要内容如下：

1. 描述一件课堂上令你印象深刻的事情；

2. 介绍你处理该事的方式；

3. 谈谈你的感想。

Page No.1194

注意：1. 词数不少于 120 个;

2. 可适当发挥想像，增加细节，以使行文连贯；

3. 文中不得出现与本人及学校相关的任何真实信息。

【模板展示】

Dear (姓名),

Now I want to tell you an impressive story that happened (某个地方).

(以时间顺序讲述事件的起因、发生、发展、结局).

From the story I felt we should (自己的看法，或者由此事产生的认识). Do you think so? I m looking forward to your reply.

Yours truly,

Li Hong

Page No.1195

【佳篇品读】

Dear Zhang Hua,

Now I want to tell you an impressive story that happened on my first lesson.

On hearing the bell, students ran into the classroom as quickly as they can. But a boy, Li Ming, whose father died a month ago, was late for the class. He stood outside the classroom, silently. I smiled to him and let him come in. After a while, he cried on his desk. Then I walked to him and asked what had happened. He told me that his

mother was ill and he had to take some medicine for her. At the same time, he apologized to me for his lateness.

Moved by his words, I praised him for his deeds and decided to sing a song named Mother for the students. How time flies! Class was over before I realized it.

From the story I felt we should respect our parents and do our best to help them. Do you think so? I m looking forward to your reply.

Yours truly,

Li Hong

Page No.1196

【模仿 show】

假定你是李华，在网上你看到一群中学生在殴打一名学生的视频(video)。视频中，几个中学生对这名同学先是谩骂，然后拳脚相加。这些人还对着镜头做着各种怪动作或者表情。旁观者不仅不制止，还在为这几 个打人的学生鼓掌(applaud)。请根据以下要求给报社写封信：

1. 描述事情的经过；

2. 谈谈你的感想。

注意：1. 可适当发挥想像，增加细节，以使行文连贯；

2. 文中不得出现与本人及学校相关的任何真实信息。

Page No.1197

One possible version:

Dear editor,

Now I want to tell you an impressive story happened on the Internet.

T he other day I happened to watch a video on the Internet. Several senior students first said ill words to a boy and then they knocked with fists and kicked him with foots. No passers by went to stop them. Instead they laughed, and even applauded to cheer the bad boys up. In the end that boy s mouth and nose were bleeding badly and those boys made ugly faces to the camera, which made me very angry.

From the story I felt we should respect each other and help each other when in trouble. Besides, our schools should make strict rules to stop such bad behaviour happening again. Do you think so? I m looking forward to your reply.

Yours truly,

Li Hua

Page No.1198

应用文(发言稿)

【典题在线】

(2010・01・浙江安江中学、寿昌中学、严州中学联考)

5 月 10 日，为了庆祝母亲节，你们班开展了以“尊敬父母”为主题的活动。假如你是校英语报记者。请按下列要点用英语写一则演讲稿。

1. 时间：母亲节(5 月 10 日)

2. 现象：大多数同学是独生子女，只看重自己不顾及父母

3. 宗旨：让每位学生都理解父母，尊敬父母

4. 活动：（1）送一份自制的礼物给父母；

（2） 记住父母的生日，并表达祝愿；

（3） 给父母写一封信……；

（4） 父母上下班主动打招呼;

……

5. 感想或简短评论

Page No.1199

【模板展示】

Ladies and gentlemen:

(日期), we had an activity (活动内容), aiming to (目的).

As we know, (现状). Therefore, we held the activity to show . In this activity,some of us

(人们的表现一); some (表现二); some (表现三); some (表现四).

After this activity, (别人以及自己的感受)

Thank you!

Page No.1200

【佳篇品读】

Ladies and gentlemen:

On May 10th, we had an activity in celebration of mother's day, aiming to let everyone respect and considerate of his parents.

As we know, most of us students today are the only child in our family, we often regard ourselves as the center of the family, without caring much about our parents. Therefore, we held the activity to show our respect to our parents. In this activity, some of us gave presents made by ourselves to parents; some remembered parents' birthdays and decided to express our good wishes to them; some said hello to parents when they went to work and returned home after work; some even wrote a letter and had a heart to heart talk with parents.

Page No.1201

After this activity, all of us felt it was worthwhile. We developed an awareness of respecting our parents. What an unforgettable and meaningful day it is!

Thank you!

Page No.1202

【模仿 show】

现在倡导“文明从我做起”，以改变目前社会上的一些不良风气。为了支持这一活动，4 月 20 日（星期日）你们学校组织学生走上街头进行献爱心活动。有的帮助老人过马路，有的帮助打扫街道，有的宣传文明用语。对这一做法，你们班同学有的赞成，有的反对。你的看法如何？请根据以上提示用英语写一则演讲稿。

Page No.1203

One possible version:

Ladies and gentlemen:

On Sunday, April 20th, we had an activity aiming to let everyone know that civilization must start from ourselves.

As we know, in our actual society, some people are rude to others, and even some give great harm to others. And we can see many unproper behaviours. Therefore, we held the activity to suport the idea that civilization must be made by ourselves. In this activity,some of us helped clean the road; some helped the old cross the road; some made people know what is civilization in our words and actions.

Page No.1204

After this activity, most of us felt it was worthwhile. But some thought we were just making show, we can't change the society with a single action. Of course, we can't change these things with one action, but I think if each of us do good things regularly, we will have a good social environment.

Thank you!

Page No.1205

半开放式作文Ⅰ

【写作指导】

半开放式作文是近年来英语学科书面表达的一个趋势和要求，是一种常见题型。所谓“半开放”是指试题给出部分要点，考生自己再增加一些要点。这样的作文可以分为两大部分:试题给出的材料和自己增加的材料。在写给出材料时一定注意不要遗漏要点，更不要曲解试题的意思。在写自己增加部分时也不可以随意发挥，要吃透命题人的意思。例如:关于中学生是否可以把手机带进教室，我们最好不赞成带手机进教室， 因为命题人一般是大中学校的老师，他们是不会赞成学生带手机进教室的。

Page No.1206

【典题在线】（2010·01·山东平邑·阶段性质检）

假如你们班在“珍爱生命，拒闯红灯”的教育活动中，召开了一次主题班会。请你根据下表内容，用英语

写一篇短文。

行人（passer by）闯红灯的危害　妨碍交通，影响车辆的正常行驶。

容易引发事故，危及他人和自身的生命安全。

……（自己设想）

对行人闯红灯的处罚措施　批评教育，让其认识到闯红灯的危害性。

当场给予警告并罚款。

……（自己设想）

注意：1.内容可适当发挥，注意行文连贯;

2.参考词汇：乱穿马路 jaywalk;

3.词数：120-150。

Page No.1207

【模板展示】

Recently we held a class meeting to discuss the problem of (讨论的问题). As we can see, (这种事件的现实情况). (造成的结果).

It is really a pity to see all this in our society. To deal with the situation, the government has taken some measures. (具体已经采取了什么样的措施). We should (你认为还要怎么做).

Page No.1208

【佳篇品读】

Recently we held a class meeting to discuss the problem of passers by crossing the street while the traffic light is red. As we can see, some passers by don t obey traffic rules and jaywalk frequently. This blocks traffic, seriously affects drivers and causes accidents to happen, endangering the safety of passers by and drivers. In a word, jaywalking produces negative effects and does not help develop good social behaviour.

It is really a pity to see all this in our society. To deal with the situation, the government has taken some measures. When caught jaywalking, the passers by are criticized so that they will become aware of the dangers of doing so, or they are fined on the spot. Sometimes the traffic police will report jaywalkers at their workplace and expose them to the public. However, it will still take a long time to stop passers by from jaywalking. We should start from ourselves right now.

Page No.1209

【模仿 show】

假如你们班在“爱护环境，拯救地球”的教育活动中，召开了一次主题班会。请你根据以下要点，用英语　写一篇短文。

1. 目前的环境状况：气候异常；空气、水、土壤等污染严重;

2. 政府采取的措施：限制高污染企业投产；对环境时时检测;

3. 你认为还有哪些有更有效的措施?

Page No.1210

One possible version:

Recently we held a class meeting to discuss the problem of the global pollution. As we can see, our surroundings have been badly polluted. Our air, water, and soil have become poisonous. And the weather is not quite normal.

It is really a pity to see all this in our society. To deal with the situation, the government has taken some measures. Firms that badly polluted the environments are not allowed to be built. And our environments are under close attention by the local departments. Things are getting better. However, it will still take a long time to stop the condition. We should have a strong sense of environmental protection right now.

Page No.1211

半开放式作文 II

【典题在线】(2009・福建)

某英语报社拟成立“微笑俱乐部”，现向全球征募会员。要求申请者提交一篇题为“I want to Smile”的英

语短文。请你以申请者的身份，根据以下思路图的提示用英语写一篇短文。

注意：根据思路图适当展开，以使行文连贯

Page No.1212

【模板展示】

I Want to Smile

(第一要点概括句，例如:There are many advantages of smiling.) (分要点一). (分要点二). So (结论).

First, (第二要点概括). （展开一句或两句）. Then (第三要点). （展开一句或两句）.

In a word, (或 In my opinion/Personally) (总结；提出自己的看法等).

Page No.1213

【佳篇品读】

There are many advantages of smiling. It can not only make us happy, but also please others. If we smile at life, life will smile on us in return. So I want to smile at all whenever and wherever possible.

First, I would like to smile at my parents because they have given me life and taken all the troubles to bring me up. They arrange almost everything for me. With their help, I have made great progress. I would like to say “Thank you” to them with a smile. Then my smile should go to myself, for only in this way can I gain more confidence in smiling my troubles away and live a better life.

In a word, let’s greet every day with a smile. Tomorrow is another day.

Page No.1214

【模仿 show】

假设你叫李华，你的美国笔友 Johnson 想和家人来中国定居，请你帮他在 A、B 两个城市中做出选择。下面的图表是对这两座城市在就业、娱乐和环境等方面所作的对比。请你根据该表提供的信息用英语给他写 封电子邮件，提出你的建议并说明理由。

注意：1. 图表左边的数字说明人们对这两个城市的喜爱程度。

2. 词数:120 左右。短文开头和结尾已为你写好，不计入总词数。

Page No.1215

One possible version:

Dear Johnson,

I’m so glad to learn that you and your family are coming to settle down in China.

After a careful study of the information about the two cities, I suggest you choose to live in City A.

First, City A is a more popular city to live in. The environment in City A is better than that in City B and the climate there is very pleasant. Then, there are many places for entertainment where you can enjoy yourselves in your spare time. As for the employment, though the job opportunities are not so good as in City B, yet I don’t think it’s a problem for you as a teacher of English.

In a word, I think City A is a better choice, but it’s up to you to decide. Hope to hear from you again.

Yours,

Li Hua

Page No.1216

开放作文

【写作指导】

开放作文只给出主题或两三点提示或一段素材，然后由考生在此基础上充分发挥想像力，自由创作。因此， 写作时要把握好给出的材料，然后据此进行拓展延伸，这一点很重要。

【典题在线】（2009·北京）

请根据下面的提示，写一篇短文，词数不少于 50。

In your spoken English class, your teacher shows you the following picture. You are asked to describe the picture and explain how you understand it.

Page No.1217

【模板展示】

What an interesting picture! (图画内容的描述). (自己对图画的认识). (由此展开的社会或生活话题).

Page No.1218

【佳篇品读】

What an interesting picture! A Western young man, sitting at a table, is ready to eat a bowl of noodles. He is holding two forks the same way as we Chinese hold chopsticks. He is trying so hard to pick up the noodles that he is sweating a lot. At first glance, I think it s a bit funny, for we Chinese take for granted that chopsticks are the tools for eating noodles. The man in the picture is trying to copy us. Obviously, he is doing in the hard way. Maybe using one fork will do a better job, In my opinion, we don t need to copy others ways of thinking. Sometimes a simpler way of doing things may be a better way.

Page No.1219

【模仿 show】

请根据下面的提示，写一篇短文。词数:不少于 50。

In your spoken English class, your teacher shows you the following picture. You are asked to describe the picture and explain how you understand it.

Page No.1220

One possible version:

What an interesting picture! A boy is climbing a high mountain, sweating all over and having a tired look. In spite of many large rocks blocking his way, the exhausted boy is still struggling on the steep mountainside, because he knows that there is a rainbow behind the mountain.

What the picture conveys is that although the way to success seems long and difficult, there is still hope like the rainbow in our hearts. So long as we are confident and never give up, we are sure to achieve success. In everyday life, all of us are facing many difficulties and experiencing great hardships just like the boy. If we are determined to get to the top, we ll see the rainbow!

Page No.1221

Page No.1222

从近几年各地的高考试题来看，高考对名词的考查重点是一些易混知识点。如:名词的数、格，名词作定语， 抽象名词具体化以及词义辨析等；对冠词的考查重点是冠词的基本用法。下面主要从高考考查重点的角度讲解名词和冠词。

Page No.1223

名词

一、名词的数

1.名词的单复数

1）不可数名词

不可数名词没有复数形式，如果需要表示多少，通常要用“a+表示数量的词+of+名词”来表示。通常抽象 名词和物质名词都是不可数名词。同时，不可数名词之间的意义区别是名词的重要考点。常见的不可数名 词有：

①物质名词：ice，coffee，soup，grass，cloth，clothing，iron，food,bread 等。

②抽象名词：thought, success, advice，knowledge, experience，courage，fun，childhood 等。

Page No.1224

种类	变化	举例
一般情况	词尾加 s	pens, books, tables, computers
以-s、-x、-ch、 -sh 结尾	词尾加 es	buses, classes, benches, boxes
以辅音字母+y 结尾	变 y 为 i 再加 es	families, cities,Countries
以元音字母+y 结尾	词尾加 s	boys, plays, chiefs,

以-f 或-fe 结尾　　变 f 或 fe 为 v,
再加 es wolves, knives,wives, lives
　　直接加 s proofs, roofs, beliefs

以字母-o 结尾
词尾加 es　　heroes, potatoes,tomatoes, mosquitoes,
Negroes
　　词尾加 s radios, zoos,kilos, pianos

2）可数名词复数的变化
①规则变化
Page No.1225
②不规则变化
种类　　举例
单复数相同　deer, sheep, aircraft, means,
species, series, works
单数形式表示复数内容　　people, police, youth, cattle, crew
复数形式表示单数内容　　news, physics, politic
合成词变复数　　passers　by, sons-in-law, policemen,lookers　on, grown　ups
词形变化　　men, women, children,
teeth, feet, media

Page No.1226
2.名词的复数类指与冠词
　　复数可数名词表示泛指，前面一般不加冠词，如果加冠词则表示特指或事物的类别。
—Could you tell me the way to　　Johnsons，please?
—Sorry，we don　t have　　Johnson here in the village.
A.the；　the　　B.the；a　　C./；the　　D.the；/
解析：选 B。前面“the+姓氏的复数”指一家人或夫妇两个；后面表示“一个姓……的人”，为泛指概念，因此姓氏的前面加不定冠词 a。
3.名词在特殊情况下的复数使用
　　有些名词在使用时总是用其复数形式，如：thanks, clothes，congratulations，goods，works，shoes，trousers 等。有些短语也要求用名词复数形式：
　　make preparations for　　为……做准备
　　take pains to do sth.　　努力做某事
　　make both ends meet　　收支平衡
　　keep ties with　　同……保持联系
　　be in high spirits　　兴致勃勃;情绪很高
　　do/make repairs　　进行修理
Page No.1227
二、名词所有格
　　1.对于有生命的名词，其单数的所有格一般在名词后面加“’s”，如：the boy　s bag 这个男孩的书包，而以　s 结尾的人名或复数名词后直接加“　’　”，如:Teachers’　Day 教师节，Charles’　home 查理的家。
无生命的名词的所有格可用 of 表示所属关系，如:the top of the mountain 山顶。
　　但有些表示时间、距离、国家、城市、团体、机构等无生命的名词后也可以加“’s”构成所有格，

如：an hour’s work 一个小时的工作。

The notice from the students union，which I learned from today’s school paper，calls on all of us to donate money to help the girl student who is seriously ill.

我从今天的校报上了解到，学生会号召我们大家捐资帮助那个生了重病的女同学。

Page No.1228

2.表示所属物的名词前有冠词、数词、不定代词或指示代词时，用“of+名词所有格”的形式来表示所属关 系构成双重所有格。

A book of Mary’s has been made into a movie.

玛丽的一本书被拍成了电影。

3.所修饰的名词为商店、住宅或其他处所时，名词常省略。如:at the doctor s(clinic)在诊所;in the manager s(office)在经理办公室。

4.表示并列名词“共有某物”时，只在最后一个名词后加“ ’s”；如果表示“各自所有”时，则在每个名词后加“ ’s ”。

America and England’s problem

美英两国共同的问题

America’s and England’s problems

美英两国各自的问题

Page No.1229

三、名词作定语

名词作定语的情况如下：

1.表示材料的名词作定语，说明被修饰的名词是什么原料制成的。如:a diamond necklace 一条钻石项链; silk book 帛书。

2.表示用途、性质的名词作定语。如:light waves 光波; sports shoes 运动鞋。

3.如果两个名词构成部分与整体的关系，则表示整体的名词可以作定语(常指物)。如:animal bones 动物骨头; cigarette ends 烟头。

4.表示地点的名词作定语，说明被修饰的名词存在或发生的地方。America’s culture 美国文化

5.表示性别或身份的名词作定语。如:a female elephant 一头母象。

6.表示泛指的时间名词作定语。如:evening dress 晚礼服; rooster year stamp 鸡年邮票。但表示具体的时间名词作定语，则要用所有格形式来表达。如:yesterday’s news 昨天的消息;an hour’s drive 开车一小时的路程。

Page No.1230

注意：名词作定语时，一般用单数形式，但在特殊情况下，要用复数形式。如：sports meet 运动会; the United States government 美国政府; the students

Reading-room 学生阅览室; goods train 货车;two men-doctors 两个男医生。

Page No.1231

冠词

一、不定冠词的用法:

1. 不定冠词一般用在单数可数名词前表示某一个；用在某些物质名词或抽象名词前表示“一种、一类、一份、一阵、一场”等。

2. 指事物的单位，含有“每……”之意。

3. 另外还要注意以下几点：

1）指某人或某物，但不具体说明何人或何物。

2）三餐名词，表示独一无二的名词和专有名词前有形容词修饰时，用不定冠词。

3）有时在星期、月份和日期前加不定冠词，表示泛指。如：on a Friday 在一个星期五。

4）在序数词前加不定冠词，表示“再次，又一个”。如：a second man 又一个人。

Page No.1232

4. 单数可数名词前 a/an 的选择

1)不定冠词 a,an 用于单数可数名词前，表示“一个/一本/一辆……”。an 用于以元音开头的名词前（注意：

不是以元音字母开头的词）。

如：a book; a hospital; a traffic accident

an apple; an orange; an easy going man 2)

用 a 还是用 an，需注意如下几点：

①以 u 开头的单词读［ju: ］时用 a,读［ ∧ ］时用 an。

如:an unhappy boy; a useful language; a university

Page No.1233

②有些单词开头的辅音字母 h 不发音时，应该用 an。

如：an hour, an honest man

③英文字母前用 a 还是用 an。

在 26 个英文字母中，a,e,i,o,f,h,l,m,n,r,s,x 等 12 个字母的读音是以元音开头的，其余字母则是以辅音开头的。以元音开头的字母前用 an，以辅音开头的字母前用 a。

如：an “s”;an “f”; an “h”

a “b”;a “t”; a “p”

④注意有些合成词前不定冠词的使用。

如:an 800-word composition; a one-legged table

Page No.1234

二、定冠词的用法:

1. 定冠词用来特指某些人或某些事物，或指说话双方都知道的人或事物以及复述上文中提到的事物。

2. 定冠词用于某些单数的可数名词或某些形容词之前，表示一类事物或一类人。

3. 定冠词用于序数词、形容词最高级或 only（唯一的），very(正是那个)前表示次序或特指。

4. 在表示世界上独一无二的事物或表示方位的名词前，要用定冠词。

5. 在表示乐器或发明物的名词前，要用定冠词 the，但中国独有的乐器前不加 the。

Page No.1235

6. 在江河、海洋、山脉、群岛、沙漠、海峡、海湾等专有名词前用定冠词 the, 如：the Pacific Ocean 太平洋。

7. 在姓氏的复数形式前加定冠词 the，表示一家人。

8. 在“主语+动词+宾语+介词+the+身体部位名词”的固定结构中，要特别注意不能用物主代词代替定冠词，在此结构中常用的动词有：pat 轻拍,strike 击打;攻击，beat 击打，catch 抓住等。

9. 用于世纪的年代前，表示“在某世纪几十年代”。

如：in the 1980s 在二十世纪八十年代。

10. 在含有普通名词的专有名词前和表示某机关团体、党派等组织或机构的名称前用定冠词 the。

Page No.1236

三、不用冠词的情况:

1.在专有名词（人名、地名）、物质名词、抽象名词等名词前，一般不用冠词。如：Asia 亚洲。

2.表示职位、头衔的名词前，一般不用冠词。如：boss 老板, monitor 班长, headmaster 校长, mayor 市长等。3.三餐、球类、棋类运动、星期几、月份和日期等名词前一般不用冠词，季节名词前用不用 the 意义无区别。

4.当 bike,car,taxi，bus，train，boat，ship,plane，e-mail 等交通、通信工具与介词 by 连用,表示交通、通信方式时，不用冠词。

5.有些名词与介词搭配表示抽象意义，不加冠词，常作状语。如：in surprise/wonder/danger/tears,in love with, under pressure, beyond expression 等。

6.表示场所和时间的名词用于某些固定短语中，名词前不用冠词。如：at night 在夜里。

Page No.1237

四、另外特别要关注的几个难点：

1. 抽象名词具体化与冠词连用

抽象名词单纯表示一种概念时是不可数名词；但如果表示具体的人或物时，就成了可数名词。这就是我们 这里要说的“抽象名词具体化”。这些名词没有复数形式，一般与不定冠词连用。如下表：

不可数名词 汉语意义 可数名词 汉语意义
Coffee 咖啡 a coffee 一份咖啡，一杯咖啡
beauty 美丽 a beauty 一位美人
Success 成功 a success 一个成功的人或事
Knowledge 知识 a good
knowledge of 对……的了解

Page No.1238
2. 冠词有无，意义不同
在某些词组中，用不用冠词，含义有所不同。如下表：
go to school 去上学 in hospital 住院
go to the school 去那所学校 in the hospital 在那家医院
in front of 在……的前面 out of question没问题
in the front of 在……的前部 out of the question 根本不可能

Page No.1239
3. 特殊群体名词与谓语动词的单复数
特殊群体名词主要指集体名词。英语中的集体名词的“数”有三种情况：
1）形单义复的名词，谓语动词用复数，如：police 警察，people 人们，youth 青年，folk 人们。
2）单义单形名词，谓语动词用单数，如：baggage 行李,clothing 衣服, furniture 家具, machinery 机器。3）有些集体名词当整体意义讲时，谓语用单数;当一个个成员讲时，谓语用复数，且形式不变。如：family 家，government 政府，group 组，team 队，class 班级，audience 听众。
4. 同义、近义名词在不同语境中的辨析，此时特别注意以下几点：
1）注意名词意义上的差异;
2）注意名词的内涵和外延;
3）注意名词的搭配关系;
4）注意名词所用的场合和语境。
Page No.1240
例 1:—He says that my new car is a of money.
—Don’t you think those words are just sour grapes?(2009·山东)
A. lackB. loadC. questionD. waste
解析：选 D。句意为：——他说我的新车只是在浪费钱而已。——难道你不觉得那种话有吃不着葡萄说葡萄酸的感觉吗？a lack of 缺少；a question of ……的问题；a waste of 浪费。
例 2:Let’s go to cinema-that ll take your mind off the problem for while.(2009·宁夏)
A. the; theB. the; aC. a; theD. a; a
解析：选 B。句意为：让我们去电影院吧——这会使你暂时不去想那个问题。go to the cinema 和 for a while 均为固定词组。
Page No.1241
例 3:This area experienced heaviest rainfall in month of May.(2009·辽宁)
A. /; a B. a; the C. the; the D. the; a
解析:选 C。句意为:该地区五月份经历了最大的降雨。heaviest 为形容词的最高级，前面用 the, in the month of May 是习惯用法。
例 4:The system has been designed to give students quick and easy to the digital resources of the library.(2009·浙江)
A. access B. passage C. way D. approach
解析:选 A。句意为： 这个系统的目的在于让学生们方便快捷地使用图书馆的数字资源。access to 为固定

用法，意为：可以利用，可以达到。

Page No.1242

例 5:I don’t understand what the engineer means, but I’ve got rough idea of project plan.（2009·浙江）

A. the; a B. /; the C. the; / D. a; the

解析:选 D。句意为：我不理解工程师的意思，但是对于这项工程计划我已经有了一个大致的想法。第一个空表示泛指，第二个空表示特指。

例 6:We can never expect bluer sky unless we create less polluted world.(2009·安徽)

A. a; aB. a; theC. the; aD. the; the

解析:选 A。句意为：如果我们不创造一个减少环境污染的世界，我们永远不要期望能拥有一片更蓝的天空。根据句意，“bluer sky”和“less polluted world”为可数名词且表示泛指，所以都用不定冠词。

Page No.1243

例 7:China has got a good for fighting against the flu with its careful and smooth organization.(2009·安徽)

A. Reputation B. influence

C. Impression D. knowledge

解析:选 A。句意为： 因为中国在防控流感方面认真和顺利的组织而使中国赢得了好的声誉。influence 影响; impression 印象; knowledge 知识，均不符合题意。

例 8:What I need is book that contains ABC of oil painting.(2009·全国Ⅱ)

A. a; / B. the; / C. the; an D. a; the

解析:选 D。句意为：我需要的是一本包括油画基础知识的书。book 是泛指，前需加 a, 而 ABC 则特指油画的入门知识，故应加 the。

Page No.1244

例 9:The biggest whale is blue whale, which grows to be about 29 meters long-the height of 9-story building.（2009·北京）

A. the; the B. a; a C. a; the D. the; a

解析:选 D。the blue whale 表示“一类……”, 即“the +名词”的形式;a 9-story building 一座 9 层高的大楼。

例 10:—Shall we go out for a walk?

—Sorry. This is not the right to invite me. I am too tired to walk.(2008·江西)

A. Moment B. situation C. Place D. chance

解析:选 A。考查名词辨析。由第二句的后半句“说话者拒绝了对方的邀请，并说明理由是太累了”可知，那个人邀请的“不是时候”，因此用 moment; situation 情况，局面; place 地点；chance 机会。

Page No.1245

代词是用来代替名词及起名词作用的词。代词是高考英语试题中考查较多的词类之一，除考查引导从句的 连接代词和关系代词外，重点考查不定代词，对人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、指示代词和疑问代词等 也有不同程度的考查。代词的数量有限，但种类变化却非常多，应注意辨析掌握它们的用法。以下是代词 的分类及考点分析。

Page No.1246

类 别	例 词
人称代词 主格	I, we, you, you, he, she, it, they
宾格	me, us, you, you, him, her, it, them
物主代词 形容词性物主词	my, our, your, your, his, her, its, their
名词性物主代词	mine, ours, yours, yours, his, hers, its, theirs
反身代词 ?	myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves
指示代词	this, that, these, those
相互代词	each other, one another

不定代词　　可数　　each, one, many, (a) few, both, another, either, neither

　　不可数　much, (a) little

　　可数、不可数　　all, some, none, such, any, other

　　复合不定代词　　something, someone, somebody, anything, anyone, anybody, everything, everyone, everybody, no one, nobody, nothing

疑问代词　　what, which, who, whom, whose

连接代词　　what(ever), which(ever), who(ever), whom(ever), whose(ever)

关系代词　　who, whom, whose, which, that, as

一、代词的分类

Page No.1247

二、考点分析

1. 人称代词主格与宾格

人称代词的主格在句中作主语，宾格在句中作动词或介词的宾语。

She and I are good friends. 她和我是好朋友。

Have you heard from him? 你收到他的来信了吗？

注意：人称代词用作表语或单独使用时常用宾格形式。

—Who is that?　你是谁？

—It’s me.　是我。

—Glad to see you again.　很高兴再见到你。

—Me too.　我也是。

Page No.1248

2. 名词性物主代词和形容词性物主代词

形容词性物主代词只能在名词前作定语，名词性物主代词相当于“形容词性物主代词＋名词”，在句中作主语、宾语、表语或与 of 连用作后置定语，但不能独立作定语。

This is not my shirt. It’s his. 这不是我的衬衫。这是他的。

My pen is broken. May I use yours?

我的钢笔坏了。我可以用你的吗？

Kate and her sister went on holiday with a cousin of theirs.

凯特姐俩和她们的一位表妹一起度假去了。

Page No.1249

3. 反身代词

反身代词在句中可以作宾语、表语、同位语，不能作主语。

Make yourself at home. 别客气。

I am not quite myself today. 我今天感觉不太好。

You　d better ask the girl herself. 你最好问问那个女孩本人。

The headmaster himself will give away the prizes to the students at the meeting.

校长将在会上亲自给学生颁发奖品。

Page No.1250

4. 指示代词

指示代词有 this, that, these, those 等。其用法需注意以下几点：

1) this, these 是时间或空间上的“近指”，可与 here 连用；that, those 是时间或空间上的“远指”，可与 there 连用。

I was very busy those days, but I’m free these days.

那些日子我很忙，但这些日子我很清闲。

2) 指上文提到的事一般用 that，指下文的事常用 this。

I shall say this to you: he is an honest man.

我要对你说这一点：他是一个诚实的人。

He was ill. That's why he didn't come.
他病了。那就是他没来的原因。
3) 打电话时，用 this 来介绍自己，用 that 来问对方，不用 I 或 you。
4) this 和 that 还可作表示程度的副词，意为“如此，那么”，相当于 so，作状语。
I'm afraid I can't walk that far. 我恐怕走不了那么远。
The book is about this thick. 那本书大约有这么厚。
Page No.1251
5. 疑问代词
疑问代词有 what, which, who, whom, whose 等。用法要点如下：
1) what 除了可以用来询问人的身份之外，一般指物；which 可指人也可指物；who, whom, whose 一般指人。
Who/Whom are you looking for? 你在找谁？
Whose is this car? 这辆车是谁的？
2) 没有一定的范围时，用 what，意为“什么”；有一定范围时，用 which，意为“(其中的)哪一个(哪一些)”。
What sport do you like best? 你最喜欢什么样的运动？
Which of the stories is the most interesting?
这些故事当中哪个最有趣？
Page No.1252
6. 替代词 it, one(s), that, those
为避免重复，it，one(s)，that，those 都可以用来代替上文出现的名词，但它们的用法不同。
1) it 代替的是前面提到的同一名称的同一事物，即同名同物。所代替的名词可以是可数名词，也可以是不可数名词。
My mobile phone is missing. Have you seen it?
我的手机不见了。你看见过吗？
2) one 代替的是前面提到的同名异物中的任何一个，所代替的名词是可数名词，其前面可带冠词或修饰语。如果代替复数名词，则用 ones。
The population problem may be the greatest one in the world today. 人口问题可能是当今世界上最大的一个问题。
Page No.1253
—Which cards are yours?
哪些卡片是你的？
—The blue ones.
蓝色的(是我的)。
3) that 代替前面提到的同名异物中特指的事物，所代替的名词可以是可数名词，也可以是不可数名词，其前面通常不能有修饰语，但可以有后置定语。
Mary's handwriting is far better than that of Peter's.
玛丽的书法比彼得的好很多。
4) those 代替前面提到的同名异物中特指的事物，只能指代可数名词复数，相当于 the ones。
The computers in your office are more expensive than those in our school.
你们办公室的电脑比我们学校的电脑要贵。
Page No.1254
7. 常见不定代词的用法
1) some, any
表示“一些”时，some 用于肯定句以及表示请求、建议或希望对方作出肯定回答的疑问句中；any 用于否定句和疑问句中，用于肯定句时，只和单数名词或不可数名词连用，表示“任何”。
Would you mind buying me some stamps?
你能给我买些邮票吗?
The medicine is on sale everywhere. You can get it at any chemist's.

这种药到处都卖。你可以在任何一家药店买到。

Page No.1255

2) both, neither, either

表示两者“都”用 both，表示两者“都不”用 neither，表示两者中的“任一”用 either。

Both teams were in hard training; neither was willing to lose the game.

两个队都在刻苦训练，谁都不愿意输掉这场比赛。

—Do you like tea or coffee?

你想喝茶还是咖啡？

—Either is OK.

什么都行。

Page No.1256

3) all, none, any

表示三者或三者以上“都”用 all，表示“都不”用 none，表示其中的“任一”用 any。

They were all tired, but none of them would stop to have a rest.

他们都累了，但没有一个人愿意停下来休息。

Page No.1257

4) none, no one, nothing

none 可指人或物，常接表示范围的 of 短语，可回答 how many 或 how much；而 no one 只能指人(=nobody)，不能接 of 短语，可回答 who；nothing 指物，一般回答 what 引起的提问。

—Who is in the room?

谁在房间里？

—No one.

没有人。

—What s in the box?

盒子里有什么？

—Nothing.

什么也没有。

—How much paper is left?

还剩多少纸？

—None.

一张也没有了。

Page No.1258

5) each, every

each 强调个体，表示两个或两个以上中的“每一个”，可作形容词或代词，可作主语、宾语、同位语和定语。

every 强调整体，表示三者或三者以上中的“每一个”，只能作形容词，在名词前作定语。

Each of us has our private views about it.

我们每个人对这件事都有自己的看法。

Every classroom is equipped with a computer.

所有的教室都配备了电脑。

Page No.1259

6) other, others, the other, the others, another

other 表示泛指，常与复数名词或不可数名词连用；others 表示泛指，相当于“other + 复数名词”；“the other+单数可数名词”特指两者中的另一个，常有“one ...the other ...”一个……另一个……的搭配；其复数形式the others 或“the other ＋复数名词”特指在某些人或物中，除去一部分后，“其余的”或“剩下的”人或物；another 常用于三者或三者以上中的“另一个”，表示泛指，后接单数名词，也可用于“another+数词+名词复数”。

Page No.1260

There are other ways to do this exercise.

做这个练习还可以可用别的方法。

It is hard to tell the twin brothers one from the other.
这对孪生兄弟很难辨认。
Some boys are reading; others are listening to the radio.
有些孩子在阅读,有些则在听收音机。
We've decided to stay in Shanghai for another two weeks.
我们决定在上海再待两个星期。
7) 复合不定代词
这类不定代词有:everything, everyone, everybody, something, someone, somebody, anything, anyone, anybody, nothing, no one, nobody 等。
Page No.1261
8. it 的用法
it 可用作人称代词、指示代词等。
1) 指物、人或事。
—Where's your car?
你的汽车在哪儿呢?
—It's in the garage.
在车库里。
The baby next door kept me awake. It cried all night.
隔壁的孩子吵得我睡不着觉。他整夜哭个没完。
The manager has resigned. Have you heard about it?
经理辞职了。你听说这件事了吗?
Page No.1262
2) 指时间、距离、天气等。
It is five miles to the nearest hospital from here.
这里离最近的医院也有五英里。
It's warmer today than yesterday. 今天比昨天暖和。
3) 充当形式主语或形式宾语,而把真正的主语或宾语(动词不定式、动名词、从句等)放在后面。
It's no use arguing about that. 争论那件事是没有用的。
We must make it clear to the public that something should be done to stop pollution.
我们必须使公众明白应该采取措施制止污染。
4) 用于强调结构"It + be + 被强调部分 + that(who) + 其他"。
It was not until then that I realized what had happened.
直到那时我才意识到发生了什么。
Page No.1263
例 1:Charles was alone at home, with looking after him.(2009·全国Ⅱ)
A. Someone B. anyone C. not one D. no one
解析:选 D。考查复合不定代词的用法。句意为:查理一个人在家,没有人照顾他。由句中的关键词 alone 可知,应选 no one, no one=nobody。
例 2:Being a parent is not always easy, and being the parent of a child with special needs often carries with extra stress.(2009·北京)
A. it B. them C. one D. him
解析:选 A。考查不定代词的用法。句意为:做家长不容易,做一个有特殊需要的孩子的家长通常会更多了一份压力。it 在句中指代 being the parent of a child with special needs。
Page No.1264
例 3:I felt so bad all day yesterday that I decided this morning I couldn't face day like that.(2009·山东)
A. other B. another C. the other D. others

解析:选 B。another day 另外一天。句意为：昨天我一整天都感觉很糟糕，以至于今天早晨我决定再也不能

那样面对另外一天了。是指在未来的日子中的一天，故用 another。

例 4:Jane was asked a lot of questions, but she didn’t answer of them.(2009・陕西)

A. Other B. any C. none D. some

解析:选 B。考查不定代词。所填词与 not 构成全部否定，四个选项中只有 any 与 not 可以构成 not any 结构，等于 none，表示全部否定，故选 B。

Page No.1265

例 5:—Wow! You’ve got so many clothes.

—But of them are in fashion now.(2009・上海)

A. All B. both C. neither D. none

解析：选 D。表示三者及三者以上的全部否定用 none。

例 6:I like this house with a beautiful garden in front, but I don’t have enough money to buy .(2009・四川)

A. One B. it C. this D. that

解析:选 B。句意为：我喜欢这个前面有一个美丽花园的房子，但是我没有足够多的钱去把它买下来。第一句话中的 this house 在该语境中是特指的用法，所以答案为 it，表示特指。该题容易误选 one，要注意的是 one 表示泛指。

Page No.1266

例 7:—I’ve read another book this week.

—Well, maybe is not how much you read but what you read that counts.(2009・浙江)

A. This B. that C. there D. it

解析:选 D。考查 it 的用法。分析句子结构可知，此句为强调句，故用 it。

例 8:Nine in ten parents said there were significant differences in their approach to educating their children compared with of their parents.(2009・江苏)

A. Those B. one C. both D. that

解析:选 D。that 为特指，指代上文提到的 their approach。those 指代名词复数;one 为泛指。

Page No.1267

例 9:Make sure you’ve got the passports and tickets and before you leave.(2008・山东)

A. Something B. anything

C. Everything D. nothing

解析:选 C。考查复合不定代词的用法。根据句意“在你们离开之前，确保你们已带好护照，车票以及所有的一切”,所以选 everything。

例 10:Isn’t it amazing how the human body heals after an injury?(2008・江西)

A. himself B. him C. itself D. it

解析:选 C。考查反身代词。句中表达的是“人体受伤之后能自愈”，the human body 为物，所以应选 itself。

Page No.1268

在语境中选择适当的形容词或副词成为高考中的重点之一， 如何选择恰当的形容词和副词要考虑几下几点，即：语境中需要的词性，恰当的语篇含义，同义、近义词辨析。在此章节中我们分别学习形容词和副 词。

Page No.1269

一、形容词的常见考点：

1.表语形容词：只作表语或宾补，不能作定语。如：afraid，alive，asleep，awake，able，sure，ill，well；而作定语时，要用 frightened，live，sleeping，waking，sick，healthy；但个别单词作定语时另有含义，如：able men 有能力的人；ill effect 坏影响。

2. 形容词的语序：限定词（the,a）+描绘性形容词+size（大小）+shape(形状)+age(年龄、时间)+colour（颜色）+origin(国籍，来源)+material(原料)+purpose(目的)+名词。

注意：限定词指冠词、物主代词、指示代词、数词等。

熟记口诀：限定描绘大长高，形状年龄和新老，颜色国籍跟材料，作用类别往后靠。

three very comfortable dark blue chairs
三把非常舒服的深蓝色的椅子
the cloudy gray morning sky
早晨阴云密布的灰色的天空
Page No.1270
3. 形容词的级（原级、比较级和最高级）
1) 原级比较（又叫同级比较）：as ...as ...“……和……相同”，否定形式用 not as(so) ...as ...“前者不如后者……”。
We ll give you as much help as we can.
我们要尽量多地给你帮助。
但是,as ...as 前可以加 nearly，almost，exactly，just，twice，three times 等表示程度或倍数的词。
We produced twice as much cotton this year as we did last year.我们今年生产的棉花是去年的两倍。
2) 比较级：比较级 + than ...“……比……更加……”。
Mary is taller than John but less active than John.
玛丽比约翰要高但不如约翰活跃。
注意:①比较级前可加 far, much，even，still，slightly，a lot，a little，a bit, (three)times 等，而 by far 常放在比较级之后，最高级之前。
This story is more interesting than that one by far.
这个故事远比那个有趣。
Page No.1271
②比较级和否定副词连用可以表示最高级。
I have never seen a better film than the one I saw last night.
我从没看过比昨天晚上看的更好的电影。
③可修饰比较级的词或短语有：a bit, little, rather , much, far, by far, many, a lot, a great deal, any, still, even, twice 等。
3) 最高级：the +形容词的最高级(+of/in/among)，常用于三者以上的比较。
I’m the youngest in my family.
我是我们家年龄最小的。
4. 其他关于比较级的常用句型：
more and more 越来越……
the more ...the more ... 越……就越……
more A than B 与其 B 倒不如 A
no+比较级+than ... 两者同样不……
A+less+原级+than+B A 不如 B……
Page No.1272
二、副词的常见考点:
1. 副词的种类
1) 时间副词：now，then，today，later，recently 等;
2) 地点副词：here，there，everywhere，away，off 等;
3) 方式副词：well，hard, happily, nervously, carefully 等;
4) 程度副词：almost，much，(a)little，nearly，rather，too 等;
5) 频度副词：always，often，usually，occasionally，sometimes, hardly，seldom，never 等;
6) 疑问副词：when，where，why，how 等，引导特殊疑问句;
7) 连接副词：where，when，why，how，引导主语从句、宾语从句或表语从句;
8) 关系副词：when，where，why，引导定语从句;
9) 其他副词：seriously，instead，besides 等。
Page No.1273

2. 常见同根副词

hard→hardlylate→latelywide→widely

most→mostlyhigh→highlydead→deadly

3. 副词的级

副词的级类同于形容词，只是副词的最高级前的 the 常可以省略不用。

Peter plays tennis more often than Dick does.

彼得打网球比迪克更频繁。

Page No.1274

三、形容词和副词的倍数表达句型：

1. ...倍数+形容词(或副词)的比较级+than ...

This rope is twice longer than that one.

这根绳子的长度是那根绳子的三倍。

This hall is five times bigger than our classroom.

这个大厅比我们的教室大五倍。

2. ...倍数+as+形容词(或 much)或副词+as ...

This big stone is three times as heavy as that one.

这块大石头的重量是那一块的三倍。

The plane flew ten times as high as the kite.

那架飞机的飞行高度是那个风筝的十倍。

3. ... 倍 数 +the size(length，height ...)of ...

This street is four times the length of that street.

这条街是那条街的四倍长。

This hill is four times the height of that small one.

=The height of this hill is four times that of that small one.

这座山的高度是那座小山的四倍。

Page No.1275

例 1:It seems that living green is easy and affordable. A small step makes a big difference.（2009・福建）

A. Exactly B. fortunately

C. Surprisingly D. hardly

解析:选 C。考查副词辨析。exactly 准确地；fortunately 幸运地；surprisingly 惊讶地，出乎意料地;hardly 几乎不。句意为：看来绿色生活是出乎意料的简单可行且能够承担得起，小小的行动能带来很大的不同。

例 2:How much she looked without her glasses!（2009・海南）

A. Well B. good C. best D. better

解析:选 D。考查形容词和副词的比较级。句意为：她不戴眼镜看起来漂亮多了! 句子暗含比较之意，且 much 修饰比较级，故用 good 的比较级 better。

Page No.1276

例 3:I can be a teacher. I m not a very patient person. （2009・湖南）

A. Seldom B. ever C. never D. always

解析:选 C。考查副词词义辨析。句意为：我永远不会成为一名老师。我不是一个很有耐心的人。故用否定副词 never。

例 4:It was a nice house, but too small for a family of five.（2009・天津）

A. Rarely B. fairly C. rather D. pretty

解析:选 C。考查副词词义辨析。句意为：那是一所漂亮的房子，但对于一个五口之家来说就太小了。rather 表示“相当”，修饰 too small。

Page No.1277

例 5:I’m not surprised that he became a writer. Even as a child he had a imagination.（2009・天津）

A. Clear B. cautious C. funny D. vivid

解析:选 D。考查副词词义辨析。句意为：我并不为他当上了作家而感到惊奇，即使在他还是一个孩子的时候，

他就有着丰富的想象力。其他三项含义不正确。

例 6:—Do you think it s a good idea to make friends with your students?

— , I do. I think it’s a great idea. （2009・安徽）

A. Really B. Obviously C. Actually D. Generally

解析：选 C。考查交际用语。在回答第一句的提问时，答语说“是的，事实上，我认为这是个很好的想法”，故选 C。

Page No.1278

例 7:The questionnaire takes ten to fifteen minutes to complete and can be used along with the assessment interview. （2009・湖北）

A. Mainly B. punctually C. approximately D. precisely

解析：选 C。考查副词词义辨析。approximately 大约，近似地; mainly 主要地;punctually 准时地;precisely 准确地;确切地。

例 8:Last night Mr Crook didn t come back at the usual time. , he met some friends and stayed out until midnight.(2008・江苏)

A. Meanwhile B. However C. Instead D. Yet

解析:选 C。考查句意连接词。前后两句之间缺少连接词，表示“取而代之，相反”，故选 C。meanwhile 其间；同时;however 尽管；然而；yet 而，表转折时为连词。

Page No.1279

例 9:You’re driving too fast. Can you drive ?（2008・全国Ⅰ）

A. more slowly a bit B. slowly a bit more

C. a bit more slowly D. slowly more a bit

解析:选 C。考查副词比较级前的修饰语。由于车开得太快而希望开得慢一点，故用比较级，选 C。

例 10:It is to spend money on preventing illnesses by promoting healthy living condition rather than spending it trying to make people after they are ill. （2008・辽宁）

A. good; good B. well; better

C. better; better D. better; good

解析:选 C。考查形容词的比较级。无论是 “花钱预防生病”和“花钱使生病的人好起来”还是“生病后使人康复”，两者都是比较，所以都用比较级，故选 C。

Page No.1280

连词分为并列连词和从属连词两大类。并列连词是连接主语与主语，谓语与谓语，句子与句子，分词与分 词的词，它要求前后两部分有相同的形式和语法作用；而从属连词一般连接主句与从句，从句形式有名词 性从句，定语从句和状语从句等。这里主要就并列连词的考点做逐一分析，从属连词的用法见各类从句考点分析。

Page No.1281

高考中并列连词的考点可以分为以下四类：

第一类是以 and 为代表的表示意义引申的并列连词，如：and（和），as well as（既……又），both ...and（不仅……而且;……和……都），not only ...but also（不仅……而且），not ...but（不是……而是），neither ...nor（既不……也不）等；

第二类是以 or 为代表的表示选择的并列连词，如：either ...or（不是……就是），or（或者）等；

第三类是以 but 为代表的表示意义转折的并列连词，如：but （但是），yet（然而），while(然而)等；

第四类是表示缘由的并列连词 for（因为）,还有 so（所以），when（这时）等。

Page No.1282

连词考点详解：

一、以 and 为代表的表示意义引申的并列连词

1. and 与 or 引导两个并列的词、词组或句子。

I saw two men sitting behind and whispering there.

我看见两个人坐在后面低声耳语。

and 与 or 还可以和祈使句或名词词组连用表示条件。

Make up your mind, or you’ll miss the chance.

下定决心，不然，你就会错失良机。

If you make up your mind, you'll get the chance.

如果你下定决心，你就会把握住机会。

One more effort, and you'll succeed.

再努力一点，你就会成功。

Page No.1283

比较 and 和 or:

①并列结构中，or 通常用于否定句，and 用于肯定句。

②但有时 and 也可用于否定句。请注意其不同点：

There is no air or water on the moon.

月球上既没有空气，也没有水。

There is no air and no water on the moon.

月球上没有空气，没有水。

在否定中并列结构用 or 连接，但含有两个否定词的句子实际被看作是肯定结构，因此要用 and。

—I don't like chicken fish.

—I don't like chicken, I like fish very much.

A. and；and B. and；but

C. or；but D. or；and

解析:选 C。否定句中表示并列用 or; but 表示转折。

Page No.1284

2. both ...and 两者都……

She plays （both） the piano and the guitar.

她既弹钢琴，也弹吉他。

3. not only ...but （also）, as well as 不仅……而且。

She plays not only the piano, but （also） the guitar.

她不仅弹钢琴，也弹吉他。

注意：not only ...but also 连接两个分句时，一个分句因有否定词 not 而必须倒装。

Not only does he like reading stories, but also he can even write some.

他不仅喜欢读故事，而且自己也能写一些故事。

4. neither ...nor 意为“既不……也不……”,谓语动词采用就近原则，与 nor 之后的词保持一致。

Neither you nor he is to blame.

应受责备的，既不是你，也不是他。

Page No.1285

二、以 or 为代表的表示选择的并列连词

1. or 意思为“否则”。

I must work hard, or I'll fail in the exam.

我必须努力学习，否则会通不过考试的。

2. either ...or 意思为“或者……或者……”。注意谓语动词的主谓一致上采用就近原则。

Either you or I am right.

或者你或者我是正确的。

Page No.1286

三、以 but 为代表的表示意义转折的并列连词

1. but 表示转折，while 表示对比。

Some people love cats, while others hate them.

有些人喜欢猫，但有些人就讨厌猫。

—Would you like to come to dinner tonight?

—I'd like to, I'm too busy.

A. And B. so C. as D. but

解析:选 D。but 与前面形成转折，符合句意。而表示并列的 and，表示结果的 so，表示原因的 as 都不符合句意。

2. not ...but ...意思为“不是……而是……”，后面的用词要遵循一致原则。

They were not the bones of an animal, but （the bones） of a human being.

它们不是动物的骨头，而是人类的骨头。

Page No.1287

四、表示缘由的并列连词 for,还有 so（所以），when（这时）等

1. for 是并列连词，不能置于含两个并列分句的句子的句首，只能将其放在两个分句中间。

He is absent today, for he is ill.

他今天缺席是因为生病了。

2. so 为连词, therefore 一般为副词。

He hurt his leg, so he couldn’t play in the game.

他伤到腿了，所以没能参加比赛。

I think; therefore I exist.

我思，故我在。

Page No.1288

3. 比较 so 和 such:

such 是形容词，修饰名词或名词词组;so 是副词，只能修饰形容词或副词。so 还可以与表示数量的形容词 many，few，much， little 连用，形成固定搭配。

so+adj.	so foolish
so+adj.+a（n）+n.	so nice a flower
so+adj.+n. （pl.）	so many/few flowers
	so many people
so+adj.+n.（不可数）	so much/little money
such+a（n）+n.	such a fool
	such a nice flower
such+n.（pl.）	such nice flowers
	such a lot of people
such+n.（不可数）	such rapid progress

so many 已成为固定搭配，a lot of 虽然相当于 many，但 a lot of 为名词性短语，只能用 such 修饰。so ...that 与 such ...that 之间的转换可视为 so 与 such 之间的转换。

Page No.1289

例 1:John plays basketball well, his favourite sport is badminton.(2009・北京)

A.So B.or C.yet D.for

解析:选 C。考查转折连词的用法。句意为:约翰篮球打得很好，但他最喜欢的运动是羽毛球。根据句意，应用转折连词，所以选 C。

例 2:Peter was so excited he received an invitation from his friend to visit Chongqing.(2009 •重庆)

A.where B.that C.why D.when

解析:选 D。考查表示缘由的连词。句意为:彼得收到朋友的请柬邀请他到重庆参观，他非常激动。so ...when 构成因果关系，所以选 D。

Page No.1290

例 3:He found it increasingly difficult to read, his eyesight was beginning to fail.(2008・山东)

A.Though B.for C.but D.so

解析:选 B。考查表示缘由的连词。句意为:由于他的视力开始下降，他发现读东西越来越困难了。for 表示补充说明，所以选 B。

例 4:It is often said that the joy oftravelling is in arriving at your destination in the journey itself.(2008・江苏)

A./;but B./;or C.not;or D.not;but

解析:选 D。考查表示转折的连词。句意为：人们常说，旅游的乐趣不在于你抵达目的地，而在于旅程本身。not ...but 为固定短语，意为“不是……而是……”,所以选 D。

Page No.1291

例 5:Stand over there you’ll be able to see the oil painting better.(2008・全国Ⅱ)

A.but B.till C.and D.or

解析:选 C。考查表示并列的连词。句意为:站在那边，你就能更好地观看这幅油画了。and 连接两个句子，所以选 C。

例 6:I thought we’d be late for the concert, we ended up getting there ahead of time.(2008・湖南)

A.But B.or C.so D.for

解析:选 A。考查表示转折的连词。句意为:我原本以为我们会迟到，但结果我们提前赶到了。but 表示转折，所以选 A。

Page No.1292

例 7:The artist was born poor, poor he remained all his life.(2008・重庆)

A.and B.or C.but D.so

解析:选 A。考查表示并列的连词。句意为：这位艺术家一出生就很贫穷，并且他一生一直都很贫穷。and 连接并列句,表示递进，所以选 A。

例 8:In some places women are expected to earn money men work at home and raise their children.(2008・四川)

A.but B.while C.because D.though

解析:选 B。考查表示转折的连词。句意为：在有些地方女人赚钱，而男人持家照顾孩子。while 此处表示并列对比，所以选 B。

Page No.1293

例 9:I cannot tell whether the book is worth reading, I haven’t read it myself.(2008・四川延考区)

A.but B.so C.or D.for

解析:选 D。考查表示缘由的连词。句意为：我不能说这本书是否值得阅读，因为我自己没有读过。for 在此处引导并列句，表示补充说明原因，因此选 D。

例 10:Between the two generations,it is often not their age, their education that causes misunderstanding.（2007・全国Ⅰ）

A.Like B.as C.or D.but

解析:选 D。考查表示转折的连词。句意为:在两代人之间，不是他们的年龄而是他们所受到的教育容易引起误解。not ...but ...表示“不是……而是……”，因此选 D。

Page No.1294

高考一直侧重对动词各种用法的考查，其中又以考查动词的时态和语态为重中之重。考生要通过特定的语 境进行判断，选择使用正确的时态和语态。考生在日常学习中要理解和区别各种时态和语态，注重将动词放在具体的语言环境中学习和运用。

Page No.1295

一、动词的时态

1.一般现在时

(1) 表示习惯性或反复发生的动作。

He writes to his parents once a month.

他每月给父母写一封信。

She is always late for class.

她上课总是迟到。

(2) 表示客观事实、普遍真理，特别是用于表示科学事实、客观存在的事物和格言等。

The earth goes around the sun.

地球绕着太阳转。

Practice makes perfect.

熟能生巧。

Page No.1296

(3) 表示现阶段存在的状态。

I don’t agree with you.

我不同意你的观点。

The book is mine.

这本书是我的。

(4) 一些动词如:come，go，leave，arrive，return，start，begin 等常用一般现在时表示将来意义上的时间，表示按规定、计划或安排将要发生的动作。

The term starts at the beginning of September.

这个学期从九月份开始。

(5) 在时间、条件状语从句中常用一般现在时代替将来时。

When he arrives, he’ll tell us all about the match.

当他到的时候，他会告诉我们这场比赛的经过。

I can’t come unless my brother agrees.

我不能来，除非我哥哥同意。

Page No.1297

2.一般过去时

(1) 表示过去某一时刻或一段时间内发生过的动作或存在的状态。

I wasn’t in last night.

昨晚我不在家。

(2) 表示过去的习惯性动作。

When he was a child, he often swam in the river.

当他还是小孩儿的时候，经常在这条河里游泳。

(3) 在条件从句中表示与现在或将来事实相反的假设。

If I were you, I wouldn’t accept the offer.

如果我是你，我不会接受这个提议。

(4) 用于 I wish, I’ d rather, It’ s (high) time 后的 that 从句中，表示与现在或将来的事实相反的主观设想。

It’s time you went to bed.

你该睡觉了。

Page No.1298

3.一般将来时

(1) “will/shall+动词原形”表示将要发生的动作或状况。

There will be a meeting at four.

4 点钟要开会。

They will fly to Beijing in three days.

三天后他们将乘飞机去北京。

—You’ve left the light on.

你没关灯。

—Oh, so I have. I’ll go and turn it off.

噢，确实是。我这就去把它关掉。

(2) “is/am/are going to+动词原形”表示说话者明确地打算或根据某种迹象认为要发生某事。

They are going to hold a meeting to discuss it.

他们打算开个会来讨论这件事。

Look at the clouds. It’s going to rain.

看天上的云彩，要下雨了。

Page No.1299

(3) “is/am/are to+动词原形”表示计划安排做某事或命令做某事。

I am to meet Mr Brown at eleven this morning.

我要在今天上午 11 点见布朗先生。

You are to return the book before Friday.

你务必在星期五之前归还这本书。

(4)“is/am/are about to+动词原形”表示即将要发生的动作,但不可与将来的时间状语连用，如 soon, tomorrow, immediately 等。

The meeting is about to begin.

会议就要开始了。

They are about to start.

他们即将动身。

Page No.1300

4.过去将来时

表示从过去某一时间看将要发生的动作或存在的状态。

常见结构有：

(1) would+动词原形

(2) was/were going to+动词原形

(3) was/were to+动词原形

(4) was/were about to+动词原形

Page No.1301

5.现在进行时

(1) 表示说话时正在进行的动作。

I am waiting for the bus.

我正在等公共汽车。

(2) 表示现阶段正在进行的动作。

He is translating a book.

他正在翻译一本书。

(3) 有些动词如:arrive, go, come, start, leave，stay，begin 等的现在进行时可以表示将来的动作。

My grandmother is coming to see me next week.

我奶奶下周要来看我。

(4) 与 always，constantly 等时间副词连用，表示不满、抱怨或赞赏等情感。

She is always finding fault with others.

她老是挑别人的毛病。

John is always thinking of others.

约翰总是为别人着想。

Page No.1302

6.过去进行时

(1) 表示过去某一时刻正在进行的动作。

I was reading a book when you came in.

你进来时我正在看书。

(2) 表示过去某一阶段正在进行的动作。

He was writing a novel last year, but I don’t know whether he has finished it or not.

他去年在写一部小说，但我不知道他是否已写完。

Page No.1303

7.将来进行时

(1) 表示将来某时刻正在进行的动作。

What will you be doing at this time next Monday?

下星期一的这个时间你会在做什么？

When he comes to my house tomorrow, I will be writing the report. 明天他来我家时，我将会在写报告。

(2) 表示预定的将来的动作或对将来的预测。

I will be working in the department store next month.
下个月我将在这个百货大楼里上班。
After you take the medicine, you will be feeling much better.
服药之后你会感觉好得多。
Page No.1304
8.现在完成时
(1) 表示到现在为止的一段时间内发生的情况或动作，强调的是对现在的影响，可能是已经完成的动作，也可以表示多次动作的总和，或习惯性的行为。
I have cut my finger.
我割破了手。
I've always walked to school.
我一直步行去学校。
(2) 表示一个动作发生在过去，但一直延续到现在，并可能继续进行下去，这时常常与表示一段时间的状语连用。
I have studied English for four years.
我学英语已经有四年了。
He has lived in Shanghai since 1992.
自从 1992 年以来他一直住在上海。
(3) 现在完成时用于将来的情况，即:主句为一般将来时，时间和条件从句中的谓语用现在完成时表示将来某时刻完成的动作。
I'll lend the magazine to you as soon as I've finished reading it. 我一看完这本杂志就借给你。
Page No.1305
9.过去完成时
(1) 过去完成时表示在过去某一动作或时间之前，另一个动作已经结束，它强调“过去的过去”。
When I got to the airport, the flight had taken off.
当我到达机场时，飞机已经起飞了。
He told me he had finished all the work.
他告诉我他已完成了所有的工作。
By the end of that month Jack had collected more than a hundred foreign stamps.
到那个月底，杰克已收集了一百多张外国邮票。
Page No.1306
(2) 在由 if, if only, as if, as though, I'd rather, I wish 等引导的从句中，表示与过去事实相反的主观愿望或想法。
If the driver had been careful enough, all the passengers would be safe now.
如果这个司机能足够小心，那么所有的乘客现在就都安全了。
(3) intend，mean，hope，want，think，plan 等动词的过去完成时可表示一种未实现的愿望或想法。
They had wanted to come to help us, but couldn't get here in time.
他们本想来帮助我们，但没能及时赶到这里。
Page No.1307
10.将来完成时
将来完成时表示在将来某个日期或某一动作发生之前，另一个动作将要结束。
They'll have hit the year's target by the end of October.
到十月份末他们将会实现年度目标。
By next month I will have studied German for just two years.
到下个月我学德语正好两年了。
11.现在完成进行时
现在完成进行时主要表示从过去某一时间开始一直延续到现在的动作，这个动作可能仍然在进行，也可能　停

止了一会儿。

She is ill. She's been lying in the bed for two weeks.
她病了，已经卧床两个星期了。
We have been looking for you for an hour.
我们找了你一个小时了。
Page No.1308
12. 过去完成进行时
过去完成进行时表示动作从过去某一时间之前开始，到过去某一时间仍在进行或刚刚结束，必须以某一特 定的过去时间为前提。
He told me he had been writing the paper for one month.
他告诉我他写论文已经一个月了。
I had been ringing outside for half an hour before she called me in. 在她叫我进去之前，我已经在外面等了半个小时了。
Page No.1309
二、动词的语态
动词的语态有两种：一是主动语态，二是被动语态。主语是动作的发出者，则为主动语态；主语是动作的 承受者，则为被动动态。
1. 被动语态的构成
被动语态主要由“助动词 be+及物动词的过去分词”构成；而时态则由助动词的各种变化来表示，要注意助动词 be 的时态必须与相应的主动句保持一致。被动语态还可以由 get 构成，这也是高考试题中常出现的语言点之一。
John was fired last week.
约翰上周被解雇了。
My finger got badly burnt, now it becomes swollen.
我的手指被伤得很重，现在肿起来了。
可与 get 相搭配的过去分词有：
broken, burnt, killed, hurt, washed, lost, confused, married, dressed, divorced, engaged 等。
Page No.1310
2. 被动语态的时态
一般现在时： is (am, are)+过去分词
一般过去时： was (were)+过去分词
现在进行时： is (am, are)+being+过去分词
过去进行时： was (were) +being+过去分词
现在完成时： have (has)+been+过去分词
过去完成时： had +been+过去分词
一般将来时： shall (will)+be+过去分词
过去将来时： should (would)+be +过去分词
Page No.1311
3. 主动表示被动的几种情况:
(1) 不及物动词与状语连用，用以表示主语的品质和状态。
常见的动词有：cut，sell，read，write，cook，lock，wash，drive，keep 等。
These books sell well.
这些书销售得不错。
The pen writes smoothly.
这支笔写起来很流畅。
Meat won't keep long in such hot weather.
肉在这样热的天气里不宜久放。
Page No.1312

(2) 连系动词的主动式＋形容词。

常见动词（短语）有:look，smell，taste，sound，feel，turn out 等。

The apples taste good.

这些苹果很好吃。

The flower smells wonderful.

这花闻起来很香。

Cotton feels soft.

棉花摸起来很柔软。

(3) 不定式用在某些形容词之后，且与主语有动宾关系。

常见形容词有：hard，difficult，easy，heavy，fit，good，comfortable，convenient 等。

The question is difficult to answer.

这个问题难以回答。

The box is heavy to carry.

这个盒子搬着很沉。

Page No.1313

例 1:—Why does the lake smell terrible?

-Because large quantities of water .（2009・福建）

A. have polluted B. is being polluted

C. has been polluted D. have been polluted

解析：选 D。考查动词时态，语态和主谓语一致。根据前一分句可知,所填动词表示过去发生的动作对现在产生的影响，故时态用现在完成时；动词与主语是被动关系，故用被动语态。主语是 large quantities of water， 其中心词是 quantities，为复数，谓语动词用复数,故选 D。

例 2:According to the literary review, Shakespeare his characters live through their language in his plays.（2009・福建）

A. will make B. had made C. was making D. makes

解析:选 D。考查动词时态。题干是陈述一个客观事实，用一般现在时,故选 D。

Page No.1314

例 3:Would you please keep silent? The weather report and I want to listen.（2009・湖南）

A. is broadcast B. is being broadcast

C. has been broadcast D. had been broadcast

解析:选 B。考查时态和语态。句意为：请保持安静行吗? 我想听正在播放的天气预报。说话时正在发生的动作，应用进行时,同时表示被动含义。故选 B。

例 4:—The food here is nice enough.

—My friend me a right place.（2009・湖南）

A. Introduces B. introduced

C. had introduced D. was introducing

解析:选 B。考查时态的用法。句意为：——这里的食物不错。——我的朋友给我介绍了一个正确的地方。表示过去的行为。

Page No.1315

例 5:I was out of town at the time, so I don t know exactly how it . （2009・山东）

A. was happening B. happened

C. Happens D. has happened

解析:选 B。考查具体语境中的时态，后半句隐藏的时间状语是 at the time。

例 6:This is the first time we a film in the cinema together as a family. （2009・陕西）

A. See B. had seen C. saw D. have seen

解析:选 D。考查动词时态。“This is the+序数词+time”引导的时间状语从句中动词时态用现在完成时。故选 D。

例 7:—Why don’t we choose that road to save time?

—The bridge to it .（2009·四川）

A. has repaired B. is repaired

C. is being repaired D. will be repaired

解析:选 C。考查时态和语态。根据语境可知,不走另一条路的原因是因为桥正在被修。所以用现在进行时的被动语态作为该题的答案。

例 8:Daniel’s family their holiday in Huangshan this time next week.（2009·安徽）

A. are enjoying B. are to enjoy

C. will enjoy D. will be enjoying

解析:选 D。考查时态的用法。表示在将来的某个时间点做某事用将来进行时。

Page No.1317

例 9:She stared at the painting, wondering where

she it.（2009·重庆）

A. Saw B. has seen C. sees D. had seen

解析:选 D。考查时态的用法。根据句意,“以前在什么地方看过这幅画”应在 stared 之前，所以用过去完成时。

例 10:Over the past decades, sea ice in the Arctic as a result of global warming.（2009·浙江）

A. had decreased B. decreased

C. has been decreasing D. is decreasing

解析:选 C。考查时态的用法。根据句意，“北冰洋上的冰在过去的几十年里一直在减少”，可知这种状况依然在持续，所以使用现在完成进行时。

Page No.1318

对于情态动词,考纲要求学生要掌握情态动词的基本用法和辨析。最近几年高考试题中常常借助语境来考查 情态动词的基本用法及其区别，因此在平时学习时准确理解和掌握情态动词的基本用法十分重要。情态动 词的用法复杂多变，在高考试题中，命题者常常利用语境和句子之间意义上的细微差别来考查学生对情态 动词的理解和掌握。对于情态动词，除了要求考生能够准确掌握它们的基本用法外，还要充分利用高试题 所设置的语境来分析句子之间所体现的特殊关系。

对于虚拟语气,考纲要求考生能掌握基本情态动词的用法、在各种句式、隐含条件句、混合条件句等句中的虚拟语气的用法。根据考纲的要求，虚拟语气部分主要考查情态动词的选择、虚拟语气在条件句、 名词性从句、简单句或日常交际中的使用等基本用法。因此,依据语境来判断虚拟语气的不同形式是高考试题的主要设题方法之一。在近年的高考试题中，出现了对陈述语气与虚拟语气辨析的考查，虚拟语气在各种从句中的应用是该部分的重点掌握内容。

Page No.1319

情态动词的常见考点：

1 can 和 could (could 为 can 的过去式) 的基本用法

(1) 表示能力。

He can speak English better than you.

他的英语讲得比你好。

(2) 在疑问句和否定句中表示“怀疑”、“猜测”或“可能性”。Can this green bike be Liu Dong’s?

这辆绿色的自行车会是刘冬的吗？

(3) 表示“许可”时 can 可以和 may 换用。

You can (may) go home now.

你现在可以回家了。

(4) 如果要表示语气委婉，可用 could 代替 can，这时 could 不再是 can 的过去式。

Could you come again tomorrow?

你明天能再来吗？

(5) can 和 be able to 都可表示能力，两者在意思上没有什么区别。但是 can 只能有现在式和过去式，而 be able

to 则有更多的形式。

He will be able to do the work better.

他将可以把这项工作做得更好。

Page No.1320

2 may 和 might (might 为 may 的过去式)的基本用法

(1)表示允许或征询对方许可，有“可以”之意。

You may use my dictionary.

你可以用我的字典。

在回答对方说“可以做某事”或“不可以做某事”时，一般多不用 may 或 may not，以避免语气生硬或不客气。而用比较委婉的说法进行回答。

—May I use this dictionary?

我可以用这本字典吗？

—Yes, please./Certainly.

是的，可以/当然可以。

在请求对方许可时，如果用 Might I ...?就比用 May I ...?语气更委婉些。

Page No.1321

May I have a look at your new computer?

我可以看一下你的新电脑吗？

但是表示“阻止”或“禁止”对方做某事时，要用 must not 代替 may not。

—May we swim in this lake?

我们在这个湖里游泳好吗？

—No, you mustn’t. It’s too dangerous.

不，不可以。太危险了。

(2)may 或 might 都可以表示可能性，表示“或许”、“可能”之意，如果用 might 表示可能性，则语气更加不肯定。

They may (might) be in the library now.

他们现在可能在图书馆。

Page No.1322

3.must 的基本用法

(1) must 表示“必须”、“应该”之意，其否定式 must not，缩写形式为 mustn’t，表示“不应该”、“不准”、“不许”或“禁止”之意。

We must study hard and make progress every day.

我们必须好好学习，天天向上。

You mustn’t touch the fire.

你不准玩火。

Page No.1323

(2) 对以 must 提出的疑问句，如果作否定回答时，要用 needn’t 或 don’t (doesn’t) have to (不必)来回答，而不用 mustn’t，因为 mustn’t 表示的是“禁止”或“不许可”之意。

—Must we finish the work tomorrow?

我们明天必须完成这项工作吗？

—No, you needn’t (don’t have to), but you must finish it in three days.

不，不必。但是你们必须在三天内完成。

(3) 在肯定句中 must 可以表示推测，表示“一定”或“必定”之意。

—Whose new bike can it be?

这会是谁的新自行车呢？

—It must be Liu Dong’s. I know his father has just bought him a new one.

这一定是刘冬的。我知道他爸爸刚给他买了一辆新的。

4. can, could, may, must 后接完成时的用法

(1) can, could 后接完成时的用法

①在否定句或疑问句中表示对过去发生过的事情的“怀疑”或“不肯定”的态度。

Could he have said so?

他这样说过吗？

②在肯定句中，可以表示过去可能做到而实际并未做到的事情，有“劝告”或“责备”的语气。

—When did you answer her letter?

你什么时候给她回的信？

—Only yesterday.

就在昨天。

—It’s too late. You could have answered it earlier, I am sure.

太迟了。我确定你本可以早点回信的。

Page No.1325

(2) may, might 后接完成时的用法

①表示对过去某事的推测，认为某一件事情在过去可能发生了。如果使用 might，语气就比较委婉或更加不肯定。

Mary might have learned some Chinese before.

玛丽以前可能学过一些汉语。

②表示过去本来可以做到而实际没有做到的事情，有“劝告”或“责备”的语气。

You didn’t do the work well that day. You might have done it better.

你那天工作没有做好。你本可以做得更好的。

(3) must 后接完成时的用法：表示对过去某事的推测，认为某事在过去一定做到了。

Liu Dong isn’t in the classroom. He must have gone to the library.

刘冬不在教室，他一定去了图书馆。

Page No.1326

5. have to 的基本用法

have to 和 must 的意义相近，只是 must 侧重表示说话人的主观看法，而 have to 则表示客观需要。

I must study hard.

我必须努力学习。

I had to give it up because of illness.

因为有病，我不得不放弃它了。

6.ought to 的基本用法

(1) 表示根据某种义务或必要“应当”做某事，语气比 should 强烈。

Everyone ought to obey the traffic regulations.

每个人都必须遵守交通规则。

Page No.1327

(2) 表示推测，注意与 must 表示推测时的区别。

He must be home by now.

他现在一定到家了。(断定他已到家)

He ought to be home by now.

他现在可能到家了。(不十分肯定)

This is where the oil must be.

这一定就是石油的所在地了。(比较确定)

This is where the oil ought to be.

这可能就是石油的所在地了。(比较含蓄)

(3)“ought(to)+have+过去分词”表示过去应做某事而实际未做。

You ought to have helped him. (but you didn’t)

你本应去帮助他，但你没有。

这时，ought 与 should 可以互换使用。

注意:在美国英语中 ought to 用于否定和疑问句时 to 可以省略。

Ought you smoke so much?

你应该吸这么多烟吗？

You oughtn't smoke so much.

你不应该吸这么多烟。

Page No.1328

7.dare 的基本用法

(1) dare (dared 为其过去式) 作情态动词用时，主要用于否定句，疑问句和条件从句中。

Dared he break the traffic regulations again?

他敢再次违反交通规则吗？

(2) 在现代英语中 dare 常用作行为动词，其变化与一般行为动词相同。

She dares to stay at home alone at night.

她敢晚上一个人在家。

Page No.1329

8.need 的基本用法

(1) need 作情态动词用时，主要用于否定句和疑问句中。

He needn't worry about us now.

他现在不必担心我们。

(2) need 也可作行为动词用，可用于肯定句，否定句和疑问句中，其后可接名词、代词、动名词或带 to 的动词不定式作宾语。

You need to practise reading aloud every day.

你需要每天练习大声朗读。

(3) needn t 后接完成时可以表示过去做了一件本来不必要做的事情。

—Did you answer the letter yesterday?

你昨天回信了吗？

—Yes, I did.

是的，我回了。

—But you needn't have answered it.

但是你本没必要回信的。

Page No.1330

9.shall 的基本用法

(1) shall 用作情态动词时，用于第二、三人称，表示说活人的意愿，可表示“命令”、“警告”、“强制”、“威胁”或“允诺”等意。

He shall go first, whether he wants to or not.

无论他想不想，他将第一个走。

(2) 在疑问句中，shall 用于第一、三人称，表示说话人的征询对方意见或请求指示。

Shall I open the door?

我可以开门吗？

Page No.1331

10.should 的基本用法

(1) should 作为情态动词可以表示“建议”或“劝告”，有“应该”之意。

You should learn from each other.

你们应该互相学习。

(2) should 后接完成时表示过去没有做到本来应该做的事情，或是做了本来不应该做的事情。

You should have given him more help.

你应该给予他更多的帮助。

11.will 的基本用法

(1) 用于各种人称，可以表示“意志”或“决心”。

I have told him again and again to stop smoking, but he will not listen.

我一遍又一遍地告诉他不要吸烟，但他就是不听。

(2) 在疑问句中用于第二人称，表示说话人向对方提出请求或询问对方的意愿。Will you please tell me how to get to the Capital Gymnasium?

你能告诉我去首都体育馆怎么走吗？

(3) will 可以表示一种习惯性的动作，有“总是”或“会要”之意。

Every morning he will have a walk along this river.

每天早晨他总会沿着这条河散步。

Page No.1333

12.would 的基本用法

① would 作为 will 的过去式，可用于各种人称，表示在过去时间的“意志”或“决心”。

He promised he would never smoke again.

他决定再也不吸烟了。

② 在疑问句中，用于第二人称，表示说话人向对方提出请求或询问对方的意愿时，比用 will 语气更加委婉。

Would you like some more coffee?

你需要再来些咖啡吗？

③ 在日常生活中，常用“I would like to ...”表示“我想要……”或“我愿意”之意，以使语气委婉。

I would like to do it first.

我想第一个做。

Page No.1334

④ would 可以表示过去的习惯动作，比 used to 正式，并没有“现已无此习惯”的含义。

Last year our English teacher would sometimes tell us stories in English after class.

去年，我们的英语老师常常在课后用英语给我们讲故事。

During the vacation he would visit me every week.

在放假期间，他每周都会来看我。

⑤ 表示料想或猜想。

It would be about ten when he left home.

他离开家时应该是 10 点左右。

What would she be doing there?

她正在那里做什么呢？

I thought he would have told you about it.

我以为他会告诉你这件事。

Page No.1335

13.used to, had better, would rather 的基本用法

(1) used to 表示过去的习惯动作或状态，现在已不存在。在间接引语中，其形式可以不变。

He told us he used to play football when he was young.

他告诉我们，他年轻时经常踢足球。

在疑问句、否定句、否定疑问句或强调句中，可有两种形式。

疑问句：Did you use to/Used you to go to the same school as your brother? 你和你哥哥去的是同一所学校吗？

否定句：I usedn’t to/didn t use to go there. (usedn’t 也可写作 usen’t)我不常去那里。

否定疑问句：Usen’t you to/Didn’t you use to be interested in drama? 你过去对戏剧感兴趣吗？

强调句：I certainly used to/did use to smoke, but it was a long time ago.

我以前常常吸烟，但那是很久以前的事情了。

Page No.1336

其反意疑问句或简略回答中，也有两种形式：

She used to be very fat, didn’t she?/use(d)n’t she?

她过去很胖，不是吗？
—Did you use to play chess?
你过去常玩象棋吗？
—Yes, I did.
是的。
—Used you to get up early in the morning?
从前，你经常早起吗？
—Yes, I did/used to.
是的。
Page No.1337
(2) had better 意为“最好……”，后接不带 to 的不定式。
—We had better go now. 我们最好现在就走。
—Yes, we’d better/we had better. 是的。
Hadn’t we better stop now? (Had we better not stop now?)
我们现在最好不要停吗?
I think I’d better be going. 我想我最好立即走。
(用于进行时态，表示“最好立即”)
You had better have done that. 你最好已经做了。
(用于完成时态，表示未完成动作)
注意：had better 用于同辈或小辈，对长辈不可以用。
(3) would rather 意为“宁愿”，表示选择，后接不带 to 的不定式。
I’d rather not say anything.
我宁愿什么也没说。
Page No.1338
Would you rather work on a farm?
你宁愿在农场工作吗？
—Wouldn’t you rather stay here?
你不愿意待在这里吗？
—No, I would not. I’d rather go there.
是的，我不愿意。我宁愿去那边。
由于 would rather 表示选择，因而其后可接 than。
I would rather work on a farm than in a factory.
我宁愿在农场工作也不愿意在工厂工作。
I would rather watch TV than go to see the film.
我宁愿看电视也不愿看电影。
I’d rather you didn’t talk about this to anyone.
我宁愿你没有告诉任何人这件事。
(句中的 would rather 不是情态动词，would 在此是表示愿望的实义动词)
Page No.1339
虚拟语气的常见考点：
一、非真实条件句
1. 虚拟语气可以表示过去，现在和将来的情况，时态的基本特点是时态往后推移。
2. 虚拟语气表

时间	从句	主句	例句
与现在事			

实相

反的
假设
一般过去时（ be 用 were）
would/shoud/could/might/ought to+动词原形 1.If they were here, they would help you.
2.If we had enough money, we would buy a computer.
3.If I were you, I wouldn't do it.
4.If it rained tomorrow, we'd stay at home.
5.It would be odd if she were awarded the first prize.

Page No.1340

时间 从句 主句 例句

与过
去事
实相
反的
假设
过去完成时
should/would/could/might+have+过去分词 1.If he had come yesterday, I should have told him about it.
2.If I had been in her position, I'd have quit.
3.If the weather hadn t been so bad, we might have gone out.
4.If he had apologized, you should have done so too.
对将来
不大可
能发生
的事情
的假想
一般过去时 should/
would/
could/
might/
ought to+动词原形1.If you succeeded, everything would be all right.
2.If they invited me, I would certainly attend it.
3.If he went, would you go too?
与将来
事实相
反的假
设
were+不定式 should/
would/
could/might/ought to+动词原形 1.If she were to lose her place, they would be ruined.
2.If you were to speak to him, it would carry more weight.

Page No.1341
二、混合条件句(错综时间条件句)
有时，主句与从句的动作发生在不同的时间，主句和从句谓语动词的虚拟语气形式因时间不同而不同，这 种

条件句叫作混合条件句。

三、含蓄条件句：是指非真实条件句中的条件从句有时不表示出来,只暗含在上下文中。含蓄条件句常见的　表达方式有:

1.定语从句和状语从句

Anyone who had married such a girl as she would have been regretful.　谁娶了像她这样的姑娘都会后悔的。

Help was promised where it should become necessary.

要是需要的话就答应给予帮助。

Page No.1342

2.介词及介词短语:but that, but for, without, with, under, under ...condition, supposing, suppose, on condition that, in the past 等。

Without your help, I couldn　t have achieved all this.

要不是有你帮助,我不会取得这些成就。

But for the fog we would have reached our destination long ago.　要是没有雾的话，我们很早就到目的地了。

Under more favourable conditions we could have finished the task.

如果条件对我们更有利，我们就会把工作完成得更好了。

Page No.1343

3.连词 otherwise, or, but

He would have given you more help, but he has been so busy.

他本来可以多给你一些帮助的，只是他太忙了。

Seize the chance, otherwise you would regret it.

如果不抓住这个机会，你会后悔的。

He felt very tired yesterday, or he would have helped you.

他昨天觉得太累了，不然他会帮你的。

Page No.1344

4.通过分词短语表示条件

Given more time, we could have done it better.

如果多给一点时间，我们会做得更好的。

Legalizing this drug would have disastrous consequence.

使毒品合法化会有灾难性的后果。

5.用动词不定式表示条件

It would be a mistake not to help him.

没有帮助他是个错误。

She would have done anything to make amends.

她会做任何事来弥补。

Page No.1345

四、虚拟语气在宾语从句中的运用

1.虚拟语气用在 would rather，would（just）as soon，would sooner，would prefer（希望）等后接的宾语从句中。

表示某人宁愿让另一个人做某事，其后的宾语从句的谓语动词需用虚拟语气。若表示现在或将来要做某事，　从句谓语动词需用一般过去时;表示过去已经做的事，从句谓语动词用过去完成时。

The manager would rather his daughter did not work in the same office.

经理宁愿她女儿不与他在同一间办公室工作。

Wouldn’t you rather your child went to bed early？

你不愿让你的孩子早点上床吗？

Page No.1346

【点拨】

①若某人宁愿自己做某事，would rather 后用动词原形。

I would rather stay at home today.

我今天宁愿待在家里。

I would rather stay at home than go out today.
我今天宁愿待在家里也不愿出去。
Page No.1347
2.在表示命令、建议、要求等动词后面的从句中，像 order, suggest, propose, require, demand, request, insist, command, insist+（should） do 。
I suggest that we （should） hold a meeting next week.
我建议下周召开个会议。
He insisted that he （should ） be sent there.
他要求被派到那儿去。
【点拨】
如果 suggest, insist 不表示“建议” 或“坚持要某人做某事”时，即它们用于其本意“暗示，表明”、“坚持认为”时，宾语从句用陈述语气。
（错） Your pale face suggests that you （should）be ill.
（对） Your pale face suggests that you are ill.
（错） I insisted that you （should）be wrong.
（对） I insisted that you were wrong.
Page No.1348
3. wish 的用法
(1)wish 后面的从句，表示与事实相反的情况，或表示将来不太可能实现的愿望时，其宾语从句的动词形式为：
情况 主句 从句
从句动作先于主句动词动作 现在时 过去时
从句动作与主句动作同时发生 过去时/现在时 过去完成时

将来不大可能实现的愿望
将来时/现在时 Would
/could +动词原形

Page No.1349
wish you wouldn’t leave your clothes all over the floor.
我真希望你不把衣服丢得满地都是。
I wish that he had not made so much fuss about it.
但愿那时他对这件事不那么大惊小怪的。
I wish that the rain would stop.
要是雨停就好了。
(2）在“it is wished that”句型以及作名词所引起的表语和同位语从句中也要求使用虚拟语气，用法同上。
(3)wish to do；wish sb./sth. to do
I wish to see the manager. = I want to see the manager.
我希望见一见经理。
I wish the manager to be informed at once.
=I want the manager to be informed at once.
我希望经理能马上得到消息。
Page No.1350
五、虚拟语气在表语从句或同位语从句中的运用
当某些表示建议、请求、命令等主观意向的名词作主语时，其后的表语从句或同位语从句需用虚拟语气，其表达形式为:should＋动词原形或直接用动词原形。这类名词常见的有：advice，suggestion，proposal，order，demand，desire，request，requirement，recommendation, aim, wish, necessity, preference, motion, plan，idea，resolution。

We are all for your proposal that the discussion be put off.
我们都赞成你提出的将讨论延期的建议。
The suggestion that the mayor present the prizes was accepted by everyone.
由市长颁奖的建议被每个人所接受。
Page No.1351
六、虚拟语气在其他状语从句中的使用
1. 虚拟语气用在目的状语从句中
在由 lest, for fear that, in order that, so that, in case 等引导的目的状语从句中需用虚拟语气，表示“以防，以免”等意思，其谓语动词多由“should/could/might+动词原形”构成，should 也可以省略。
He was punished lest he should make the same mistake again.
他被处以惩罚以免他再犯同样的错误。
I will not make a noise for fear that I should disturb him.
我不会出声的，以免打扰他。
He put his coat over his son in case he should catch cold.
他把大衣盖在儿子身上以免他着凉。
注意：如果 in order that 和 so that 前的主句是现在时，其后的从句有时也可用“can/may+动词原形”。
Page No.1352
Ask him to hurry up with the letters so that I can sign them.
让他带着信赶快来以便我签字。
在以 lest 和 in case 引导的目的状语从句中谓语动词若属于过去时，一般要用虚拟语气，由“should+动词原形”构成；若谓语动词不是过去时，也可以用陈述语气。
Take warm clothes in case the weather is cold.
带上厚衣服以防天气变冷。
Page No.1353
2.虚拟语气用在方式状语从句中
在 as if （as though）引导的方式状语从句中，常用虚拟语气，表示“似乎，好像”的意思，其动词形式与 wish 后接宾语从句中的形式相同。
He talks about pyramids as though he had seen them himself.
他谈起金字塔来，就好像亲眼见到过似的。
I feel as if we had known each other for years.
我感觉我们好像已经认识好多年了。
It looks as if it might rain.
看上去好像要下雨了。
Page No.1354
七、虚拟语气的倒装形式
在书面语中，如果条件从句含有 were, had, should，可将连词 if 省略，再将 were, had 或 should 移至句首，构成非真实条件句的倒装语序。
Were they here now, they could help us.
=If they were here now, they could help us.
如果他们现在在这里的话，就会帮助我们了。
Had you come earlier, you would have met him.
=If you had come earlier, you would have met him.
你来得早一点，就会碰到他了。
Should it rain, the crops would be saved.
=Were it to rain, the crops would be saved.
假如下雨，庄稼就有救了。
Page No.1355

八、其他句型

1.虚拟语气用在“It is＋形容词＋that”的主语从句中

在某些表示愿望、建议、请求、命令等形容词后的主语从句中，需用虚拟语气。其表达形式为:“should ＋ 动词原形”或省略 should 直接用动词原形。这类形容词有:advisable（明智的），appropriate（适当的），compulsory（必须的），crucial（紧急的），desirable（理想的），essential（必要的），imperative（迫切的），important 重要的），incredible（惊人的），natural（自然的），necessary（必要的），possible（可能的），preferable（更好的）， probable（可能的），strange（奇怪的），urgent（紧迫的）， vital（极为重要的）。

It is essential that these application forms be sent back as early as possible.

这些申请表应尽早地寄回，这是很重要的。

It is vital that enough money be collected to fund the project.

重要的是募集足够的钱，为这个项目提供资金。

Page No.1356

2. 虚拟语气用在“It is＋过去分词＋that”的主语从句中

在“It is＋过去分词＋that”的主语从句中，常用虚拟语气，表示愿望、建议、请求等主观意向，谓语用 should ＋动词原形或省略 should 只用动词原形。这类过去分词有：decided，demanded，desired，insisted，ordered，proposed，suggested，recommended，requested， required 等。

It is desired that we（should）get everything ready this evening.

希望我们今晚一切都准备就绪。

3.虚拟语气用在“It is （about/high） time ＋that”定语从中

在“It is （about/high）time ＋that”定语从句中需用虚拟语气，表示“该做……的时候了”，其动词形式用一般过去时或 should ＋动词原形。

It’s already 5 o’clock now. Don’t you think it’s about time we went home?

已经 5 点钟了，你不认为我们应该回家了吗？

Page No.1357

【点拨】

①在 this is the first time/second time that ...句型中，从句中谓语动词用陈述语气的完成时态。

Is this the first time that you have visited Hongkong?

这是你第一次参观香港吗？

②It’s time to do something 后跟动词不定式；It’s time that 后接从句。

It’s time that we should do the homework.

到时间我们应该写作业了。

It’s time for us to do the homework.

到我们写作业的时间了。

Page No.1358

4.比较 if only 与 only if

only if 表示“只有”；if only 则表示“如果……就好了”。If only 引导的句子，用一般过去时或 would+动词原形表示与现在或未来事实相反；用过去完成时表示与过去事实相反，也可用于陈述语气。

I wake up only if the alarm clock rings.

只有闹钟响了，我才会醒。

If only I had listened to my parents.

要是我听取了父母的话该多好啊。

Page No.1359

5. but 或 but that 表达的含蓄条件的特殊含义。

but 或 but that 表示“如果不……”，意思相当于“if not”，其后面不可以接虚拟模式，应接陈述式的现在时动词或过去时动词，即“but that+主语+现在时动词/过去时动词”，而主句要用虚拟语气。

But that you help him, he would fail.

如果没有你的帮助，他会失败的。

But that you helped him, he would have failed.

如果没有你的帮助，他早就失败了。

Page No.1360

6. didn’t need to do 与 needn’t have done

Didn’t need to do 表示过去不必做某事, 事实上也没做；needn’t have done 表示过去不必做某事, 但事实上做了。

John went to the station with the car to meet Mary, so she didn’t need to walk back home.

约翰开车去车站接玛丽，所以她不必步行回家了。

John went to the station with the car to meet Mary, so she needn’t have walked back home.

约翰开车去车站接玛丽，所以她本不必步行回家的。 （Mary 步行回家了，没有遇上 John 的车）

Page No.1361

7.不定式的完成时用在 intend, mean, plan, suppose 等动词后，表示原打算做而实际未能做成的事，因而含有虚拟的意思。

8. need/needn’t+have done 结构也可以表示虚拟语气，意为“本来有/没有必要做某事”。

9.as it were 常插在句子中，表示“姑且这样说，可以说是”这类的意思。

He is a grown up baby, as it were.

他可以说是一个大孩子了。

He became, as it were, a kind of hero from a strange land.

他仿佛成了一个来自异乡的英雄。

10. would think 本身就是虚拟语气，表示“会认为，想到”。

Anyone would think you were in love with the girl.

谁都会认为你是爱上这个姑娘了。

Anyone would think he owns the place, the way he talks.

听他这样谈话谁都会认为他是这里的老板。

Page No.1362

11. would have thought 本身也是虚拟语气，表示“谁会想到;原本会以为”。

Who would have thought to see you here.

谁会想到在这里碰到你。

Who would have thought she d end up dancing for a living.

谁会想到她最后落得靠跳舞谋生。

12. who/what should ...but ...表示“原来是……”。

Who should come in but his first wife.

进来的原来是他的第一任妻子。

When I got off the boat whom should I see but Rory.

我下船的时候见到的一个人，原来是罗里。

What should I find but an enormous spider.

我看到的原来是一只特大的蜘蛛。

Page No.1363

13. would rather/sooner+不定式

I would rather/sooner be a miner than a bank clerk.

我宁愿当矿工，也不愿当银行职员。

If I’d lived in 1400, I’d rather have been a knight than a monk.

如果我活在 1400 年，我宁愿当骑士而不当和尚。

14. if need be 表示“如果有必要”。

If need be, help him to do it.

如果有必要，帮他去做。

I’ll work at night if need be.

如果有必要我可以晚上工作。

Page No.1364

15. 虚拟语气用于表示祝愿的祈使句中，动词一般要使用原形，同时要注意的是句子的主谓要倒装。

Long live the People's Republic of China!
中华人民共和国万岁！
May you have a merry Christmas!
祝你圣诞快乐！
God bless you!
愿上帝保佑你！
16. 在表示客气、遗憾以及祝愿等场合中，使用虚拟语气。
You shouldn't have been following him so closely； you should have kept your distance.
你不应该一直这样紧紧地跟着他，而应该和他保持一定的距离。
Page No.1365
例 1:—Hi,Tom.Any idea where Jane is?
—She in the classroom.I saw her there just now. (2009・重庆)
A.shall be B.should have been
C.must be D.might have been
解析:选 C。考查情态动词表推测的用法。句意为：——你好，汤姆。知道简在哪里吗？——她一定在教室里，我刚才看见她在那里。B 项和 D 项表示对过去事情的推测，shall be 则表示将来。故选 C。
例 2:What do you mean,there are only ten tickets?
There be twelve.(2009・宁夏、海南)
A.should B.would
C.will D.shall
解析:选 A。考查情态动词的用法。句意为：你这是什么意思，只有十张票？应该有十二张啊。根据句意，应该选 A 项。
Page No.1366
例 3:The traffic is heavy these days. I arrive a bit late,so could you save me a place?（2009・辽宁）
A.can B.must C.need D.might
解析:选 D。考查情态动词的用法。句意为：这几天交通很拥挤，我可能晚到一会儿，因此给我留个位子好吗？四个选项中，只有 might 表示"可能"，故选 D。
例 4:Some people who don t like to talk much are not necessarily shy;they just be quiet people.(2009・安徽）
A.must B.may C.should D.would
解析:选 B。考查情态动词表示推测的用法。句意为：一些不喜欢多说话的人不一定是害羞，他们可能只是安静的人。根据句意，答案选 B。
Page No.1367
例 5:One of the few things you say about English people with certainty is that they talk a lot about the weather.(2009・北京)
A.need B.must C.should D.can
解析:选 D。考查情态动词的用法。句意为：对于英国人，你能确定的几件事情之一就是他们经常谈论天气。need 需要;must 必须;should 应该;can 能够。故选 D。
例 6:It have been Tom that parked the car here,as he is the only one with a car. (2009・上海)
A.may B.can C.must D.should
解析:选 C。考查情态动词表示推测的用法。由"as he is the only one with a car"可知前面应推测一定是汤姆把车停在这儿的。must 用于肯定句，表示语气肯定的推测，故选 C。
Page No.1368
例 7:But for their help,we the program in time. (2009・安徽）
A.can not finish B.will not finish
C.had not finished D.could not have finished
解析:选 D。考查虚拟语气的用法。but for 表示"要不是……"，此处 But for their help 是一个隐含的虚拟条

件句，说明过去情况的虚拟语气应用“情态动词+have done”。句意为：要不是他们帮忙，我们就不能及时

完成这个项目了。故选 D。

例 8:But for the help of my English teacher, I the first prize in the English Writing Composition. (2009・福建)

A.would not win B.would not have won

C.would win D. would have won

解析:选 B。考查虚拟语气的用法。but for 表示“要不是……”,表明了一个隐含条件的虚拟语气。“获奖”的事情发生在过去的比赛当中，所以与过去情况相反的虚拟语气的主句部分用 would/could /should+have done,故选 B。

Page No.1369

例 9:The doctor recommended that you swim after eating a large meal.(2009・浙江）

A.wouldn’t B.couldn’t

C.needn’t D.shouldn’t

解析:选 D。考查虚拟语气的用法。句意为：医生建议你吃过饱饭后不要游泳。recommend 作“建议”讲时，后面的宾语从句用虚拟语气，谓语动词为“should (not)+动词原形”。

例 10:He did not regret saying what he did but felt that he it differently. (2009・江苏)

A. could express B. would express

C. could have expressed D. must have expressed

解析:选 C。考查虚拟语气的用法。根据语境可知，后半句表示对过去某种情况的推测，所以首先排除 A 和 B 两个选项。另外选项 C 表示“本能够做某事而没有做”；选项 D 则表示“过去一定做过某事”。根据语境，故选 C。

Page No.1370

非谓语动词也称作非限定动词，即:不在句中单独作谓语的动词形式，分为：不定式，动名词和分词。下面就其用法作简要总结。

1. 动名词和分词作定语

动名词作定语时并不强调主动或者被动关系，而是说明其所修饰的词的性质或用途；而分词分为现在分词和过去分词，现在分词作定语时与所修饰的名词构成逻辑上的主动关系，强调动作的正在进行性；而过去分词作定语时与所修饰的名词为被动关系，所表达的含义有两种情况:①仅仅表示被动，②表示被动的同时，该动作也已完成。比较：

Page No.1371

This was once a hiding place for people there at war.这里在战时曾是那里的人们的一个藏身之所。(hiding 作定语，表示用途)

Look at the sleeping baby! How wonderful!看那个熟睡的婴儿，多好啊！（sleeping 作定语，表示动作的进行性）

It is said that cars made in this factory are now at least as good as those made abroad.

据说这个工厂制造的汽车现在至少和国外制造的汽车一样好了。(两个 made 仅表示动作的被动性)

There still remain a lot of problems in the homework done by him yesterday.

他昨天做的作业里面仍然有很多问题。(done 表示被动和完成)

Page No.1372

2. 现在分词和过去分词作表语

同一动词的现在分词和过去分词作表语时的区别：过去分词作表语，主要表示主语（多指人，也可指物） 的心理感受或所处的状态，含有被动的意思；而现在分词作表语多表示主语（多指物，也可指人）所具有的特征，含有主动的意思。

The story was very moving and we were greatly moved.

这个故事很感人，我们都被深深地感动了。

The disappointing boy disappointed his father for his failure again in the exam.

这个令人失望的男孩再次考试不及格，让他爸爸很失望。

Page No.1373

3. 分词和不定式作宾语补足语

(1) 表示动作的现在分词作宾语补足语表示正在发生或进行的动作，常用在表示感觉和心理状态的动词后。 常见的感官动词和使役动词有：

感官动词：see, hear, find, watch, notice, observe, smell, look, listen 等。

使役动词：have, set, keep, get, catch, leave, send 等。

I heard her singing an English song when I passed by her room yesterday.

昨天我经过她的房间的时候听见她正在唱一首英文歌。

I found the girl playing the piano when I came in.

我进来的时候发现这个小女孩正在弹钢琴。

(2) 过去分词作宾语补足语表示动作已经完成或被动，宾语和宾语补足语之间是动宾关系。

He got the room cleaned.

他把房间打扫干净了。

I can t make myself understood.

我无法让别人理解我。

Page No.1374

(3)动词不定式作宾语补足语说明宾语的行为、状态或特征，宾语和不定式之间在逻辑上是主谓关系。常见 的可以跟不定式作宾语补足语的动词有：

① 感官动词 see, hear, find, watch, notice, observe, smell 等和使役动词 have, let, make 等，其后跟不带 to 的不定式作宾语补足语。

注意：当这些词用于被动结构时，则要加上不定式符号 to。

He was often heard to sing foreign songs.

人们常听他唱外国歌曲。

Page No.1375

② advise, allow, ask, forbid, force, persuade, request，cause, beg, drive, encourage, expect, get, intend, invite, permit, remind, teach, tell, trust, urge, warn, want 等后跟带 to 的动词不定式作宾语补足语。

The school doesn't allow the students to use the mobile phone in class.

这所学校不许学生课上使用手机。

Though he often made his sister cry, today he was made to cry by his sister.

虽然他经常把妹妹弄哭，但今天他却被妹妹弄哭了。

Page No.1376

4. 动名词和不定式作宾语

(1) 下列动词或动词短语只能用动名词作宾语。常见的动词：consider, suggest, advise, excuse, pardon, admit, delay, fancy, practice, escape, appreciate 等。常见的动词短语: look forward to, give up, can't help, insist on, devote to, lead to, stick to, be fond of, feel like, be used to, succeed in, pay attention to, put off, can't stand 等。

You can't delay sending the medicine.

你不可以延误送药的时间。

(2) 下列动词只能跟不定式作宾语。常见的动词：decide, determine, learn, want, expect, hope, wish, refuse, manage, care, pretend, offer, promise, choose, plan, agree, ask, beg 等。

She pretended not to see me when I passed by.

当我经过时，她假装没看见我。

Page No.1377

(3)下列动词既可以跟动名词也可以跟不定式作宾语，注意其在意义上的区别。

①forget doing sth. 忘记已经做过某事

to do sth. 忘记去做某事

②remember doing sth. 记得做过某事

to do sth. 记住去做某事

③regret doing sth. 遗憾做过某事

to do sth. 遗憾地要做某事

④stop　　doing sth. 停止做某

to do sth. 停下来去做另一件事

⑤try doing sth. 试着做某事

to do sth. 努力做某事

Page No.1378

⑥mean doing sth. 意味着做某事

to do sth. 打算做某事

⑦go on doing sth. 继续不停地做某事（指同一动作 的继续）

to do sth. 完成一件事后接着做另一件事

⑧can’t help doing sth. 情不自禁地做某事

to do sth. 不能帮助做某事

⑨be used to doing sth. 习惯于做某事

do sth. 被用来做某事

used to do sth. 过去常做某事

Page No.1379

She didn’t remember meeting him somewhere before.

她不记得以前在哪里见过他。

This dictionary can’t help to learn the language.

这本辞典不能帮助学习语言。

My grandpa isn’t used to living in the city.

我爷爷不习惯住在这个城市。

I used to smoke a lot, but I have given up.

我过去吸烟很厉害，但现在戒了。

Bamboo can be used to build houses in the south of China.

竹子在中国的南方可用来建房子。

Page No.1380

例 1:We are invited to a party in our club next Friday. (2009 ·山东)

A. to be held B. held

C. being held D. holding

解析：选 A。考查非谓语动词的用法。由 next Friday 可知,时间是在将来，party 是将被举行的，故选 A。

例 2: not to miss the flight at 15:20, the manager set out for the airport in a hurry. (2009 ·福建)

A. Reminding B. Reminded

C. To remind D. Having reminded

解析：选 B。考查非谓语动词的用法。非谓语动词作状语，逻辑主语是句子的主语 the manager，非谓语动词与句子主语之间是被动关系，且其表示的动作在谓语动词 set out 之前已经发生，非谓语动词用过去分词， 故选 B。

Page No.1381

例 3:With the world changing fast, we have something new with all by ourselves every day.（2009 ·重庆）

A. Deal B. dealt C. to deal D. dealing

解析：选 C。句意为：因为世界在飞速地发生着变化，所以我们每一天都有许多新的事情要处理。此处考查句型结构 have something new to do,不定式作定语修饰 something,故选 C。

例 4:Please remain ；the winner of the prize will be announced soon.(2008·辽宁)

A.seating B.seated C.to seat D.to be seated

解析：选 B。句意为：请坐好，获胜者的名字马上就要宣布。seated 是分词形式的形容词，表示状态。remain 是系动词，seated 作表语。

Page No.1382

例 5:Susan wanted to be independent of her parents.She tried alone，but she didn’t like it and moved

back home.(2008・湖南)

A.Living B to live

C.to be living D.having lived

解析：选 A。句意为：苏珊不想依赖父母。她尝试一个人生活，但并不喜欢，于是又搬回了家。try 后可以接不定式，表示“努力做……”；也可以接动名词，表示“尝试做……”，根据句意应该用动名词。例

6:I hear they’ve promoted Tom，but he didn’t mention when we talked on the phone.(2008・江西)

A to promote B. having been promoted

C.having promoted D. to be promoted

解析：选 B。句意为：我听说他们已经提拔了汤姆，但我们打电话时他却没有谈及被提拔的事。mention 为及物动词，后接动名词作宾语，“被提拔”是已经发生的动作，且为被动语态，故选 B。

Page No.1383

例 7:We had an anxious couple of weeks for the results of the experiment.（2008・四川非延考区）

A. Wait B. to be waiting

C. Waited D. waiting

解析：选 D。句意为：我们度过了焦急的几周，等待着实验结果。have a/an good/hard/anxious time (in) doing sth.为固定用法，此句的 time 换成了 couple of weeks。此处用现在分词 waiting 作伴随状语，故选 D。

例 8:Due to the heavy rain and flooding, ten million people have been forced their homes.（2008・上海）

A. leaving B. to leave C. to be left D. being left

解析：选 B。考查动词 force 的用法。force sb. to do sth.迫使某人做某事。句子使用了被动语态，leave 和主语 people 之间是主动关系，故选择不定式的主动形式。

Page No.1384

例 9:—Robert is indeed a wise man.

—Oh，yes.How often I have regretted his advice! (2007・安徽)

A.to take B.taking C.not to take D.not taking

解析：选 D。regret not doing sth.表示“为未做某事而后悔”，表示否定，故选 D。

例 10:As the light turned green，I stood for a moment，not ，and asked myself what I was going to do.(2007・湖南)

A.moved B.moving

C.to move D.being moved

解析：选 B。空白处在句中作伴随状语，主语与 move 是逻辑上的主谓关系，所以应用现在分词的主动形式。

Page No.1385

一、句子成分

组成句子的各个部分叫句子成分。英语中句子成分有主语，谓语，表语，宾语，宾语补足语，定语， 状语等。 在句子中的顺序一般是主语，谓语，宾语，宾语补足语，而表语，定语，状语的位置要根据情况而定。

Page No.1386

1.主语

主语是句子主要说明的人或事物，一般由名词，代词，数词，不定式等充当。

Tom is good at playing football.

汤姆擅长踢足球。

2.谓语

谓语主要说明主语的动作，状态或特征。由动词(或短语动词)构成，可以有不同的时态，语态和语气。

We are studying English now.

我们现在正在学英语。

Page No.1387

3.表语

表语是谓语的一部分，它位于系动词 be 之后，说明主语的身份，特征，属性或状态。一般由名词，代词，

形容词，副词，不定式，介词短语等充当。

We are Chinese.

我们是中国人。

4.宾语

宾语表示动作或行为的对象，跟在及物动词之后。能作宾语的有:名词，代词，数词，动词不定式等。另外，有些及物动词可以带两个宾语，往往一个指人，一个指物，指人的叫间接宾语，指物的叫直接宾语。

He gave me a book.

他给我一本书。

有些及物动词的宾语后面还需要有一个补足语，意思才完整，宾语和它的补足语构成复合宾语。

We elected him monitor.

我们选他做班长。Page

No.1388

5.定语

在句中修饰名词或代词的成分叫定语。用作定语的主要是形容词，代词，数词，名词，副词，动词不定式，介词短语等。形容词，代词，数词，名词等作定语时，通常放在被修饰词的前面。

He is a new student.

他是个新生。

但副词，动词不定式，介词短语等作定语时，则通常放在被修饰词之后。

The bike in the room is mine.

房间里的自行车是我的。

6.状语

修饰动词，形容词，副词以及全句的句子成分，叫做状语。用作状语的通常是副词，介词短语，不定式和从句等。状语一般放在被修饰的词之后或放在句尾。副词作状语时可放在被修饰的词前或句首。

We will have the meeting in the big hall.

我们将在那个大厅里开会。

Page No.1389

7. 同位语

用于说明前面某一个名词或代词的内容的成分就叫同位语。通常由名词、名词词组、反身代词、同位语从　句充当。

Tom, monitor of our class, is always doing well in the exam.

汤姆，我们班的班长，考试总是考得很好。

Page No.1390

二、句子种类

从句子的结构来讲，句子分为简单句，并列句和复合句三类。

（一） 简单句

由一个主语（或者并列主语）和一个谓语（或者并列谓语）所构成的句子叫简单句。简单句分为陈述句、　疑问句、祈使句、感叹句四种。

1. 陈述句

凡是说明一件事情,指出看法，或者表达一种心情的句子是陈述句。陈述句分为肯定句和否定句。尤其注意由否定词构成的否定句;两者全部否定用neither 或 nor；两者的部分否定用not+both；三者以上的否定用none, nothing, nobody, no one 等。

Page No.1391

Neither John nor Mary is here.

约翰和玛丽都不在这里。

Nobody agrees with what you said.

没有人同意你所说的话。

同时还要注意否定转移的情况，这类动词主要有 think, believe, suppose, feel, expect 等，但是 hope 不发生否

定转移。

I don’t think he has time to play with me.
我想他没有时间和我玩。
I hope you weren’t ill.
我想你没生病吧。
Page No.1392
2. 疑问句
疑问句用以提出问题，按结构分为四类：一般疑问句，特殊疑问句，反义疑问句和选择疑问句。
(1) 一般疑问句：对某一情况是否属实提出疑问，一般用 yes 或 no 来回答，有两种形式：
be/have+主语+其他？
助动词（情态动词）+主语+行为动词+其他？
Page No.1393
(2) 特殊疑问句：用疑问词（what, who, how, why, when, where ...）提问，一般有两种结构:疑问词+一般疑问句型结构。
What are you doing?
你正在做什么？
疑问词作主语或主语的定语时用陈述语序。
What is your name?
你叫什么名字。
(3) 反意疑问句：表示提问者有一定的主观看法，但没有把握，希望对方来证实;有四种形式：前肯定后否 定、前否定后肯定、前后都肯定、前后都否定，较为常用的有两种：前肯定后否定、前否定后肯定。 Page No.1394
注意：
①反意疑问句的回答应该以事实为依据，而不能依照中文的习惯回答。
—He isn’t a student, is he?
他不是一名学生，是吗？
—No. He isn’t.(是啊，他不是学生。)
/Yes. He is.（不，他是个学生。）
②注意反意疑问句否定提前时的情况。
I don t think he is honest, is he?
我认为他不诚实，是吗？
③一般来说句子里包含表示否定的副词，反意疑问部分选用肯定式; 如果包含的是表示否定的动词则不遵循此规则。
He has never been to the US, has he?
他从来没到过美国，是吗？
He dislikes such a man, doesn’t he?
他不喜欢像这样的人，是不是？
Page No.1395
④在并列句中，反意疑问句部分要和第二个分句保持一致。
She isn’t a diligent student, for it is the third time that she has been late for school, isn’t it?
她不是一个勤奋的学生，因为这是她第三次迟到了，是不是？
⑤反意疑问句的构成形式为：主语+表示想法的状态动词+宾语从句，如果主句主语为第一人称，反意疑问 的为宾语从句的主语；如果主句的主语为二、三人称，那么反意疑问的为主句的主语。
I don’t think he is lazy, is he?
我认为他不懒惰，是吗？
Page No.1396
You all know that he is honest, don’t you?
你们都知道他诚实，是不是？

注意：英语口语中常用句型:（主语）祈使句 ...等+will you?往往表示一种建议、命令、恳求等，与反意疑

问句有点相似。

You clean the floor today, will you?

今天你擦地，好吗？

Those boys over there please come here, will you?

那边的那些男孩来这里，好吗？

（4） 选择疑问句：形式上与一般疑问句相似，但里面包含两个答案，用“or”连接，不能简单地用 yes/no 回答。

Are you from Scotland or England?

你是来自苏格兰还是英格兰？

Page No.1397

3. 祈使句

祈使句表示请求、命令、叮嘱、号召等，谓语动词用原形。当说话对象是第二人称时，一般省略主语，但 如果要特别强调对方或表达某种情绪时可以有主语或加称呼语。若说话对象是第一人称或第三人称时，常 用“Let+宾语+动词原形”。

Don’t be careless!

别粗心大意！

You be quiet!

你给我安静点！

Let’s go now, shall we?

让我们现在走吧，好吗？

Let us go now, will you?

我们现在走吧，怎么样？

Page No.1398

4. 感叹句

感叹句表示喜怒哀乐等情绪，句末用“！”；多用 what 或 how 引起：what 用来修饰名词；how 用来修饰形容词、副词或动词。

What a beautiful park it is!

那是一个多么美丽的公园呀！

How beautiful the park is!

那个公园多美呀！

Page No.1399

（二）并列句

包含有两个或更多互不依从的主谓结构的句子，就是并列句。并列句的分句通常由一个并列连词来连接。常见的并列连词有 and, but, though, however, while, or, for, so, therefore, not only ...but also ..., either ...or ...等。

It is raining outside, so we will stay at home.

外面正在下雨，因此我们待在家里。

He couldn’t go to school, for he was poor.

他不能去上学，因为他很穷。

Jane was dressed in brown while Mary was dressed in blue.

珍妮穿着棕色的衣服，而玛丽穿的衣服是蓝色的。

Page No.1400

（三）复合句

如果一个句子包含两个或者更多的主谓结构，其中一个（或更多）主谓结构充当句子的某一（些）成分， 就是复合句。充当句子成分的主谓结构称为从句，从句只能是句子的一个成分，不能独立，常由从属连词引出，总是用陈述语序。根据从句在句子中的作用，可分为名词性从句，形容词性从句（定语从句）和副词性从句（状语从句）三类。

Whether she will come or not is still a question.

她是否会来仍是个问题。

Page No.1401

The question is who can complete the difficult task.

问题是谁能完成这个困难的工作。

Do you know who (whom) they are waiting for?

你知道他们在等谁吗？

The doctor whom you are looking for is in the room.

你正在找的那个医生在房间里。

When he was eating his breakfast, he heard the doorbell ring.

当他正在吃早饭时，听到门铃响了。

Page No.1402

例 1:He must be helping the old man to water the flowers, ?(2009・陕西）

A. is he B. isn t he C. must he D. mustn’t he

解析:选 B。must 表示推测时，反意疑问句的助动词与 must 后面的动词相呼应，但有时间状语时，反意疑问句的助动词应根据时间状语来确定。

例 2:Please do me a favour- my friend Mr. Smith to Youth Theater at 7:30 tonight.(2009・湖南)

A. to invite B. inviting

C. Invite D. invited

解析:选 C。句中破折号表示解释说明，空格处表示的语气应为祈使意义，所以用动词原形。

Page No.1403

例 3:You and I could hardly work together, ?（2009・湖南）

A. could you B. couldn’t I

C. couldn’t we D. could we

解析:选 D。根据主语 you and I 可以判断，反意疑问部分主语应为第一人称复数，又因为题干中出现了否定副词 hardly，所以反意疑问部分用肯定形式。

例 4:It’s the first time that he has been to Australia, ?（2009・辽宁）

A. isn’t he B. hasn’t he C. isn’t it D. Hasn’t it

解析:选 C。该句主语和谓语动词分别是 it 和 is，所以反意疑问部分用 isn’t it。

Page No.1404

例 5:—I wonder you’ll water this kind of flower.

—Every other day.（2009・四川）

A. how often B. how long

C. how soon D. how much

解析:选 A。根据下一句的回答可知,此处问的是频率，故应用 how often 提问。

例 6:At first he hated the new job but decided to give himself a few months to see it got any better.（2009・北京）

A. when B. how C. why D. if

解析:选 D。if 在此引导宾语从句，意为“是否”。

Page No.1405

例 7:Stand over there you’ll be able to see the oil painting better.(2008・全国Ⅱ)

A. but B. till C. and D. or

解析:选 C。分析句子结构可知，此句为“祈使句+and+陈述句”结构。

例 8:You didn’t use to like him much when we were at school, ?(2008・上海春)

A. were we B. weren’t we

C. did you D. didn’t you

解析:选 C。句中的主语和谓语动词分别是 you 和 didn t use to，所以反意疑问部分应为 did you。

Page No.1406

例 9:In some places women are expected to earn money men work at home and raise their

children.(2008·四川)

A. but B. while C. because D. though

解析:选 B。由并列连词 while 连接两个简单句，表示对比。

例 10: the website of the Fire Department in your city, and you will learn a lot about Firefighting.(2008・湖南)

A. Having searched B. To search

C. Searching D. Search

解析:选 D。分析句子结构可知，此句为“祈使句+and+陈述句”结构。

Page No.1407

在句子中起名词作用的从句叫名词性从句 (Noun Clauses)。名词性从句的功能相当于名词词组, 它在复合句中能担任主语、宾语、表语、同位语等，因此根据它在句中不同的语法功能，名词性从句可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。其关联词有连接词 that，if，whether；连接代词 who，whom，whose， what，which，whoever，whomever，whatever，whichever；连接副词 when，where，why，how 等。

名词性从句

Page No.1408

一、主语从句

作句子主语的从句叫主语从句。that 在句中无具体词义，只起连接作用；连接代词和连接副词在句中既保留自己的疑问含义，又起连接作用，在从句中充当从句的成分。

What he wants to tell us is not clear.

他要跟我们说什么，还不清楚。

Where the English evening will be held has not yet been announced.

英语晚会将在哪里举行，还没有宣布。

Whoever breaks the law should be punished.

任何违法的人都要受到惩罚。

Page No.1409

有时为避免句子头重脚轻，常用 it 代替主语从句作形式主语置于句首，而把主语从句置于句末。常用句型如下：

(1) It+be+名词+that 从句

(2) It+be+形容词+that 从句

(3) It+be+动词的过去分词+that 从句

(4) It+不及物动词+that 从句

It is a pity that he can t come to my birthday party.

很遗憾，他不能来参加我的生日晚会。

It is quite clear that the whole project is doomed to failure.

很清楚，整个计划注定要失败。

It is known to us how he became a writer.

我们都知道他是如何成为一名作家的。

It happened that I didn t take any money with me.

碰巧我身上没带钱。

Page No.1410

二、宾语从句

用作宾语的从句叫宾语从句，在句中可以作及物动词或介词的宾语。由连接词 that 引导宾语从句时，that 在句中不担任任何成分，在口语或非正式的文体中常被省去，但若从句是并列句时，第二个及后面分句前的 that 不可以省略。宾语从句要使用陈述语序。

The report shows (that) we are making some progress but that we need to make grater efforts.

这份报告表明我们正在取得一些进步，但还需要作出更大的努力。

I want to know what he has told you.

我想知道他告诉了你什么。

She always thinks of how she can work well.

她总是在想怎样能把工作做好。

She will give whoever needs help a warm support.

凡是需要帮助的人，她都会给予热情的支持。

注意：如果宾语从句后还有宾语补足语，则要用 it 作形式宾语，而将宾语从句后置。

He has made it clear that he will not give in.

他清楚地表明他不会屈服。

Page No.1411

三、表语从句

在句中作表语的从句叫表语从句，表语从句位于连系动词之后。

The fact is that we have lost the game.

事实是我们已经输了这场比赛。

That's just what I want.

这正是我想要的。

This is where our problem lies.

这就是我们的问题所在。

It looks as if it is going to rain.

看上去要下雨了。

需要注意的是，当主语是 reason 时，表语从句要用 that 引导而不是 because。

The reason why he was late was that he got caught in a traffic jam on the way.

他迟到的原因是在路上遇到了交通堵塞。

Page No.1412

四、同位语从句

同位语从句跟在一个名词之后，对该名词的具体内容作进一步解释说明。后跟同位语从句的常见名词有 :advice, demand, doubt, fact, hope, idea, information, message, news, order, problem, promise, question, request, suggestion, truth, wish, word 等。

The news that we won the game is exciting.

我们赢得这场比赛的消息令人激动。

I have no idea when he will come back home.

我不知道他什么时候回来。

The thought came to him that Mary had probably fallen ill.

他想到玛丽可能生病了。

Page No.1413

五、注意以下几个问题:

1. whether 与 if

都可当“是否”讲时,在下列情况下一般用 whether，不用 if：

1) 引导主语从句并在句首时；

2) 引导表语从句时；

3) 引导从句作介词宾语时；

4) 从句后有“or not”时；

5) 引导同位语从句时；

6) 后接动词不定式时。

Whether there is life on the moon is an interesting question.

月球上有没有生命是个有趣的问题。

The question is whether she will accept our offer.

问题是她是否会接受我们的提议。

Everything depends on whether we have enough money.

一切要看我们是否有足够的钱。

I can t decide whether to stay.

我不能决定是否留下。

Page No.1414

2. that 引导同位语从句和引导定语从句的区别

that 引导定语从句时，充当句子成分，具有双重作用，在从句中作宾语时可以省略； that 引导同位语从句时，只起连接作用，没有词汇意义，不充当句子成分，一般不能省略。

试比较下面两个例句:

I had no idea that you were here.(that 引导同位语从句，不能省略)

我不知道你在这里。

Have you got the idea（that）this book gives you of life in ancient Greece？(that 引导定语从句，作宾语，可以省略)

你通过这本书对古希腊人的生活了解了吗？

Page No.1415

例 1:We should consider the students' request the school library provide more books on popular science.(2009?重庆）

A. that B. when C. which D. where

解析：选 A。that 引导的从句作 request 的同位语，起解释说明的作用。

例 2:Many young people in the West are expected to leave could be life ' s most important decision-marriage-almost entirely up to luck.(2009?江苏）

A. As B. that C. which D. what

解析：选 D。只有 what 能引导宾语从句，并且在从句中作主语。

Page No.1416

例 3:The little girl who got lost decided to remain she was and wait for her mother.(2009?山东）

A. where B. what C. how D. who

解析:选 A。remain 是系动词，后接表语从句，由句意可知，从句缺地点状语，故选 A。

例 4:She is very dear to us. We have been prepared to do it takes to save her life.(2009?湖南）

A. whichever B. however

C. whatever D. whoever

解析:选 C。空格处既要引导宾语从句，又要在从句中充当 take 的宾语。句意为：她对我们来说非常宝贵，我们要不惜一切代价来拯救她的生命。

Page No.1417

例 5:The fact has worried many scientists the earth is becoming warmer and warmer these years.(2009?江西）

A. What B. which C. that D. though

解析:选 C。考查间隔式同位语从句的用法。先行词 the fact 和 that 引导的同位语从句中间隔了谓语部分。

例 6:The how-to book can be of help to wants to do the job.(2009?陕西）

A. who B. whomever

C. no matter who D. whoever

解析:选 D。whoever 引导的从句作 to 的宾语，又在从句中作主语。whoever 作代词，相当于 any person who，表示“任何人,无论谁”。

Page No.1418

例 7:As a new diplomat, he often thinks of he can react more appropriately on such occasions.(2009?上海）

A. what B. which C. that D. how

解析：选 D。how 引导的从句作介词 of 的宾语，并在从句中作方式状语。

例 8:News came from the school office Wang Lin had been admitted to Beijing University.(2009?四川）

A. which B. what C. that D. where

解析:选 C。在该题中 that 引导了一个同位语从句,来解释说明 news 的内容，该题把同位语从句后置了，应

注意分析句子结构。

Page No.1419

例 9:It is obvious to the students they should get well prepared for their future.(2009?天津）

A. as B. which C. whether D. that

解析：选 D。that 引导主语从句，It 为形式主语。

例 10:—Is there any possibility you could pick me up at the airport?

—No problem.(2009?浙江）

A. When B. that C. whether D. what

解析：选 B。that 引导同位语从句，对 possibility 作进一步解释说明。

Page No.1420

定语从句是中学英语学习的主要语法内容之一，也是高考英语的常考知识点。在历年的高考试题中，相对集中地考查了非限制性定语从句、关系代（副）词的用法、语义重复、主谓一致及“介词＋which（whom）”等有关定语从句的知识。

Page No.1421

定语从句常见考点

一、非限制性定语从句

非限制性定语从句是高考试题中出现频率最高的考点。

1.引导非限制性定语从句时，可以用引导词 which（但不可以用 that）。

She heard the terrible noise ， brought her heart into her mouth.

A.it B.which C.this D.that

解析：选 B。which 指代前面的先行词 noise，引导非限制性定语从句，并在从句中作主语。

2.有时引导词 which 可以指代前面整个句子的含义。

Dorothy was always speaking highly of her role in the play， ，ofcourse， made the others unhappy.

A.who B.which C.this D.what

解析：选 B。which 在句中引导非限制性定语从句，指代前面整个句子的内容。

Page No.1422

3.除 which 外，还可用 when，where，who（m）等关系代、副词引导非限制性定语从句。

Finally I decided to stay in Chong qing， where I finished my college study.

最终，我决定留在重庆，在那我完成了大学生活。

4.在限制性定语从句中，关系代词作宾语时可以省略，但引导非限制性定语从句的连词不能省略。 He was eager to go to the hospital to see his stepmother，whom he loved as his own mother.

他急切地想去医院看望他的继母，他像爱自己亲妈妈一样爱她。

5.置于句首时，非限制性定语从句只能用 as 引导，而置于句中、末时 as 和 which 都可以用。

is known to all，China will be an and powerful country in 20 or 30 years time.

A.That; advancing B.This; advanced C.As; advanced D.It; advancing

解析:选 C。as 引导非限制性定语从句，在从句中作主语，指代后一句内容。但是当非限制性定语从句表示否定意义时，只能用 which 引导。

The weather turned out to be very good, was more than we could expect.

A.What B.which C.that D.if

解析：选 B。句中 more than 的本意为“超过”，“超过了我的预料”即为:“我没有预料到”。这里不能用 as 代替 which。

Page No.1423

二、先行词是表示地点或时间的名词时，引导词的选择

After living in Paris for 50 years he returned to the small town he grew up as a child.

A.Which B.where C.that D.when

解析:选 B。因为表示地点的先行词 the small town 在从句中作状语,故用 where 引导定语从句。

I visited the country had been bombed by the US-led NATO（美国为首的北约）a month before.

A. Where B. that C. / D. as

解析：选 B。当表示地点的先行词在从句中作主、宾、表语时，则要用 that 或 which 引导定语从句。

I shall never forget the years I lived in the countryside with the farmers ， has a great effect on my life.

A.that；which B.when；which C.which；that D.when；who

解析：选 B。先行词 the years 在句中作时间状语，which 引导非限制性定语从句，指代前面整个句子。

I'll never forget the years I spent with my cousin in Australia.

A. When B. that C. who D. as

解析：选 B。the years 在句中作 spent 的宾语，此时引导词 that /which 可以省略。

Page No.1424

三、“介词＋关系代词（which /whom）”引导的定语从句

In the office I never seem to have time until after 5：30 pm ，many people have gone home.

A.whose time B.that C.on which D.by which time

解析：选 D。by which time 即:by“after 5：30”(到五点三十分以后)。介词的选择，取决于这个介词与先行词或从句之间的关系。又如： Lei Feng, from whom we have once learned a lot，is now an example to the soldiers of West Point Military School（西点军校）of America. 关系代词前面的介词 from，与从句中的谓语动词 learn 构成习惯表达 learn from（向……学习）。

四、语义的重复

He made another wonderful discovery， of great importance to science.

A.which I think is B.which I think it is

C.which I think it D.I think is

解析：选 A。选项 B 重复了宾语 it，因为关系代词 which 是 think 的逻辑宾语；此外，引导非限制性定语从句的连词不能省略，故选项 D 也不正确。

Page No.1425

五、“介词＋whom”引导的定语从句与 who /whom 引导的宾语从句作介词宾语时的区别

试比较：

It was a matter of would take the position.

A.Who B.whoever C.whom D.whomever

Kennedy and Johnson，both of were murdered in their terms，once coworked as president and vice-president.

A.whoB.whoeverC.whomD.whomever

解析：分别选 A,C。前一例是宾语从句， who 引导的整个宾语从句作介词 of 的宾语，同时 who 在从句中作主语，所以不能用 whom 引导。后一例是定语从句，whom 作介词 of 的宾语（所以不能用 who 引导），构成介、宾结构，作 both 的定语，而 both 才是定语从句的主语。

Page No.1426

六、定语从句中的主谓一致问题

试比较：

The Oscar is the only one of the film prizes offered to any Chinese actor or actress by far.

A. which is on B. that have not been

C. that has not D. that has not been

The Oscar is one of the film prizes offered to any Chinese actor or actress by far.

A.which is on B.that have not been

C.that has not D.that has not been

解析:分别选 D,B。前一例的先行词是 the only one，且指代它的引导词在从句中作主语，故从句的谓语动词必须用单数；又因为先行词 one 被 only 修饰，所以只能用 that 引导。当 one 没有被 the only 或 the very 等修饰时，则介词 of 后面的 the film prizes 是先行词，从句中的谓语动词就必须用复数，而且引导词既可以用 that 也可以用 which（第二例）。总之，当引导词在句子中作主语时，谓语动词的单、复数形式应该与该主语保持一致。

Page No.1427

定语从句难点分析

定语从句是高中阶段的重点语法项目之一。因此，有必要全面弄清其用法。定语从句从句型上讲，它 与以下六种句式相似，十分容易混淆。为了分清定语从句与这六种句型的差异，现将其分类例析如下:

一、定语从句与并列句

用一个恰当的单词完成下列句子，使之完整与正确。

①Mr Li has three daughters，none of is an engineer.

②Mr Li has three daughters，but none of is a dancer.

③Mr Li has three daughters； are doctors.

定语从句与并列句的主要区别在于：并列句有 and，but，so 等并列连词或两个句子用分号连接，这时就不能再用引导定语从句的关系词了。从结构上看，①小题是定语从句，故填 whom；②小题有并列连词 but，是并列句，故填代词 them；③小题是两个并列分句，无需连接词，缺少主语，故填 none 或 they。

Page No.1428

二、定语从句与地点状语从句

用一个恰当的单词完成下列句子，使之完整与正确。

①Rice doesn t grow well there is not enough water.

②I still remember the farm my parents worked ten years ago.

定语从句与地点状语从句的主要区别在于：定语从句有表示地点的先行词，而地点状语从句则没有；定语从句的关系词根据需要可以用“介词＋which”来代替 where，而地点状语从句则通常只能由 where 引导。因此，从结构上看，①小题无表示地点的先行词，故为表示地点的状语从句，填 where；②小题中 the farm 是先行词，是定语从句，故填 where，此处的 where 可以用 on which 替换。

Page No.1429

三、定语从句与强调句

用一个恰当的单词完成下列句子，使之完整与正确。

①It is on the morning of May 1st I met Liang Wei at the airport.

②It is the factory Mr Wang works.

定语从句与强调句的主要区别在于：强调句的结构为“It is/was＋被强调部分＋that＋从句”。被强调部分可以是除谓语以外的任何成分，当被强调部分是人时，还可用 who 代替 that。在这个句型中，一定不能因为被强调部分是表示时间或地点的词就用 when 或 where 代替 that。从结构上看，①小题是强调句，故填 that。此种情况检测的标准是：先把强调句中的 It is/was that 去掉，再把被强调部分还原，在不增加或减少任何单词的情况下，如果句子仍然成立则为强调句，否则为定语从句。将第①小题改为：Imet Liang Wei on the morning of May 1st at the airport.显然，这句话是正确的，故为强调句。②小题则是定语从句，用上述方法转换便知 the factory 前缺少一个介词 in，故填 where。

Page No.1430

四、定语从句与结果状语从句

用一个恰当的单词完成下列句子，使之完整与正确。

①I have the same computer you have.

②She is such a kind and funny girl all of us like to make friends with her.

定语从句与结果状语从句的主要区别在于（这里只讨论 the same ...as/that 和 such ...as/that 两种情况）：在这两种情况下，如果 as/that 既引导从句，同时又在从句中充当一定的成分，则 as/that 引导的是定语从句。在 the same...as/that 结构中，用 as 指同样的，但不是同一个事物；用 that 指同一物品，故①小题填 as；如果 as/that 在从句中不作任何成分，只起连接作用，则 as/that 引导的是结果状语从句，故②小题填 that。Page No.1431

五、定语从句与习惯句型

用一个恰当的单词完成下列句子，使之完整与正确。

①It is the first time she has been to Shanghai.

②It was the time Chinese people had a hard life.

这里①小题是一个习惯句型，其结构为：It is/was the first/second ... time ＋that 从句。故①小题填 that。句意为：这是她第一次来到上海。②小题的 the time 是先行词，其后是表示时间的定语从句，故填 when。

六、定语从句与简单句

用一个恰当的单词完成下列句子，使之完整与正确。

①The mother told the lazy boy to work， didn’t help.

②The mother told the lazy boy to work. didn’t help.

含有定语从句的复合句与简单句的主要区别在于：前者有主句，有从句，必须有关系词；而后者则是两个单独的句子，不需要任何关联词。①小题两个句子用逗号连接且没有并列连词，显然应该是主从句关系，因此需用关系词 which 引导，前面整个句子作先行词；②小题则填 It，代替前面的整个句子。解题时， 要注意标点符号的运用。

Page No.1433

例 1:Whenever I met her, was fairly often,she greeted me with a sweet smile.(2009・山东)

A.who B.which C.when D.that

解析：选 B。考查非限制性定语从句。which 引导非限制性定语从句，指代后面的整个句子，而 that 不能引导非限制性定语从句，所以选 B 项。

例 2:She brought with her three friends,none of I had ever met before. (2009・宁夏、海南)

A.them B.who C.whom D.these

解析:选 C。考查定语从句的关系代词。根据句中的标点符号可知，本句后一部分是一个非限制性定语从句， 故排除不能引导定语从句的选项 A 和 D，又因关系代词在从句中指代人，作介词 of 的宾语，因此选 C 项。Page No.1434

例 3:Because of the financial crisis,days are gone local 5-star hotels charged 6000 yuan for one night. (2009?江苏)

A.if B.when C.which D.since

解析:选 B。考查定语从句。先行词在后面的定语从句中作时间状语，所以选 B 项。

例 4:A person e-mail account is full won’t be able to send or receive any e-mails.(2009?天津）

A.Who B.whom C.whose D.whoever

解析:选 C。考查定语从句。whose 引导的定语从句修饰前面的 person,表示所有格，所以选 C 项。

Page No.1435

例 5:They have won their last three matches, I find a bit surprising actually. (2009?辽宁）

A.that B.when C.what D.which

解析:选 D。考查定语从句。根据句子结构判断，句子的后半句是非限制性定语从句，所以首先排除 A、C 两项，又因为这里的关系代词代指前面分句的情况，并在从句中作 find 的宾语，所以选 D 项。

例 6:I have reached a point in my life I am supposed to make decisions of my own. (2009?浙江）

A.which B.where C.how D.why

解析:选 B。考查定语从句。句意为：我已经到了人生中的一个关键地步，我应该做出自己的决定。where 在此处引导定语从句，修饰 a point，在从句中作状语，所以选 B 项。

Page No.1436

例 7:It’s helpful to put children in a situation they can see themselves differently.(2009?福建)

A.that B.when C.which D.where

解析:选 D。考查定语从句。a situation 后面的从句对其起修饰作用，为定语从句。而从句中不缺少代词性成分，不能用关系代词 which/that。从句中缺少表示地点的副词性成分，所以选 D 项。

例 8:Many children, parents are away working in big cities,are taken good care of in the village. (2009?安徽）

A.their B.whose C.of them D.with whom

解析:选 B。考查定语从句连词的用法。用 whose 引导定语从句，修饰 many children, whose 在定语从句中充当定语。句意为：许多父母远在大城市工作，他们的孩子在这个村子得到了很好的照顾。

Page No.1437

例 9:—What do you think of teaching,Bob?

—I find it fun and challenging.It is a job you are doing something serious but interesting.(2009?

北京)

A.where B.which C.when D.that

解析:选 A。考查定语从句。句意为：——鲍勃，你认为教学怎么样？——有趣又富有挑战性。这是一份既严肃又有趣的工作。where 引导后面的定语从句说明 a job 是一种什么样的形式或者状况，因此选 A 项。

例 10:I was born in New Orleans, Louisiana, a city name will create a picture of beautiful trees and green grass in our mind.(2009?湖南）

A.Which B.of which C.that D.whose

解析:选 D。分析句式结构可知，空格处在句中作定语修饰 name，其先行词是 a city, 所以用 whose 引导定语从句。如果用 which,需使用 the name of which 的结构。

Page No.1438

状语从句在高考试题中由于其他从句的干扰，以及倒装句，强调句的介入，使得状语从句更为复杂。状语 从句是一种副词性从句，通常由一个从属连词或一个起连词作用的词组引导。

状语从句

Page No.1439

1. 时间状语从句

常见的连词(组)：

when, while, as, before, after, once, till, until, as soon as, now that, hardly ...when, scarcely ...when, no sooner ...than 等。

可以引导时间状语从句的副（介）词（短语）或名词短语：

directly, instantly, immediately, by the time, the moment, the second, the minute, the instant, every time, each time, next time, the last time 等。

注意点如下：

(1) when, while, as 引导的时间状语从句

as 表示“当……的时候”，往往和 when/ while 通用，但它着重强调主句与从句的动作或事情同时或几乎同时发生。when(at or during the time)既可以表示在某一点的时候，又可以表示在某一段时间内，主句与从句的动作或事情可以同时发生也可以先后发生。while 强调一段时间，仅表示从句和主句的动作同时发生，并且有延续意义，该从句中的动词一般要用延续性动词，从句中常用过去进行时态或一般过去时态； 当 when 表示 a period of time 时，两者可以互换。

She came up as I was cooking.(同时)

在我做饭时，她走了过来。

When we were at school, we went to the library every day.(在一段时间内)

当我们在学校时，每天都去图书馆。

While they were watching TV, I was preparing myself for the coming examination.

他们在看电视，而我在为即将到来的考试做准备。

Strike while the iron is hot. 趁热打铁。 (不可用 as 或 when，这里的 while 意思是“趁……”)

Page No.1440

(2) before 引导状语从句时的常见重点句型

①It will (not) be ...before ...

还要……才，要不了多久就……

It was (not) ...before ... 过了……才(没多久就……)

It was a long time before I got to sleep.

过了好长时间我才睡着了。

It wasn t long before he told me about the news.

没多久他就告诉了我那条新闻。

② 不等……就……； 在……之前就……

The telephone rang off before I could answer it.

我还没来得及接电话，电话就挂断了。

③ 刚……就……

He hardly entered the room before he heard the telephone ring.

他刚进屋电话铃就响了。

④ 先……再……

You can have a few days to think about it before you make your decision.

做决定之前你还有几天时间考虑。

Page No.1441

(3)since 引导的从句用延续性动词的过去式（包括过去完成时）时，则从句的动作已经结束,从句意思是否定的。如果从句的动词是延续性动词的现在完成时态，则从句意思是肯定的。

He has never been to see me since I was ill.

我病愈后，他一直未来看我。（不再生病了）

He has never been to see me since I have been ill.

我病了，他一直未来看我。

I haven t heard from him since he lived here.

自他从这里搬走，我就没有收到他的信。（不住在这儿了）

Page No.1442

(4) till, until

如果 till 与 until 用在肯定句中时，则主句中谓语动词部分所表示的动作或状态一直延续到某时或某个动作发生时才结束。注意它的倒装句和强调句。

I didn t recognize she was my classmate until she took off her dark glasses.

=Not until she took off her dark glasses did I recognise she was my classmate

=It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I recognised she was my classmate.

直到她摘下墨镜，我才认出她是我的同学。

Page No.1443

2. 原因状语从句

引导原因状语从句的常见连词或短语： as, because, since, now that, considering that, seeing that(鉴于……)。注意以下几点：

(1) because, since, as, for, now that

because 语气最强，用于回答 why 的提问，可与强调词 only, just 以及否定词 not 连用。但不可以与 so 连用。

since 引导的从句语气次于 because 引导的从句，常表示稍加分析后而推断出的原因，或指人们已知的事实，比 as 正式一些,常置于句首。

as 语气最弱，其原因只是对结果的附带说明，一般放在句首。

for 虽然解释为“因为”但只是一个并列连词，它也常引导句子表示原因，但不是原因状语从句，它是一个并列句。for 所提供的理由是一种补充性的说明，表示推测的理由。

now that 意为“既然，由于”。表示由于人们已知的事实或正在发生的事而产生某个结果。

He failed because he was careless.他因粗心而失败了。

Since everyone has come, let s begin our meeting.

既然大家都来了，我们开会吧。

As all the seats were full, he stood there.

所有的座位都满了,他只好站那儿。

It might have rained last night for the ground is wet.

昨晚可能下雨了，因为地面是湿的。

Now that the kids have left home we have a lot of extra space.

由于孩子们离开了家，所以我们有了额外的空间。

Page No.1444

3. 地点状语从句

地点状语从句常由下列连词引导：where, wherever 等。

You may find him where his brother lives.

你可能会在他哥哥居住的地方找到他。

You are free to go wherever you like.
你可以去你想要去的任何地方。
Anywhere he went, he got warm welcome.
无论他走到哪儿，都受到热烈欢迎。
The girl takes the doll with her everywhere she goes.
这个女孩无论去哪都带着她的布娃娃。
Where there is a will, there is a way.　有志者事竟成。
Page No.1445
4. 结果状语从句
结果状语从句常由下列连词引导：so ...that，such ...that，so that 等。要注意以下几个问题:
(1) 五种结构：
① so+adj./adv.+that ...
② such (a/an+adj.)+n.+that ...
③ so+adj.+a/an+n.+that=such a/an+adj.+n.+that ...
④ so many/much/few/little(少)+n.+that ...
⑤ such+(adj.) +n. (u/pl.)+ that
He spoke so fast that I couldn　t follow him.
他说的如此的快，我跟不上他。
It was such a lovely day / so lovely a day that we all went swimming.
今天天气如此的好，我们大家都去游泳了。
(2) so 或 such 置于句首时，主句常用倒装。
It was such a lovely day / so lovely a day that we all went swimming.
＝Such a lovely day was it that we all went swimming.
今天天气如此的好，我们大家都去游泳了。
(3)注意以上结构与定语从句 so/such ...as 的区别。
This is such an interesting/so interesting a film that everyone wants to see it.
这是一部很有趣的电影以至于每个人都想去看。
Page No.1446
5. 目的状语从句
目的状语从句由下列连词引导：so that, in order that, for fear that, in case 等。（注：so that 也可用来引导结果状语从句）
so that, in order that 引导的目的状语从句中常需用情态动词。
so that 引导的目的状语从句只能放在主句之后。
in order that 引导的目的状语从句可以放在主句之前或之后。
We set out early so that we could see the sunrise.
我们很早出发以便能看到日出。
He sent the letter by air mail so that it might reach them in time.
他空邮这封信以便他们能及时收到。
Page No.1447
6. 条件状语从句
条件状语从句分为真实条件句和非真实条件句（用在虚拟语气中）。注意：在真实条件句中，常用一般时态代替将来时。常由下列连词引导条件状语从句：if, unless, suppose, supposing, providing (that), provided (that), given (that), in case, on condition that, as long as, so long as, so far as 等。
(1) unless=if not
You will fail unless you study hard.
除非你努力，否则你就要失败。
(2) suppose, supposing, providing(that), provided(that), given(that)= if

Given that he supports us, we ll win the election.

如果他支持我们，我们就会赢得选举。

(3)on condition that, as long as, so long as = only if

As long as you don t lose heart, you will succeed.

只要你不灰心，你就会成功。

(4) as(so) far as ...

So far as I am concerned, I m in favour of “mercy killing”.

就我个人而言， 我支持安乐死。

Page No.1448

7. 让步状语从句

引导让步状语从句的连词：although, though, as, even if, even though,while, whether ...or, whoever, whatever, however, no matter+疑问词等。注意以下几点：

(1) although, though 引导让步状语从句时，主句前不能用 but,但可以加 yet, still。

Though it was raining hard, yet they didn t stop working.

尽管下着大雨，他们仍然在工作。

Page No.1449

(2) as 引导让步状语从句时，必须用前置结构，通常是从句中的表语、状语或动词原形放在句首，放在句首的名词前的冠词要去掉。

Though he is a child, he knows a lot.=Child as(though)he is, he knows a lot.

尽管他是个孩子，但他仍知道的很多。（注意:在 child 前不要用冠词）

Though I like it very much, I won t buy it.=Much as I like it, I won t buy it.

尽管我非常喜欢它，但我也不会买它。

Page No.1450

(3)whether ...or (not) 引导的从句，提供两个对比的“尽管”情况，含有条件意味。

（Whether you）Believe it or not, it is true.

信不信由你，这是真的。

Whether you come here or we go there, the topic of discussion will remain unchanged.

不管是你来这儿还是我们去那儿，讨论的主题保持不变。

(4) 疑问词+ever＝no matter +疑问词

Whoever you are, you must show your pass.

无论你是谁，你都必须出示你的通行证。

Whenever you come, you are welcome.

无论你什么时候来，都欢迎。

Page No.1451

8. 方式状语从句

引导方式状语从句的连词或短语：as, as if, as though,the way 等。注意以下几点：

(1) as 引导方式状语从句时意为“按照”，“如同”，前面常用加强语气。

I did it just as you told me.

= I did it just as told to.

我是按照你的吩咐做的。

He didn t win the match as expected.

他没有像预料的那样赢得比赛。

(2) as if 和 as though 引导的从句中，谓语常用虚拟语气，有时也用陈述语气。

It seems as if it were going to rain.

天似乎要下雨了。

(3)连词 while 和 whereas 可以表示对比。

Whereas he is rather lazy, she is quiteenergetic.

她相当的有活力，而他却很懒惰。

注意:状语从句中的省略现象

(1) 连接词+过去分词

Unless repaired, the washing machine is no use.

除非洗衣机被修好了，否则它就没用了。

(2) 连词+现在分词

Look out while crossing the street.

过马路时，要小心。

(3)连词+形容词/其他

常见的有 if necessary,if possible,when necessary,if any 等。

(4) 比较状语从句中的省略

He arrived home half an hour earlier than (he had been) expected.

他比预想的早到家半个小时。

Page No.1453

例 1:My parents don’t mind what job I do I am happy.（2009?陕西）

A. even though B. as soon as

C. as long as D. as though

解析：选 C。考查状语从句。根据题干意思可知,此处是条件状语从句。as long as 只要;even though 引导让步状语从句，意为“即使”；as soon as 引导时间状语从句，意为“一……就……”；as though 引导方式状语从句，意为“仿佛，好象”。

Page No.1454

例 2:—Shall we have our picnic tomorrow?

— it doesn’t rain.（2009?山东）

A. Until B. While C. Once D. If

解析：选 D。考查交际用语。答句句意为：如果明天不下雨的话。

例 3:She had just finished her homework her mother asked her to practise playing the piano yesterday.(2009?福建)

A. when B. while C. after D. since

解析：选 A。考查状语从句。由句意可知，此处 when 用作并列连词，意为“这时”。

Page No.1455

例 4:You d better not leave the medicine kids can get at it.（2008?山东）

A.even if B.which C.where D.so that

解析：选 C。句意为：你最好不要把药放在小孩子够得着的地方。where 引导地点状语从句。even if 即使；which 不引导状语从句；so that 为了；以至于;引导目的或结果状语从句。

例 5:There were some chairs left over everyone had sat down.(2008?四川)

A. when B. until C. that D. where

解析：选 A。句意为：大家都坐下之后，还有一些椅子空着。when 当……时候,引导时间状语从句，符合题意。until 直到,引导时间状语从句，但与题意不符；that 不引导状语从句；where 引导地点状语从句。

Page No.1456

例 6:Occasions are quite rare I have the time to spend a day with my kids.(2008?山东)

A.who B.which C.why D.when

解析：选 D。句意为：我很少有机会和孩子在一起待上一天的时间。when 在此处引导定语从句，修饰先行词 occasions(机会)，并在从句中作时间状语。who 和 which 是关系代词，定语从句中不缺少主语、宾语、表语，故排除；why 引导定语从句时表示原因，与题意不符。

例 7:Tomorrow is Tom’s birthday.Have you got any idea the party is to be held?（2008?陕西）

A. what B.which C.that D.where

解析：选 D。句意为：明天就是汤姆的生日了，你知道生日聚会在什么地方进行吗?idea 后的部分是同位语从句，说明 idea 的内容；根据题意判断用 where 引导。

例 8:The last time we had great fun was we were visiting the Water Park.(2008?天津)

A. Where B.how C. when D.why

解析：选 C。句意为：我们最后一次玩得很痛快是在游览水上公园时。was 后的部分是一个表语从句，从句中缺少状语，根据题意判断用 when 引导。

例 9:Don’t promise anything you are one hundred percent sure.(2008?浙江)

A. whether B. after

C. how D. unless

解析：选 D。句意为：不要承诺什么，除非你有百分之百的把握。unless 如果不，除非;符合题意。whether 是否；after ……之后；how 如何。

Page No.1458

例 10: well prepared you are, you still need a lot of luck in mountain climbing.(2008・上海)

A. However B. Whatever

C. No matter D. Although

解析：选 A。考查 however 的用法。however 相当于 no matter how, 但 no matter 不能单独使用；句中的 well 是副词，所以用 however 而不用 whatever 修饰；although 引导的让步状语从句不倒装。

Page No.1459

在英语中，谓语动词必须和主语在人称和数上保持一致，这就是所谓的“主谓一致”。寻其规律，大致可归纳为语法一致原则，逻辑意义一致原则，就近一致原则。下面就这三个原则分别论述如下：

主谓一致

Page No.1460

一、语法一致原则

语法上一致就是谓语动词和主语单、复数形式上保持一致。

1. 以单数名词或代词、动词不定式短语、动名词短语或从句作主语时，谓语动词一般用单数形式；主 语为复数时，谓语动词用复数形式。

What she said is very important for us all.

她的话对我们都很重要。

Between the two hills stands a monument.

这座纪念碑矗立在两座小山之间。

另外，由 what 引导的主语从句，后面的谓语动词多数情况用单数形式，但若表语是复数或 what 从句是一个带有复数意义的并列结构时，主句的谓语动词用复数形式。

What I bought were three English books.

我买的东西是三本英语书。

What I say and do is (are) helpful for you.

我所说的所做的对你是有帮助的。

Page No.1461

2. 由连接词 and 或 both...and 连接起来的合成主语后面，要用复数形式的谓语动词。

The boy and the girl were surprised when they heard the news.

当他们听到这个消息后，都惊呆了。

①若 and 所连接的两个词是指同一个人或物时，它后面的谓语动词应用单数形式。

Our teacher and friend is Mr. Li.

李老师既是我们的老师又是我们的朋友。

②由 and 连接的并列单数主语前如果分别有 no, each, every, 或 more than a(an)/one, many a (an)修饰时，其谓语动词要用单数形式。

Many a worker and engineer has succeeded in the experiment.

在这次试验中，许多工人和工程师取得了成功。

More than one student is here.

不只一个学生在这儿。

Each pen and each paper is found in its place.

纸和笔散落一地。

注意：如果是 more+名词的复数+than one 这一结构时，后面的谓语动词要用复数形式。

More students than one are here.

很多学生都在这儿。

Page No.1462

3. 主语为单数名词或代词，尽管后面跟有 with, together with, except, but, like, as well as, no less than, rather than, besides, along with, including, in addition to 等引起的短语，谓语动词仍用单数形式；若主语为复数，谓语动词用复数形式。

E-mail, as well as telephone, is playing an important part in daily communication.

邮件和电话在日常交往中起着重要的作用。

Mr. Green, together with a baby was on the bus.

格林先生和一个孩子在车上。

Page No.1463

4. either, neither, each, every 或 no+单数名词和由 some, any, no, every 构成的复合不定代词作主语时，谓语用单数。

Everything around us is matter.

一切都由物质构成。

注意：①在口语中当 either 或 neither 后跟有“of +复数名词（或代词）”作主语时，其谓语动词也可用复数。

Neither of the texts is(are)interesting.

两篇课文没有一篇令人感兴趣。

②若 none of 后面的名词是不可数名词，它的谓语动词就要用单数；若它后面的名词是复数，它的谓语动词用单数或复数都可以。

None of us has (have) been to America.

我们都没有去过美国。

Page No.1464

5. 如果集体名词指的是整个集体，它的谓语动词用单数形式；如果它指的集体的成员，其谓语动词用复数 形式。people, police, cattle, militia, poultry 等名词都多用作复数。

The police are looking for the lost child.

警察正在寻找那个失踪的孩子。

而有些集体名词如 family, class, crowd, committee, population, audience 等有时作单数看待，有时作复数看待，主要根据意思来确定。

My family was here two years ago.

两年前，我家搬到了这儿。

My family aren t enjoying music.

我们家人都不喜欢音乐。

Class Four are unable to agree upon a monitor.

四班的同学就班长人选未达成一致。

Class 4 is on the third floor.

四班在三楼。

Page No.1465

6. 由“a lot of, lots of, plenty of, a (large) quantity of, the rest of+名词”构成的短语以及由“分数或百分数+名词”构成的短语作主语时，其谓语动词的数要根据短语中后面名词的数而定。

Three fourths of the surface of the earth is sea.

地球表面的 34 是由水覆盖。

50 percent of the students in our class are girls.

我班 50%的学生是女孩。

此外，还有“a number of +复数名词”作主语时，谓语用复数，但“the number of +复数名词”作主语

时，谓语用单数。

The number of people invited was fifty, but a number of them were absent for different reasons.

邀请了 50 人但一些因不同原因缺席。

但是 large quantities of 和 large amounts of 引导的短语作主语时，谓 语动词要用复数。

Large quantities of money were spent on the bridge.

建这座大桥花了很多钱。

Page No.1466

7. 如果主语是由“a kind of, a series(a species) of 等+名词”构成，谓语动词通常用单数形式。

Is this kind of bicycle made in Shanghai?

这种自行车是由上海制造的吗?

但是 bicycles of this kind 或 these kinds of bicycles 作主语时后面的谓语动词要用复数形式。

Books of this kind sell well.

这种书销售的好。

如果种类不是一种而是多种，谓语动词应为复数。

There are many kinds of pears.

梨有很多种。

Page No.1467

二、逻辑意义一致原则

意义一致就是谓语动词的数必须和主语的意义一致。（因有时主语形式为单数，但意义为复数；有时形式为复数，但意义为单数）

1. what, who, which, any, more, most, all 等代词可以是单数，也可是复数，主要靠意思来决定。

Are any of you good at English?

你们都擅长英语吗？

All that can be done has been done.

该做的都做了。

Page No.1468

2. 表示“时间、重量、长度、价值”等的名词的复数作主语时，谓语动词通常用单数形式，这是由于作主语的名词在概念上是一个整体。

Thirty minutes is enough for the work.

这活三十分钟足够了。

3. 若主语是书名、影片名、格言、剧名、报名、国名等的复数形式，其谓语动词通常用单数形式。

The United States is smaller than China.

美国比中国小。

4. 表示数量的短语“one and a half ”后边接复数名词作主语时，其谓语动词要用单数形式。

One and a half apples is left on the table.

桌子上有一个半苹果。

Page No.1469

5. 算式中表示数目（字）的主语通常作单数看待，其谓语动词常用单数形式。

Fifty-six divided by eight is seven.

56 除以 8 等于 7。

6. 一些以 -ics 结尾的学科名词如 mathematics, politics, physics 等, 都是形式上的复数名词，实际上却为不可数名词，它们作主语时，其谓语动词常用单数形式。

I don’t think physics is easy to study.

我认为物理难学。

7. 复数形式的单、复数同形的名词作主语时，谓语动词的形式主要取决于句子的意思。谓语动词用单数， 表示单数概念；谓语动词用复数，表示复数概念。这类名词主要有 means(方式、方法), works（工厂）,species（种类）等。

Every means was tried to make him give up smoking.

试了每种方法让他戒烟。

All possible means have been tried to make him give up smoking.

所有可能的方法都试了让他戒烟。

Page No.1470

8. trousers, glasses, clothes, shoes, scissors（剪刀）等词作主语时，谓语用复数，但如果这些名词前有 a (the)pair of 等量词修饰时（clothes 被 a suit of 修饰），谓语动词用单数。

The pair of shoes under the bed is his.

床下面的那双鞋子是他的。

The two pairs of trousers are broken.

两条裤子都破了。

9.“定冠词 the +形容词或过去分词”，表示某一类人时，谓语动词用复数；若表示某一类东西时，谓语动词用单数。

The old are taken good care of there.

在那儿，老人们受到很好的照顾。

The beautiful gives pleasure to all.

美好的事情令人愉悦。

Page No.1471

三、就近一致原则

1. 当两个主语由 either ...or, neither ...nor, not only...but also..., whether...or...连接时，谓语动词和邻近的主语保持一致。

Either the teacher or the students are our friends.

不论老师还是学生都是我们的朋友。

Neither they nor he is wholly right.

无论他们还是他都是错误的。

2. there be 句型中，be 动词的单复数取决于其后的主语。如果其后是由 and 连接的两个主语，则应与靠近的那个主语保持一致。

There are two chairs and a desk in the room.

房间里有两把椅子和一张桌子。

There is a desk and two chairs in the room.

房间里有一张桌子和两把椅子。

Page No.1472

例 1:The teacher together with the students discussing Reading Skills that newly published in America.（2009?四川）

A. are; were B. is; were C. are; was D. is; was

解析:选 D。句中的谓语动词要与 together with 前面的主语 the teacher（第三人称单数）一致；Reading Skills 是书名，属于单数。

例 2:The population of Jiangsu to more than twice what it was in 1949. The figure is now approaching 74 million.（2009?江苏）

A. has grown B. have grown

C. grew D. are growing

解析:选 A。从后面的 is now approaching 74 million 判断出时态应该用完成时态。又因为 population 作主语时谓语动词应该用单数，所以答案为 A 项。

Page No.1473

例 3:Dr. Smith, together with his wife and daughters, visit Beijing this summer.（2009?陕西）

A. is going to B. are going to

C. was going to D. were going to

解析:选 A。together with 前面的主语是第三人称单数，再由句子结构及句意可知，应该是一般将来时态。

例 4:Either you or one of your students to attend the meeting that is due tomorrow. （2009?湖南）

A. are B. is C. have D. be

解析:选 B。句子的谓语动词应该与 either ...or 后面的名词 one of your students 一致，所以谓语动词应该为第三人称单数形式。

Page No.1474

例 5:At present, one of the arguments in favor of the new airport that it will bring a lot of jobs to the area. （2009?江西）

A. is B. are C. will be D. was

解析:选 A。句子的主语为 one of the arguments 为单数，所以句子的谓语动词形式应该是第三人称单数，再由“it will ...”可知，选 A。

例 6:The number of foreign students attending Chinese universities rising steadily since 1997. (2009?山东)

A. is B. are C. has been D. have been

解析:选 C。句子的主语是“the number of+n.”，所以谓语动词应该用第三人称单数形式，又因为句中的时间状语引导词 since“自从”，所以应该用现在完成时态。

Page No.1475

例 7:—Did you go to the show last night?

—Yeah. Every boy and girl in the area invited.（2008?陕西）

A. were B. have been C. has been D. was

解析:选 D。由 and 连接的主语如果由 every 修饰时, 其谓语动词要用单数形式。

例 8:Professor James will give us a lecture on the Western culture, but when and where yet.

（2007?浙江）

A. hasn t been decided B. haven’t decided

C. isn t being decided D. aren’t decided

解析:选 A。因为主语是 when and where，所以谓语动词应该用第三人称单数形式，又根据句子中的 yet 判断，应该为现在完成时态。

Page No.1476

例 9:We live day by day, but in the great things, the time of days and weeks so small that a day is unimportant.（2007?湖南）

A. Is B. are C. has been D. have been

解析:选 A。根据句意可知，the time of days and weeks 表述的是一个集体的概念，所以谓语动词用单数形式。

例 10:A survey of the opinions of experts that three hours of outdoor exercise a week good for one’s health. （2007?江西）

A. show; are B. shows; is

C. show; is D. shows; are

解析:选 B。句子的主语是 a survey 是单数形式，同时 three hours of outdoor exercise a week 表达的是一个整体的概念，所以谓语动词应该用第三人称单数形式。

Page No.1477

1.强调句

(1) 强调人时可用 who，强调其他任何部分都用 that。所强调的可以是单词、短语，也可以是句子，但结构必须完整。被强调的成分可以是主语、宾语和状语，但不能是定语或谓语。

It is not only blind men who make such stupid mistakes.

不仅是盲人才会犯这种愚蠢的错误。

It is American movies that he likes to watch.

他喜欢看的是美国电影。

Page No.1478

(2) 强调句型的一般疑问句只需把 is/was 提前。

Was it in 1933 that the Second World War broke out?

第二次世界大战是在 1933 年爆发的吗?

Is it American films that he likes to watch most?

他最喜欢看的是美国电影吗？

(3) 强调句型的特殊疑问句结构是“疑问词+ is/was+it+that 从句”。

Why is it that smoking is not allowed here?

为什么不允许在这儿抽烟?

(4) 原因状语从句中只有 because 引导的从句可以被强调。

It was because her mother was ill that she didn't come to school yesterday.

是因为她妈妈病了她昨天才没来上学的。

Page No.1479

(5) 在 not ...until ...结构中，对 until 引导的短语或从句进行强调时，需用 It isn t/wasn t until ...that ...这一固定句型。that 从句中谓语动词用肯定形式。

It was not until she took off her dark glasses that I recognized she was a famous film star.

直到她摘下墨镜我才认出她是一位著名的影星。

注意：It is/was ...that ...结构不能强调谓语，如果需要强调谓语时，用助动词 do，did 或 does+动词原形，且只限于祈使句和肯定的陈述句。

Do be careful when crossing the street.

过马路时一定要当心。

Mike does enjoy playing football.

迈克确实喜欢踢足球。

Page No.1480

2.省略句

(1) 在 when, while, whenever, till, as soon as, if， unless， as if， though， as 等引导的状语从句中，若从句中的谓语有 be 动词，而从句的主语又与主句主语相同或主语是 it 时，从句的主语和 be 常被省略。

Unless (I am) invited, I won t go to the party.

如果没被邀请，我是不会去参加那个聚会的。

When (you are) working，you must pay attention.

工作时，你必须全神贯注。

(2) 在 as， than， however， whatever， no matter what 等引导的从句中常省略某些成分。

I must get it done whatever the cost (may be).

无论代价多大，我都要把这件事情办好。

I can only do it the way as was told to(do it that way).

我只能按照吩咐去做。

Page No.1481

(3)虚拟条件句常省略 if，将 were，had，should 提前构成倒装。

Should there be a flood(=If there should be a flood)，what should we do?

如果发洪水，我们该怎么办?

(4)有些状语从句置于句末，可以作句尾省略，有时也可以省略整个从句。

John will go there if my brother will(go).

如果我哥哥去那儿，约翰也去。

I would have come yesterday (If I had wanted to).

我昨天本来可以来的。

Page No.1482

3.倒装句

(1) 表示否定意义或半否定意义的词置于句首时，常用部分倒装。常见的词有:seldom， never， hardly，no， not， little 等。

Little did he know that the police were around.

他一点儿也不知道警察就在旁边。

Never before has our country been as united as it is.

现在我们的国家空前团结。

(2) 由 only，not until 引导的状语置于句首时,常用部分倒装。

Only by working hard can we succeed.

只有努力工作,我们才能取得成功。

(3) no sooner ...than， hardly ...when 等结构中，no sooner 和 hardly 置于句首时，主句用倒装形式。

No sooner had he arrived home, he began to prepare the supper.他一到家就开始准备晚饭。

Hardly had he entered the room, it began to rain.

他一进屋就开始下雨了。

Page No.1483

(4) 在 so/such ...that 引导的结果状语从句中，so 或 such 引导的部分置于句首时主句用倒装。

So shallow is the lake that no fish can live in it.

湖水那么浅，以致于没有鱼能在里面生存。

Such a good boy is he that we all love him.

他是那么好的一个孩子，我们都喜欢他。

另外，“so/neither/nor+be/助动词/情态动词+主语”so 与前面的肯定句呼应，neither/nor 与前面的否定句呼应。其中动词的形式取决于前一句的动词。表示前者的情况也（不）适用于后者或一者(不)具备两种情况。

After that we never saw her again，nor did we hear from her.

从那以后我们再也没见过她，也没有收到过她的信件。

I saw the film last week.So did she.

上周我看了这部电影，她也看了。

(5) 省略 if 的虚拟条件句以 had/were/should 开头引起的倒装。

Were she my friend, I would ask her for help.

如果她是我的朋友，我就会请她帮忙。

Page No.1484

例 1:The computer was used in teaching. As a result, not only , but students became more interested in the lessons.(2009?全国Ⅰ)

A. saved was teachers energy

B. was teachers energy saved

C. teachers energy was saved

D. was saved teachers energy

解析:选 B。考查倒装句。否定副词 not only, little, never 等位于句首时，它后面的句子用部分倒装。

例 2:Every evening after dinner, if not from work, I will spend some time walking my dog. （2009?湖南）

A. being tired B. tiring C. tired D. to be tired

解析:选 C。考查特殊句式的省略形式。if not tired = if I am not tired。

Page No.1485

例 3:Little about her own safety, though she was in great danger herself.(2009? 陕西)

A. did Rose care B. Rose did care

C. Rose does care D. does Rose care

解析:选 A。little 是具有否定意义的副词，位于句首时句子用部分倒装且根据从句时态可知用一般过去时，所以选 A 项。

例 4:So sudden that the enemy had no time to escape. (2009?山东)

A. did the attack B. the attack did

C. was the attack D. the attack was

解析:选 C。考查句子倒装。在 so ...that ..., such ...that...的句子结构中，若 so, such 和与其所修饰的词置于句首时，用部分倒装，又因为 sudden 是形容词，作表语，所以选项 C 正确。

例 5:—What‘s the matter with Della?

—Well, her parents wouldn’t allow her to go to the party, but she still .(2009?江苏)

A. hopes to B. hopes so C. hopes not D. hopes for

解析:选 A。考查省略句。答句句意为：噢，她的父母不让她参加这个聚会，但是她仍然希望能去参加这个聚会。根据 but 这个并列连词以及 hope 的用法可知此处应该用 hopes to。

例 6:Bill wasn‘t happy about the delay of the report by Jason, and .（2008?辽宁）

A. I was neither B. neither was I

C. I was either D. either was I

解析:选 B。考查倒装句。表示一种情况同时适合两者的“……也不”，否定句式用“neither/nor+助动词+主语”。either 用于否定句句末，如果 A 项为“I was not， either”也正确。

Page No.1487

例 7:It was not until midnight they reached the camp site.(2008?重庆)

A. That B. when C. while D. as

解析:选 A。考查强调句。强调句型为:It is/was ... that，句中强调的是 not until 所引导的时间状语，故选项 A 正确。

例 8:It was along the Mississippi River Mark Twain spent much of his childhood. (2008?天津)

A. how B. which C. that D. where

解析:选 C。考查强调句。强调句式:It is/was ...that 强调的是句中的地点状语，若强调的成分是指人的名词时，句式中的 that 可以换成 who，其他情况一律用 that。

Page No.1488

例 9:It was announced that only when the fire was under control to return to their homes. (2008?江西)

A. the residents would be permitted

B. had the residents been permitted

C. would the residents be permitted

D. the residents had been permitted

解析:选 C。考查句子倒装。在 that 引导的主语从句中，only 修饰的状语位于句首时，主句用倒装语序，故排除 A、D 两项；主句的动作发生在从句的动作之后，故不用过去完成时，正确选项为 C。

例 10:—Would you like to join me for a quick lunch before class?

— , but l promised Nancy to go out with her.(2008?全国Ⅰ)

A. I’d like to B. I like it C. I don’t D. I will

解析:选 A。考查省略句。句意为：——你愿意课前跟我一起吃顿简单的午饭吗? ——我愿意,可是我已经答应南希跟她一起出去了。口语中，如果不定式中的动词在上下文中相同可以将该动词省略，只保留 to，所以选项 A 正确。